

bleman, who living privately upon his small Estate, about 200 Wersts from the City of *Muscow*, was not so soon inform'd of his Daughter's good Fortune.

XII. S O O N after the Nuptials were celebrated, the *Czar* sent one of the Lords of his Bedchamber to him, with suitable wearing Apparel, Servants, Coaches and Horses, and every Thing necessary to convey him and his whole Family to *Muscow*.

XIII. W H E N this Lord came to his Seat, he found *Streschnew* in the Fields, where he himself, with others, were at the Plough; And after he had saluted him, in the Name of the *Czar* and the *Czarina*, his Daughter, he acquainted him it was their Desire he should come to *Muscow*.

XIV. T H I S Compliment very much surprized honest *Streschnew*, who thought the Lord only jested with him; His Answer, therefore, was: My Lord, I do not know you; however, I see you are one of our Great *Czar's* Court; I am but a poor Nobleman, and think it no Shame to maintain myself and Family in the Manner you see; Therefore I beg you would not hinder me from taking the Advantage of the fair Weather.

XV. B U T the Lord delivering him a Letter from his Daughter, the *Czarina*, which he desired him to read, and to go home, and accept of the Presents he had left for him there, he was, at Length, convinc'd it was no Jest: Upon which he set out for *Muscow*, where he was created *Bojar* before his Arrival, and his Family is to this Day in good Esteem.

XVI. T H I S *Czarina* was as Virtuous and Gracious as she was fair, and, by her prudent Conduct, she gain'd the Love of the whole Nation. In the first Year she had a Daughter, and afterwards successively three more. The *Czar*, who took it very much to Heart, that she had not bore him a Son, had some Thoughts of being divorc'd from her; But his Mother prevail'd upon the Senate to endeavour to divert him from such a Resolution; And they succeeded so well, that he alter'd his Mind; The *Czarina* bringing forth Prince *Alexius*, the very next Year after, secured the *Czar's* Affection to his Consort, which continu'd mutually till Death parted them.

XVII. THEY left this Prince and two Princesses, one of whom was named *Tatiana*, and the other *Anna* (35).

XVIII. AFTER the Death of *Czar Michael*, in whose Reign the *Empire* was much improved, during a long Peace, his Son *Alexius* was soon crown'd, without any Election; Yet he was obliged to promise to keep the above-mention'd Conditions, which he confirm'd with an Oath at the Altar.

XIX. SOON after his Coronation he marry'd a young Lady, nam'd *Maria Ilychna*, the Daughter of a poor Nobleman, call'd *Ilia Miloslawski*.

XX. BY this *Czarina*, *Alexius* had 4 Sons, viz. *Simon*, *Alexius*, *Theodore*, and *John*: And four Daughters, *Catbarina*, *Theodosia*, *Maria*, and *Sophia*. The first two Princes died before their Father.

XXI. AFTER the Death of this *Czarina*, *Alexius* married a Lady, by Name *Natalia*. Her Father, who was nam'd *Narischkin*, was Captain of the *Hussars*. By her he had two Children, viz. Prince *Peter*, and the Princess *Natalia*. At his Death he left this *Czarina*, 3 Princes, 4 Princesses, and 2 Sisters: But the Females died unmarried.

XXII. CZAR *Alexius* was a Man of great Understanding; And tho' he was a Stranger to foreign Languages, yet he caused an Epitome of several Sciences to be translated out of divers Languages into the *Russian* Tongue; which He himself diligently read. In the Beginning of his Reign, he could not apply himself much to Oeconomy, being engaged in War, for which Purpose, he first rais'd a regular Army, viz. Troopers, Hussars, Pikemen, and 8 Regiments of Foot, which latter had all foreign Officers; And the *Strelitzes*, his Life-guards only, had *Russian* Officers, which was the Reason they were not so well disciplin'd as the Rest of the Foot.

XXIII. HE had, at one and the same Time, War with the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Poles*; But over the latter he gain'd the most Advantage: At Length, he made Peace with all his Neighbours. From the *Poles*, he took the Cities of *Kiow*, *Czernigow*, *Smolensko*, *Belaja*, and the *Ukrain*; and having, during the War, had in his

(35) *Haber*, by a wrong Information, makes these two Princesses to be Daughters of *Alexius*, whereas they were his Sisters, and both died unmarried, long after him.

his Possession the greatest Part of *Lituania* and *Volbinia*, he added the two latter to his Title; But no Potentate being willing to allow it him, he surrender'd them again to *Poland*, and gave up the Title, after the Peace was concluded.

XXIV. FROM the *Tartars* he took a large Territory towards the *Crim*, which he kept.

XXV. THE *Persians*, *Chinese*, and other *Asiatick* Neighbours, sent him great Presents. He quell'd three great Rebellions in his own Dominions. I. That of the *Don-Cossacks*, whose Leader was the famous *Stenko Razin*, who had an Army of 50,000 Men, whom he totally defeated; And when, by the Persuasion of a crafty Secretary, *Stenko* was decoy'd to *Muscow*, on Pretence of an Accommodation, he was there imprison'd, and then carried thro' the City on a Triumphant Chariot, upon which stood a Gallows; And, at Length, was hang'd on another high and costly Gibbet; Because his Design was to have usurp'd the Kingdom of *Astracan*, and to assume the Title of King (36).

XXVI. THE II^d Rebellion was at the Instigation of the Patriarch *Niconi*; But it was soon appeas'd. The III^d was caused by the Citizens of *Muscow*, who had gather'd together about 30000 Men, near *Kolominski*, seven Wersts from *Muscow*, where the *Czar* then was. Their Demand was to have some *Bojares* delivered into their Hands, who, as Evil Counsellours had interfered in their Commerce, and by Monopolizing the Salt, had raised it to an excessive Price. The *Czar* was obliged to promise them Satisfaction; But he kept his Promise no longer than till the *Militia* came from *Muscow*, to his Assistance, which happen'd the very same Day; And then this Affair cost the Heads of some Hundreds of Citizens.

XXVII. HOWEVER, the *Czar* was forced to abolish the Monopoly, and to remove these Counsellours for a while from Court.

XXVIII. HE was very severe, and a great Protector of Justice; He caused the Laws of the several Provinces to be collected and printed together, in one Body, which, in the *Russian* Language, was call'd *Ulogenie*; But for want of a good Lawyer to digest

(36) In *Das Veranderete Russland*, p. 323. it is said he was quarter'd: But this may possibly have been the Fate of one or more of his Comrades.

digest them into Order, it is an imperfect and confus'd Collection

XXIX. HE introduced several Manufactures, especially that of Silk and Linnen.

XXX. HE also intended to have had Fleets in the *Caspian* and *Black Seas*, for which Purpose he sent for Master-Builders and Shipwrights from *Holland*, and other Places; But his sudden Death put a Stop to this Design.

XXXI. HE endeavour'd, indeed, to make himself more Arbitrary, and to grasp more Power into his Hands; But with great Circumspection; And when the Senate complain'd of the tedious War, and made Peace with *Poland*, sooner than he was willing he consented to it, especially when he found it was for the Advantage and Welfare of the *Empire*.

XXXII. HE was the first, who erected the Privy Court of Chancery, where Causes concerning his Person were heard. When he suspected any Body, he proceeded very cautiously, as well in administering the Torture, as in Executions. But when any one was found guilty, he caused him to be privately executed, as it happen'd to many, and no body ever knew what became of them, except some few, who were tortur'd to Death, and so found in the Streets. This Method his Daughter *Sophia* is likewise said to have learn'd of him.

XXXIII. HE was the first who made a Distinction among the *Bojares*, by calling the chief and eldest of them *Kommatsye Bojer*, of which his Privy-Council, for Foreign Affairs, consisted.

XXXIV. UNDER this Pretence, he took, at Length, his Favourites for this Purpose; One of which, call'd *Artemon Mathew*, was of a mean Extraction. Besides, being a great Lover of Hunting, and more particularly of Hawking, he gave the highest Rank to his Chief Falconer, and to the common *Falconers*, the Title of *Trabanten*, or Yeomen of the Guards, whom he generally employ'd in private Executions.

XXXV. HE at Length, became a great Oeconomist, and very much improved his Dominions. Great Desarts he converted into Colonies, peopling them with the Prisoners taken from the *Poles*, and other Nations (37). In the City of *Moscow* he built two Suburbs,

(37) The Inhabitants of the Cities on the Rivers *Kama*, *Volga*, and *Bialla*, as: *Sibirski*, *Tatarsk-Bulansk*, *Tiginsk*, *Tarikinski*, *Zergof*, *Shaminsk*, *Moskelsk*, *Birr*, *Sibirsk*, *Karakul*, and *Lisa*, who were all *Poles*, taken Prisoners near *Sambor*.

Suburbs, viz. the new and old *Meschanstjoja*, and also several great Market-Towns; Such as, *Wolday*, and others; all which were wholly peopled in that Manner by *Lithuanians* and *Poles*. And there is hardly a noble Family in *Russia*, in which there are not some *Polish* Servants.

XXXVI. By this Manner of Proceeding, many Desarts became habitable in His Time. He likewise made great Attempts for the Improvement of Mines: But the slow Advances, and small Profit of them, discourag'd Him; In so much that those Works fell to decay, and the Persons who had the Direction of them, died (38). Under his Reign Trade also began to flourish, as far as Opportunity would allow, and He provided good Laws for the Encouragement of it.

XXXVII. His Revenues were no more than five Millions (of Rubles, I suppose, something above a Million Sterling) and yet He kept a Magnificent Court, and a great Army on Foot; And, at His Death He left large Sums of Money in the Treasury; Which is not, however, to be wonder'd at. For First, He levied large Sums by Contribution, during the *Polish* War. Secondly, He pay'd only the Foreign Officers, and regular Troops, no Nobleman, in what Employment soever, serving for Salary, which they reckon'd to be a Disgrace (39): Besides, the Noblemen were obliged to serve as long as they were able, and in a Condition. But when any Person was grown incapable of Service, or had a Son at full Growth, to place in his Room, he was freed: And some were allowed to be relieved by their Relations who had not served; As a Reward for their long Service, (I.) Some got such Villages as fell to the Crown, either by Confiscation, or by the Extinction of Families. (II.) Others obtained Grants of uncultivated Lands, and the Royalty of Lakes. (III.) Others

(38) His Son *Peter I.* repair'd them, and sent for Men, skill'd in the working of Mines from foreign Parts.

(39) Here it may be worth Enquiring, since the Word *Casaki* or *Gasaki* denotes in *Asia*, not only People who agree to serve a certain Time in the Wars, for Pay, but also men of the lower Sort of People, who serve Noblemen or others for Wages; Whether, in Ancient Times, there has not been the same Distinction in the Armies of the *Germans*, *Franks*, and other Nations? And as *Gaza* and *Gazack* (which have some Affinity with the *German* Word, *Schatz*, Treasure, and *Cassa*, *Cassirer*, Cash, Cashier,) signify, in the *Polish*, *Mongolian*, and *Russian* Tongues, *Treasure*, *Taxes*, *Contribution*; Whether *Gasaki* may not denote such Soldiers as are paid out of the Cash of the Empire?

(III.) Others again were created *Weywodes*, or Governors of certain Provinces. These Posts they enjoy'd for two Years, and afterwards they were removed to succeed each other, from Place to Place. (*Vid. Das Veraenderte Russland*, p. 15. and *l'Histoire Genealog. des Tartars à Leyde* 1726, p. 725.) It was in former Times, customary, that if a Nobleman was found guilty of imbezzling the Effects belonging to the Crown, such Deficiency was, in some Measure, demanded of the whole Family. e.g. If such a Person was condemned to be beheaded, the Family lost twelve Degrees in Nobility, and their Estates. This obliged the Families to watch each others Conduct; Whence a poor and honest Man was assisted with Mony; But a Spendthrift and Libertine, was deprived of all Opportunity of Undertaking any Thing of Moment. Nay the Family itself, if they disliked a Person's Management, who had a Publick Employment, would protest against his Conduct, after which they were not made answerable for any Deficiency; And their Estates, which otherwise would be liable to Confiscation, remained in the Family.

XXXVIII. BEFORE I conclude this Prince's Character, I must just mention one of his amorous Adventures; Because, even in this Point, there appears a particular Circumstance, wherein this Prince differed from the Customs of his Predecessors.

XXXIX. FOR though the Czars were never wont to visit their Subjects, in particular, nor even their nearest Relations: Yet *Czar Alexius* used often to visit divers Noble Families in private. These frequent Visits gave Occasion to His falling in Love, among others, with a Lady of Quality, who, in due Time, brought forth an Evidence of the *Czar's* Affection. This Lady He married to a Nobleman call'd *Muscbin Puschkin*, and the Son this Prince had by Her was created *Kniese*; But it happening shortly after, that the *Czar* married, a second Time, a Lady call'd *Narischkin*, the Wife of *Muscbin Puschkin*, animated, perhaps, by Jealousy, dropt some injurious Expressions, against Her, and the Matter being Examined into, both she and her Son were sent to *Astracan*, though not altogether with the *Czar's* Consent, where she soon after died.

XL. AT His Death, He left his last Consort *Narischkin*, a Sister, three Princes, viz. *Feodor*, *John*, and *Peter*, and the above-mentioned five Princesses.

XLI. BEFORE His Death he made Peace with all His Neighbours, except with the *Turks*, with whom there yet subsisted a Dispute about the City of *Czigerim* or *Czenchrim*.

XLII. His Son *Feodor* or *Theodore* succeeded Him, who was a Prince of a weak Constitution, and peaceable Disposition, which made Him not much concern Himself with Affairs of importance. He was a Lover of Poetry, vocal Musick, Building, and fine Horses.

XLIII. IN His Time, the Clergy began first to preach without Book, which His Preceptor, a Fryar, *Simon Petotski*, used frequently to do, as Opportunity served: His Sermons are printed in large *Folio*; But by Report, this Man was a better Orator and Poet, than Divine, because both his Poetical and Theological Books were stuff'd with Fables, and supported by very weak Arguments.

XLIV. THIS *Czar* convened the Nobility, and ordered them to bring their Patents, and Charters of Privileges, to Court, in Order to have them confirm'd. And when He had the Papers together, He threw the whole Heap into the Fire, and declared, that, for the future, their Liberties and Prerogatives should be grounded only upon Merit, and not upon Birth (40).

XLV. HE introduced Vocal Musick in Churches, according to the *Roman* Notes. He also began to improve the Schools, and to endow them with Revenues.

XLVI. HE embellished the City of *Muscow* with Stone-Buildings, and took great Pains to have other Cities repair'd; For the publick Buildings that were of Wood, or Brick, He caused to be pull'd down, and new Stone-ones to be built in their Room.

XLVII. HE lent Money out of His Treasury, and furnish'd Materials to private People, who were not in a Capacity to build such Houses, to be repaid in ten Years. This good Regulation would have made the City of *Muscow* very Magnificent, if His sudden Death had not prevented it.

G g

XLVII. His

XLVIII. His being a Lover of Horses prov'd very advantageous to the *Empire*. For he sent for good Stone-Horses and Mares from *Prussia*, and set up several Studs, in convenient Places, whence, in a short Time, there was a Breed raised, sufficient, in some Measure, to supply the Occasions of the Court, as well as of the Army. But after his Death, that Matter was neglected. The Officers of His Stables were highly esteem'd by Him.

XLIX. AMONG other good Regulations, He also introduced a new Polity, for the better Government of the City of *Muscov*, and commanded the Streets of that City to be shut up at Night, and a Watch to be kept.

L. 'TILL His Time, the *Tartarian* Customs to shave the Head, and to wear Calottes or Scull-Caps, was in Use, which, as well as the *Tartarian* Habit, He abolished, and introduced the *Polish* Dress, which was chiefly occasioned by the long War His Father had with the *Poles*; And He Himself often used to be dressed in a *Polish* Habit, especially when He went a Hunting.

LI. His first Wife was a Lady, named *Agaphia Simionova*; she was of a *Polish* Family, call'd *Gruscbetski*, but did not live long.

LII. NOTWITHSTANDING His weak Constitution, His chief Favourite, and Privy-Counsellour, *Jasykow*, persuaded Him to marry one *Martha* or *Marvea Matwecwna*, almost on his Death's-Bed, meerly to hinder the Succession of His half Brother, *Peter*. Her Father was a new created Nobleman, the Son of a Scrivener, *Matbias Apraxin*, by Name. But it seems the *Czar* was already reduced to so weak a Condition, that He never touched Her, and soon after died without Heirs.

LIII. AFTER the Death of *Feodor*, or *Theodore*, there were two Brothers left, *John* and *Peter*, the first thirteen, and the other ten Years of Age. *John* being but weak in Understanding, as well as Sight, the Senators set Him aside, and declared *Peter* *Czar*, which occasioned a Rebellion. For the Princess *Sophia*, *John*'s own Sister, and *Peter*'s half Sister, with her Mother's Brother, *Miloslawski*, endeavour'd to bring her own Brother upon the Throne, and herself to the Regency, during the Prince's Minority. They persuaded the President of the

Coun-

Council of War, Prince *Cbowanski*, an old General, but otherwise not a Man of any extraordinary Parts, to assist the rightful Successor, and exterminate the Opponents; They gained also the chief of the *Strelitzes*, who lived in *Muscow*, to side with them.

LIV. To execute this Design, they appointed a certain Day, on which the Princess ordered some of the most crafty of the *Strelitzes*, of each Regiment, to publish abroad, early in the Morning, before the Soldiers were up, that the *Czarina Nariscbkin*, had smother'd Prince *John*, with a Cushion. The Soldiers hearing of this horrid Action, went to the Court in a great Fury. In the mean while, the Princess had caus'd the Alarum-Bell to be rung, which made the whole City cry out, the *Nariscbkins* have murdered Prince *John*. But when some of the Senators, and especially Prince *Oderewski*, for whom the People had some Respect, came, and told them, that it was a false Report, and that both Princes were alive; And therefore desired them to make no Tumult, that might frighten the Princes in their Sleep, *Oderewski* adding, that he would go and shew them the Princes alive, this appeased the *Strelitzes*. But before the Princes were dressed, the Princess sent down some Casks of Brandy to the Rebels, under Pretence of quieting them. After this the *Czarina Dowager Natalia* came out, with her own Son, *Peter*, and her Step-Son, *John*, and shewed them both to the People, and the Princes themselves exhorted them to be quiet; Whereupon they were about to separate, and to return every Man to his own Home. Notwithstanding this, the Princess *Sophia* sent them Word, that if they did not this Day make an End of the Rebels, of whom she had given them a List, they would find the Consequence of it, the next Day, to their Sorrow.

LV. UPON this the People, who were now warmed with Brandy, immediately laid hold of *Ivan Nariscbkin*, the *Czarina's* eldest Brother, who was leading his Sister by the Hand, tore him from her, and threw him down from the Gallery upon the Pikes. They then went in Quest of the Rest, who were in the List, and in their Fury, or thro' Ignorance, murder'd a great Number of them; Which Tumult lasted three Days and three Nights. Among others were kill'd *Theodore Soltikow*, who resembled another Bro-

ther of the *Czarina's*, *Anastafius Narischkin*, which latter was accus'd of Perjury; Prince *George Dolgorucki* and his Son, the Chancellor *Jafykow*, the Secretary of State *Larionow*, and *Matbern* Physician in ordinary, with several more. The *Czarina's* Father *Kiril Narischkin*, an old harmless and quiet Man, and his Wife they thrust into a Convent, obliging him to become a Fryar, and her a Nun; And because they could not find *Anastafius Narischkin*, who had hid himself in a Church, under the Altar, they tortured some to confess where he was. Nay, they even threaten'd the *Czarina*, they would lay Hands on her, if she did not deliver him into their Hands. The Princess *Sophia* persuaded the *Czarina* to a Compliance, pretending she would intercede for him. But notwithstanding the *Czarina* and the Princess led him to them, and begg'd for his Life, with Tears (That the Princess who was the Author of all this Mischief, made this Intercession from her Heart, is hard to believe) they tore him from them, carried him first into the Chancery, before the President of War the Lord *Cbowanski*, where, under Pretence of many Accusations he was severely tortured, and afterwards brought to the Market Place, and cut to Pieces.

LVI. AFTER this they crown'd both Princes, and declar'd the Princess Regent, which at Length, put an End to this Rebellion.

LVII. SOON after this, the *Czarina Natalia* went, under Pretence of Devotion, with both the *Czars*, and some of the Senators, to a Convent call'd *Troitza*, whither she immediately summon'd the whole Nobility, and most of the Senators, from *Muscow*; When these were together, they sent to the Rebels in *Muscow* to deliver the Authors of this Insurrection, who immediately without any Hesitation, sought for those, whom they knew to be guilty, and sent them, together with the tenth Man in each Regiment, amounting to above 2000 Men, to the Convent. All these, before they departed, receiv'd the Sacrament, took Leave of their Wives and Children, and prepared themselves willingly to dy rather than to bear the Name of Rebels. Before they came to the Convent, every two Men carried a Block, and the third a Hatchet, and the Ring-leaders had Halters about their Necks, as an Acknowledgment, that they thought they deserv'd Death. In this

this Posture, they presented themselves in the Court of the Convent, before the Window, where the two *Czars* were, laid down their Necks upon the Blocks, saying only; We all are guilty, and it depends alone upon the Pleasure of the *Czars* to punish not only us, but also all our Families; we wait for nothing but our Sentence. Thus these 2000 Men lay above three Hours, before a Resolution was taken. In the mean Time, the President, Prince *Cbowanski*, and his Son, were sent for, and were taken in Custody before they could reach the Convent. The Senators would have examin'd the Case according to the ordinary Form of Process; But *Miloslawski* (who had his particular Reasons for it) addressing himself to the *Czars*, said: Since *Cbowanski* and the other Ring-leaders acknowledge themselves to be guilty, to what End any further Examination? To which most of the others agreed, none of them having any Inclination to stay there longer. Whereupon the Prince *Cbowanski*, his Son, and about 30 of the Chief of the Rebels, were beheaded; and the Rest dismissed.

LVIII. THE Reason *Miloslawski* had for proceeding so precipitately, and to hasten *Cbowanski's* Death, he kept very secret, and the Truth thereof was never known till after his Death.

LIX. THIS Tragedy being at an End, both *Czars* reign'd, in Conjunction with the Princess. She had her Image stamp'd upon the Coin, together with those of the two Brothers, and sign'd all Writings, not only in the *Empire*, but also to Foreign Courts; She frequented the Senate diligently, and put the Members of the Senate in Mind of their Duty, with harsh as well as mild Expressions; She govern'd with great Prudence, and shew'd a great Zeal for the Welfare of the Empire (41).

LX. AS to her Person, she was of a noble Presence, and a beautiful Countenance. By the Laws and Regulations she made, and the Intrigues she carried on, she may reasonably be judg'd to have been of a great Capacity and Penetration, and of a Cholerick-Sanguine Complexion. Which appears on the one Hand, by her great Passion for Rule, and the Enmity and Hatred she bore against her half Brother *Peter*. And, on the other, by the Affection she had for Prince *Gallizin*, and after him for *Scheglowitow*,
Secre-

Secretary of State. Perhaps I shall have an Opportunity to say more of this Matter in another Place.

LXI. HER Love to her Brother *John*, and Hatred to *Peter* (42), made her spare no Pains to procure a Wife for the former. Among others she proposed *Paraskowia*, Daughter to *Alexander Soltikow* (43), who was counted the most beautiful Woman in the whole *Empire*. She had been chosen before, for the deceased Brother *Theodore*, or *Feodor*, but the Match was prevented by the above-mention'd *Jafkow*, for his private Interest, who persuaded the *Czar* to marry the Lady *Apraxin*, and managed Matters so, that *Soltikow* was sent to *Jeniseiski*, in *Siberia*, as Governour and *Weywode*, whither his beautiful Daughter was obliged to follow him.

LXII. THE Princess *Sophia* order'd *Soltikow* to send his Daughter immediately to *Muscow*, and himself to come soon after: Accordingly, he sent her in a disguis'd Habit, with one of his Relations, and another Woman with her, so privately, from *Siberia* to *Muscow*, that no Body knew any Thing of it; And three Days after her Arrival, she was declared *Czarina*, and the Nuptials consummated.

LXIII. IT was observable in *Czar John*, that tho' his Understanding was but weak, yet he was very haughty and severe. However, he had a great Regard for the Welfare of the *Empire*; And notwithstanding he lov'd his Sister very much, yet her reigning jointly with him and his Brother did not please him; and he, upon all Occasions, rather sided with his Brother than with her. He also often declared: That when once his Brother was of Age he would reign no longer (44).

LXVI. WHAT

(42) Compare *Das Veränderte Russland*, p. 26. §. 136.

(43) This *Soltikow* was afterwards named *Theodore*, because the *Czar* did not like the Name of *Alexander*.

(44) *Czar John* would never suffer any Body to speak to the Prejudice of his Brother: And it is reported of his Widow, that she herself declared, When once she told him that *Czar Peter* slighted the Princess *Sophia* too much, his Answer was, *Sophia* is my own Sister, but she has offended *Peter* so much, that she does not deserve We should look upon her; And if you speak ill of him, I must look upon you as his second Enemy. The Welfare of the whole *Empire* depends upon him, which I am bound to set a greater Value upon, than even upon you, my dearest Wife. When his Brother went with the Army to *Azow*, he ordered Prayers to be put up for him throughout the whole *Empire*, and made a Vow, That if his Brother return'd in Health, he would go on Foot to *Treitzs*, a Con-

LXIV. WHAT afterwards occasion'd the Sister's Jealousy of both her Brothers, and how she came to be depriv'd of her Part in the Regency, would be too tedious to mention here. *Czar John*, at his Death, left a Widow and three Princesses, the eldest of which was afterwards married to the Duke of *Mecklenburg*; the second to the Prince of *Courland*, (who is the present *Czarina*) and the third died unmarried. Order calls me now to the Life and Reign of *Peter the First*.



CHAP. VI.

The Reign of Emperor Peter I.

SUMMARY.

I. II. III. **T**O write a History of the Life and Actions of Peter I. might be a very diffusive Undertaking, and would require great Assistances. IV. The Author does not propose to treat of any of the Actions and Undertakings of this Monarch, which are already made publick. V. VI. The Political Maxims of Great Men and Rulers are liable to be censur'd by the Publick. VII. The Russians are divided in their Opinions as to the Reign of Peter I. VIII. to XXII. Those who extol his Administration of the Government, exaggerate his Virtues under twelve general Heads. XXIII. From which they infer, that his Reign was very advantageous to the Russian Empire. XXIV. to XXVI. Those who condemn his Administration oppose twelve other Articles, by which they pretend to prove, that Russia labour'd under many Hardships during his Reign, and rather suffer'd than was better'd by him. Among these they reckon the Debaucheries of his younger Years;

went 10 Miles from *Moscow*. In the mean Time, he visited the Convents diligently, and distributed Alms plentifully. But when *Czar Peter* return'd, *John* was in so ill a State of Health, that he was obliged to keep his Bed. And the first Time he saw his Brother, he embraced him, saying, Now I thank God, I can die in Peace; And, indeed, he did not live long after.

Years; XXVII. And particularly his Slavlenie, or Christmas Gambols. XXVIII. to XXXIII. A Description of them. XXXIV. to XXXVIII. They likewise censure his Institution of the Preobrasinskian Inquisition. XXXIX. to XLI. His slighting the ancient Counsellors, and Employing new Favorites only. XLII. to XLV. Instances of their sinister Counsels; XLVI. And, among others, that of letting out the Government to Farm. XLVII. to XLIX. The evil Consequences of it shewn in the Instance of the Government of Siberia farm'd to Knees Gagarin. L. to LII. Farther Instances in the other Governments. LIII. LIV. The Decay of the landed Interest, occasion'd by his forcing such Numbers of the Nobility into the Military Service. LV. LVI. The evil Consequences of his extending the Absolute Sovereignty to a higher Pitch than it had been exercis'd formerly. LVII. to LXI. The Disadvantages which accru'd by his sending young Noblemen into Foreign Parts. LXII. LXIII. Damages sustain'd by the Trade of Russia. LXIV. to LXVIII. Inconveniences which arose from the Introduction of new Laws and Customs. LXIX. LXX. Disadvantages which accru'd to the Empire by his changing his Residence, and the tedious Wars. LXXI. to LXXXIV. What occasioned so many Rebellions during the Reign of Peter I. LXXXV. to LXXXIX. A Discovery of the Intrigues of Knees Gagarin, Governour of Siberia, and his private Designs. XC. to XCII. An Account of the Conspiracy of the Czarian Prince Alexewitz, and his Adherents. XCIII. Some Reflections on the new Order of Succession. XCIV. XCV. The Author's Impartiality in these Relations. XCVI. to CVIII. The Observations of a Russian Vassal, on Reading these Relations. CIX. to CXIV. A particular Account of the great Aversion and Dread, which Peter I. had for Water, in his Youth; By what Means he was cur'd of it, and this Dread turn'd into a Pleasure.

I. **I**T is easy to conceive that the Life, Reign and Actions of this great Monarch, cannot be set forth in a small Treatise, much less in one single Chapter; Nay, it is absolutely impossible for a Stranger, and a Foreigner, to pen his History, with all its Circumstances.

II. For, besides that this would require an able Historian, well vers'd in Politicks, who has had the Opportunity of search-

searching into Records: It would, likewise, be necessary, that some one, or more Persons, who were let into the Secret of Things, and, from the Beginning, continually accompanied this Prince, both at Home and Abroad, should supply such a Writer with the real Circumstances of many Things, and help to clear up the Truth of some Matters, which are yet dubious.

III. It cannot, therefore, be expected of me, that I should give a full Account of the Actions of so great a Monarch, much less that I should accompany them with so proper Reflections, in so few Pages as I am here confined to.

IV. AND since a sufficient Account of the Wars He was engaged in, His Travels into Foreign Countries, and the great Alterations he made in the Government of his Dominions, have already been communicated to the Publick by several Writers, I think it would be superfluous to repeat them here; I will, therefore, confine my self wholly to some Events, which, in other Authors, are either not circumstantially enough related, or wholly omitted: To which I shall add, the different Opinions of the *Russians* themselves, concerning the Life and Actions of this their Sovereign, as far as I have been able to gather them, during my Stay in those Regions.

V. BUT as no Man, in this World, can pretend to be wholly free from Censure, so eminent Persons are, in a more especial Manner, liable to it; They have, indeed, like other Men, their Passions and Affections, on one Hand, and their superior Endowments, on the other. The Matter is, therefore, how they have made Use of the latter, and subdued, or at least, resisted the former,

VI. AND as there are many Modern Maxims of State laid down as Standard-Rules, which are, without any fundamental Examination, put in Practice, to accomplish this or that Design, the Justice and Probity of which Maxims are contested by many Divines and Philosophers; I shall ty myself down to a bare Relation of Facts, and leave every one to judge of them for himself.

VII. IN the Introduction, Sect. II. §. VIII. I have already observed, that the great Alteration which this Monarch made

in His Dominions, has been differently judged of by His Subjects.

VIII. THE Opinion of that Party, which approves of his Views and Enterprizes, and exaggerates His Virtues, is as follows

IX. (I.) THEY say, that this Prince was very circumspect, always first duly weighed every Thing He was about to undertake, considered every Circumstance, and then resolved either to proceed, or to drop it. This would have appear'd more evidently, if this Party had shewn us the Motives which induced Him to undertake many Things, and the Views He had in pursuing some of His Enterprizes.

X. (II.) His great Courage and Intrepidity, (say they) by which He, from His Infancy, overcame all His Enemies, at home and abroad, was evident to the whole World. But according to the Proverb: No Prince can have Peace longer than his Neighbours will let him; It would, therefore, have been a great Help, in directing the Judgment of those who are unacquainted with these Affairs, if they had cleared the Grounds from whence all these Animosities proceeded.

XI. (III.) BY His Wars with the *Chinese*, *Turks*, *Swedes*, *Persians* and *Kalmucks*, in which His Glory far surpass'd that of all His Ancestors, He not only acquired great Fame, but procured considerable Advantages to the whole Empire. Among these they reckon; (1.) That He had formed an Army, according to the Manner of the most polite and experienced Nations. (2.) That He had fitted out Fleets, in all the four Seas, which border upon *Russia*; viz. in the *Baltick*, the *White Sea*, the *Palus Moeotis*, and the *Caspian Sea*; To all which the *Russians* were formerly Strangers; especially, the Keeping of Fleets of War, in the two latter, was a Thing never before heard of. (3.) That He left an Army behind him, not only sufficient for the Defence of *Russia* itself; But capable of rendering Assistance to her Friends and Allies. And Experience has shewn, that those Potentates who formerly slighted the Power of *Russia*, now courted her Alliance.

XII. (4.) WITH great Labour, and prudent Foresight, He caused many great and strong Fortresses to be erected, according to the best and newest Plans, and by the Direction of the ablest Engi-

Engineers; And furnished them with good Artillery, and Garrisons, for the Defence of his Country, And, for the Security of his Fleets, made very convenient Harbours; In so much that *Russia* need not, at least for some Time, fear any Enemy,

XIII. (IV.) THEY extol him for having introduced the liberal Arts and Sciences, of which the *Russians* knew little or nothing; For when, formerly, any one understood but never so little of Arithmetick only, he was accounted a learned Man; A Knowledge of *Foreign Languages* was accounted *Heresy*, and the *Mathematicks*, *Physicks* and *Astronomy*, were reputed *Witchcraft*. All which, *Peter I.* caused his Subjects, who lived before in Darkness, to be instructed in, and to enjoy the Benefit of. To this End, he travell'd almost all *Europe* over, contrary to the Customs of former *Czars*, and not only learned himself what he thought might be beneficial to his Country, but also obliged young Noblemen to visit foreign Countries, in order to learn the Arts and Sciences, as well as the Maxims of State in other Countries, for their own Advantage, and for the Benefit of their Country: And, whereas, formerly, the *Russians* knew no more of other Nations, than Others of them, in this *Czar's* Reign, both conceived a very different Idea of each other. 'Till this Century, Foreigners look'd upon the *Russians* to be a *Pagan* and *Barbarous* Nation, like the *Tartars*, hardly susceptible of Knowledge; Nor had they, 'till then, any Information of the Extent, Power and Riches of that Country. On the contrary, whereas the *Russians* had fed themselves up with the blind Imagination that their Country was the best, richest, and most fruitful in the whole World; and that all the *Nemci* (45), (whom they reckoned to be *Heathens*, or, at best, ignorant and obstinate Hereticks, and themselves the best and most *Orthodox Christians*;) must starve, if they did not supply them with Provisions; All these groundless Opinions, and false Ideas, were rooted out, by the Prudence and good Conduct of this Monarch.

H h 2

XIV. (VI.) HE

(45) Under this Name, the *Russians* formerly comprehended all the *European Nations*, who did not understand the *Slavonian* or *Russian Language*; But now only the *German* are understood by it. The Word signifies dumb, or those who cannot talk the *Vulgar Tongue*: And they call themselves *Slavi* (i. e. talking, speaking People) which is deriv'd from the Word *Slava*, Utterance.

XIV. (V.) **H**E freed Religion from many superstitious Ceremonies that had crept into it; Abolished the Patriarchat, which had always been prejudicial to the *Empire*; And, for the Advancement of true Religion, ordered the Printing of the Bible, and many other good and valuable Books; and introduced many other salutary Regulations.

XV. (VI.) **H**IS Inclination for Justice was evident and visible from the Laws and Institutions he had made, in framing of which, he was so solicitous, that he seldom allow'd himself above four Hours Sleep; He made many Extracts with his own Hands from the chief Laws of *Europe*, read them often, or caused them to be read to him, and to be translated into the *Russian* Tongue, the better to judge of the Difference, and to take his Measures accordingly. He accustom'd himself to walk every Day through the Streets, to the End that such of his Subjects as were oppress'd might have an Opportunity to give him Petitions, which he always received in a most gracious manner, and was as ready in doing them Justice.

XVI. (VII.) **F**OR the Encouragement of Trade, which flourish'd more in his Reign, than in former Times, he built new and large Cities; And for the more convenient Transportation of Merchandize, he caused Canals to be cut, and a direct Road to be made between the Cities of *Muscow* and *Petersburg*; for the effecting of which, neither Labour nor Cost were spared.

XVII. (VIII.) **B**Y his great Care, in Searching for Mines, and Introducing several Manufacturies, of which *Russia* had formerly little or no Knowledge, but sent their raw Goods to *England*, *Holland*, and other Countries, to be sold at a low Price, and afterwards, when manufactured, bought them again at a ten Times dearer Rate; By these Means, I say, he rais'd his Revenues near five or six Times higher than they were before (46); And was thereby enabled duly to pay his Ministers, Household, and Army.

XVIII. (IX.) **H**E generously rewarded all his faithful and loyal Servants, of which the Princes *Menshikow* (or *Menzikoff*) *Cantimir*, *Apraxin*, the Generals *Renn*, *Baur*, *Bruss*, *Weide*, and the Ministers

(46) I have already observed, in the foregoing Chapter, that the Revenue, in his Father's Reign, amounted to five Millions, and, therefore, according to this Account, it must now be about twice as much.

Ministers of State, *Jagufinski, Osterman, Schafirov*, and others, were Instances; All of whom, from mean Extraction, became great and rich Men. On the other hand, he punish'd his treacherous and disloyal Subjects, without Regard to Person, according to the Severity of the Law; Some corporally, some capitally, and others by pecuniary Mulcts. Such as were negligent, and would not apply to, and qualify themselves, for useful Employments, he had ever an Aversion to; Examples of which were his first Consort, his own Son, and Sisters: Without, however, exceeding the Bounds of Decency.

XIX. (X.) His Integrity and Fidelity to his Friends and Allies, appear'd sufficiently by his inviolable Attachment to the King and the Republick of *Poland*; He would never give his Consent to any Projects prejudicial to that Republick: And when Proposals were laid before him in Favour of the Duke of *Holstein* (his Son in Law) with Regard to the Crown of *Sweden*, he is said to have given this Answer: *I love my Children, and am oblig'd to assist them: But, in this Case, I must have more Regard to my former Engagements than to my present Interest.*

XX. (XI.) As to his Personal Dispositions, he was beneficent, friendly, laborious, and without Pride; He would accept of Invitations to Dine or Sup with his Subjects, and be satisfied with their usual Table. He would speak to High and Low, and graciously give all possible Assistance to the Meanest. He was no Lover of the great and pompous Delicacies of a Court; And for splendid, gay Apparel, it was so much his Aversion, that he not only dissuaded others from the Use of it, but publish'd an Edict to curb the Exorbitancy of Dress, and all manner of Luxury. He was so laborious, that he would frequently visit his Docks and Yards, where Ships were Building, and with his own Hands perform the Work of a common Shipwright. He was so dextrous at Turning, that he was own'd to be one of the greatest Masters in that Art: And besides, was so well skill'd in Naval, Civil, and Military Architecture and Gunnery, that he surpass'd many profess'd Masters.

XXI. (XII.) His last Regulation of the Succession was a Step of very great Moment; For he thereby abolished the Right of Primogeniture, to the End, that the eldest Princes might not, by
think-

thinking themselves incontestably secure of succeeding, nourish a too early Pride, and, neglecting to improve themselves by Study and Application, should endanger the Welfare of the whole *Empire* by their own evil Conduct.

XXII. By these, and other Instances, they prove, that *Peter I.* procured almost incredible Advantages to the *Russian Empire*, and immortaliz'd his own Name.

XXIII. I SHALL now proceed to give the Reader the Opinion of the opposite Party, who, in many Points, contradict the former, and think the *Empire* labour'd under many Hardships during the Reign of *Peter I.* And these alledge, in general, that whilst the others are fondly pleasing themselves with the Acquisitions, and Extension of the Borders, of *Russia*, they turn away their Eyes from the far greater Ruin of the *Empire* within. And here,

XXIV. I. THEY reckon as one Cause of these Evils, the irregular Course of Life and Debaucheries into which the *Czar* was plunged, in his most early Years, not only to the great Detriment of the *Empire*, but the shortening of his own Days. Among other Reasons, they ascribe this his disorderly Life to his Mother, who being a young Widow, and of a gay and wanton Disposition, neglected his Education, and gave him too early and too large a Scope of Liberty: And tho' Prince *Boris Gallizin*, his Governour, was a Man of fine Understanding; Yet being young himself, and greatly addicted to his Pleasures, he passed the greatest Part of his Time, with the young *Czar*, in the *German Slabodda*, or Suburbs, among Women and Drunkards, such as *Mons. la Fort*, and his Companions: By which Manner of Proceeding a Foundation was laid for many evil Consequences which ensu'd. Besides, his then Tutor, *Satow*, was an ignorant, as well as mean Person, who had nothing to recommend him but a Method in teaching to Read and Write; But whose evil Conduct was of ten Times more Prejudice to the young *Czar*; For he not only introduc'd disorderly and ill-bred Persons to the Prince's Conversation and Intimacy; But he was thereby depriv'd of the Advantages he might have reap'd from Persons of a more polite and refin'd Understanding; Who when they paid their Court to their Prince, were not only coldly received, but affronted and abused.

XXV. THE

XXV. THE most ancient of the Senators, and those who were in the highest Posts in the Administration, being displeas'd at this, endeavour'd to prevent the like for the future, by remonstrating to the *Czar*, that this Course of Life was not only prejudicial to his own Honour, and Health, but to the Welfare of the whole *Empire*; But this rather made the Case worse than better: Especially as his Mother urged him more and more to stand upon his absolute Sovereignty, and, the better to effect it, encourag'd him in these Debaucheries. This had, at Length, so bad a Tendency, that he could not endure any Body near him, who had his Welfare at Heart; And it was but too well known, that these, and the like Irregularities, were the Causes of his Divorce from his first Consort. And that this evil Conduct might be the better conceal'd, he took up his Residence at *Preobrasenskæ*, five *Wersts* from the usual Court or Palace. Here he held Council with his Favourites and Soldiers only, and no Person durst presume to come thither, without Permission, by which Means, Men of Rank and Quality were excluded from approaching his Person.

XXVI. ALL this while, the young *Czar* was increasing the Number of his Soldiers. He admitted the most Vulgar of the People to his Table, with whom he conversed very familiarly. This made them so arrogant, that they not only shew'd very little Respect to Persons of the highest Quality, but treated some of the Senators and Generals with great Insolence. They frequently complain'd of this Usage to one another, some out of Love to the *Czar's* Person, and others by way of Resentment. They also admonish'd these Favourites, to reflect on the Consequences of such a Behaviour; But this, instead of working any good Effect upon them, did but excite them to push on their private Views, by aggravating these Remonstrances of the Lords, with the Addition of many Falsities, which drew the *Czar's* greater Hatred upon them; He even reproach'd some of them with it; But as he could not punish them openly, for the Reflections they had cast upon his Conduct, he was thoughtful of other Means to be reveng'd; And these his Favourites soon contrived. Their first Attempt was to introduce a general Corruption of Manners, and this they did under the Pretence of celebrating what they call the *Slavlenie*. This is a Custom in *Russia*, where the Priests, and all the Clergy,

at

at *Christmas* Time, go from House to House, in their respective Parishes, singing Hymns on the Birth of *CHRIST*, and congratulating the House-keepers on Occasion of the Festival, who are wont to treat them in Return, and make them Presents, every one according to their Ability.

XXVII. *SOME* Noblemen and Citizens used, likewise, to divert their Families, in the same manner, by visiting their Friends in the Holidays, by which Means their Children had an Opportunity of exercising themselves in Conversation, and Congratulating their Relations, for which they had usually some trifling Presents made them.

XXVIII. *THE Czar*, likewise, began this *Slawlemie*, and at first took only his Domesticks with him, amongst whom his Tutor, *Satow*, represented the Priest, as Director; And they went into such Houses only where they knew they should be welcome.

XXIX. *BUT* this Matter soon ran a greater Length; For the *Czar* persuaded some Senators, and other Persons of Distinction, to go with him, who looking upon it as an innocent Diversion, invited the *Czar*, with his Retinue, to their Houses, and made them welcome.

XXX. *THIS* Diversion, at first, consisted in nothing but Drinking, and some other less Indecencies, which might have been born with, had it stopt there; But these Processions, and this unusual Conduct of the *Czar's*, being liable to Censure, and occasioning some Reflections, he endeavour'd to draw in as many as he could of the first Distinction; He therefore invited all his Courtiers, Ministers of State, and Officers of the Army to it, who together made a Company of more than 300 Persons. This Company being too great and eminent to be headed by a common Priest (which was the Character *Satow* represented) it was thought proper to give him a Name of more Distinction, and to dignify the Assembly by some great Title.

XXXI. *SATOW* was therefore call'd *the Patriarch of Bacchus*, and under him were appointed 12 Archi-Episcopal *Bacchanalian*-Assistants, who had their common Priests, Deacons, Clerks, &c. subservient to them; And the whole Assembly bore the Name of *Bacchus's Ecclesiastical State*. The *Czar's* Jesters were made Masters of the Ceremonies, and Treasurers, or Almoners; Bottles
were

were used instead of *Censers*; Wine and Brandy supply'd the place of *Holy-water*, and *Aims* were distributed with Cudgels, &c.

XXXII. **T**HIS Train went from House to House, in Sledges, 12 or 20 in each Sledge, the Masters of the Ceremonies rank'd them in Order with great Clubs in their Hands; and if any one committed a Fault, especially if he was suspected of being a false Brother, he receiv'd the Sacerdotal Blessing with the Club's End; But if Deacons or Priests were guilty of any Errour, their Punishment was to drink off a Quart of common Malt Spirits.

XXXIII. **T**HUS these Processions caused many sober People to get a Habit of Drunkenness, and some, who were treated in that Manner, died, the same Night, almost before they could reach their own Habitations. He likewise put the Inhabitants of *Muscow* under such Apprehensions, that no body durst to speak publickly any Thing against the *Czar*, or his Favourites; And when any Person was informed against, he was treated with the utmost Cruelty, and the Informer rewarded. Orders were moreover, issued, that no one, under pain of Death, should dare to cast any indecent Reflection on the *Czar*; And that whoever had an Information to bring against any Person, should be admitted to the *Czar's* Presence, or be allow'd to make it before the *Preobrasenskian* Inquisition, and the Informer have one half of the Criminal's Estate. This put People in Fear of their own Servants, because it might easily happen, that a Word might elcape, which any wicked Person might take an Advantage of.

XXXIV. **P**RINCE *Ramodanowski*, who was President of this Inquisition, with the Title of *Arch-Emperour*, was a Man of cruel Temper, and strong Constitution; Of the latter he gave Proofs, by drinking Brandy by Quarts, as he did of the former, by Hanging, Beheading, and Torturing, several innocent Persons, without Examination. And when he was asked, (as it often happen'd) why he tortured such or such a Person, his Answer was, he must needs be guilty, or he would not have been imprisoned.

XXXV. **T**HE *Czar* coming once, when he had just tortured a Person, in this Manner, and asking him what was his Crime, he gave His Majesty the same Answer: And upon Examination
I i of

of the Case, the *Czar* found the tortur'd Person guilty of nothing deserving such Treatment, he having been accused by his Neighbours only, on a trifling Account.

XXXVI. YET this Edict was not reversed; But, on the contrary, Orders were renewed to all the Governours of Provinces, that such as might be informed against, either for High-Treason, or for speaking against the *Czar*, should immediately be sent fetter'd to *Procbrasenskoe*; Which cost many Persons, either wholly innocent, or guilty of small Crimes, their Honour, Estates, and Lives.

XXXVII. WHEN a Thief, or other Criminal was condemn'd, and brought to the Place of Execution, if he there gave an Information of Crimes, whether true or forged, committed by any Governour, or General, though only in Hopes of a Pardon, or at least a Reprieve, his Execution was immediately respited, and he, together with the Person accused, immediately sent to *Procbrasenskoe*, to the Ruin of many Persons, as I have said before.

XXXVIII. THIS *Slavlenie*, was continued to the *Czar's* Death. However, the Confederacy in *Astracan*, having, among other Reasons for their Revolt, complained, that the *Czar*, to the Scandal of the Church, had given the Titles of Patriarch and Bishops, to Fools and Ideots, they were altered, and *Satow* had the Title of *Arch-Pope*, and his twelve Bishops that of *Cardinals*, given them: This so offended all the *Roman-Catbolick* Princes, and, in a particular Manner, the *Roman Emperour*, and the *Electors*, by the *Czar's* misusing the Title of *Arch-Emperour*; That if, at that Time, there had not been some Particular Views, with Regard to *Russia*, it might have been the Occasion of great Troubles.

XXXIX. THE third Reason alledg'd by this Party, why the *Russian Empire*, during this Reign, received more Damage than Benefit, is what I have already mentioned; viz. that the chief Families being become disaffected, on Account of these great Irregularities, had withdrawn their Loyalty from the *Czar*, and chose rather to live in Retirement, absent from the Court, than in the Service of the *Empire*: This gave an Opportunity to the Favourites, to fix themselves in the high Posts, and to raise
the

the Fortunes of their Families and Relations. At first there were above twenty of these Favourites, some Noblemen, and others of mean Extraction, but all wild and extravagant Youths, who look'd no farther than the present Time. Among these, the Chief were the following, *Gregorius Lukin*, to whom Prince *Menscbikow* had been a Servant, but after *Lukin's* Death, became Favourite of the *Czar*, Prince *Czereaskoy*, and *Troccurow*, *Wolbimerow*, *Koscbret*, *Dubrowinartica*, *Tscherbatfchow-gawril*, *Menscbikow*, *Sclajew*, *Alexander Menscbikow*, with some others; some, such as *Dubasow*, *Szczepalow* and *Tettischow*; became Favourites long after, and most of them came to a miserable End, or, at present, are of no Consideration, but hated by every body. The last and greatest Favourite of all was *Pospelow*, a Man of no great Genius, and of mean Extraction; yet deserved the Character of a good-natur'd honest Person, whom afterwards the *Czarina Dowager* made a Gentleman of the Bed-Chamber.

XL. AMONG the *Czar's* Jesters, who led a Profligate Life, and gave the greatest Offence to the Nobility, were the above-mention'd *Satow*, His Tutor, *Turgenaw Schanskey*, *Lenni*, *Schaberski*, *Taracanow*, *Kirsantievitz* and *Ufcbakow*. The latter had the Character of being the best, and never gave Offence to any Man, without express Orders. His Endeavours were only to divert the *Czar* with his Jokes and Gestures; and, at the same Time, he did much Good to the People; by which Means he amass'd great Riches, and yet was beloved.

XLI. AMONG the Foreign Favourites, the first and greatest was *Monf. la Fort*, who had a great Share in Debauching the *Czar*; Next to him was *Jagufinski*, a Man of great Capacity, whom the *Czar* had Reason to value, for his good Services, and no one could, with Justice, complain of him.

XLII. BUT the Damage the Country farther suffered, by the others, was: They begg'd the greatest and most important Offices, for their Friends and Relations, from whom, however, they exacted a Retaliation; And finding this Method very profitable, they began to sell the Governments and Waywodships, to the Highest Bidder, without Regard of Person. These, having bought them dear, made use of every Method, not only to get

their Money back, but to make ten, or sometimes twenty *per Cent.* of it, which brought inexpressible Hardships upon the Country.

XLIII. AND though Complaints had often been made about these Extortions; yet the Favourites had always taken Care to play their Cards so, that the Truth never came before the *Czar*; And the Petitioners were forced to return Home, after a great Expence of Time and Mony, to no Purpose: Nay, some Complainants were punished as Malecontents and Rebels.

XLIV. THIS encouraged those avaricious Governours and *Waiwods*, to oppress the Subjects still the more; Especially as the *Czar* was seldom present, but spent most of His Time in His Travels: Or when He came to *Muscow*, He took up His Residence at *Preobrasenskoe*, whither no body was allowed to come, without special Permission; And when he drove through the Streets, it was with so much Swiftnes, that it was impossible to come near Him with a Petition: This, say they, caused a greater Devastation and Ruin to the Country, than an Enemy would have done.

XLV. TO this they add, as a farther Grievance, that all Noblemen, under thirty Years of Age, were obliged to be Foot-Soldiers, Dragoons, or Sailors. On the other Hand, the very Dregs of the People, through Recommendation of the Favourites, had got into the most important Offices, as those of Country-Judges, Chamberlains, Commissioners, *Waiwods*, Deputy-Governours, and Governours, who had found out Methods, not only to enrich themselves, but to make the *Czar* large Presents of the Mony extorted from His Subjects; By which they obtained his Consent to the new Projects they devised, to squeeze more out of them. This fix'd them more in his Esteem, than the most faithful of his Senators; Nay (say they) it is certain, that no Method of extorting Mony pleased the *Czar* better than that of the *Turks*, which made no Noise among the common People, and gave them no Cause to complain. For this Reason, in the Year 1710, He compos'd a new Senate, partly of the former, and partly of other Persons of a mean Extraction, to which latter, especially, He also entrusted the Inspection of the Mint and Magazines.

XLVI. AND the *Czar* having, at first, divided the *Empire* into eight Governments, and in each of them ordered a Governor-General, to whom he had let the Government, with this Condition, that they themselves should find out Ways and Means that the Money they were taxed at, should be delivered into the Treasury, in due Time, and gave them the Liberty to chuse Deputy-Governours, Counsellours, and other Officers, according to their Pleasure. It was easy to judge, how greatly the Country must have suffered by this; Of which there was a flagrant Instance, in the Government of *Siberia*, to which *Knies Gagarin*, the Governor-General, had caused inexpressible Damages, in the following Manner.

XLVII. WHEN the *Czar* had let out the other Governments, and found that of *Siberia* was rated too low, in Proportion to the Extent of it, he taxed it 200,000 Rubels higher, and then made an Offer of it.

XLVIII. IT was first proposed to *Stroganow* (47), but he declined

(47) The *Stroganowian* Family came from *Solowitschigofskaja* to *Permia*, above 200 Years ago, and established Salt Works near the Place where now *Solkamskaja* is situated; They, in Time, bought of the Heathen *Permiacks* a Place on the River *Schuffowaja*, where they built a City, and erected Salt-Works, called *Schujowskoj*. This Family afterwards got more Land from the said Heathens, partly for Money, partly by Force of Arms, on the Rivers *Schuffowaja* and *Silwa*, where they raised several Fortresses. And when, in the Time of *Czar Iwan* the Tyrant, many Deserters, and others of the *Russian* Army (which was, at that Time, encamped on the River *Kama*) retired to the *Stroganowian* Family, who received them, they raised an Army of 6000 Men, and sent them, under the Command of a *Dona-Cosack* Deserter, call'd *Jermakow*, who had been a great Robber, against the *Wogulitzi*, in *Ugoria*, where they were so lucky to beat these Heathens, wherever they came. Upon this he broke thro' the *Werchoturian* or *Urallian* Mountains, and intrench'd himself on the River *Tura*, at the Place where now the City of *Werchotura* is built, and where the Violence of the Winter-Season oblig'd him to remain. The next Spring, *Stroganow* having sent, to his Assistance, Provisions, Arms and Ammunition, he caus'd a great Number of Boats to be built, with which he went down the *Tura*, into the River *Toboll*, and to the City of *Sibirr*, where the *Tartarian* King, *Katschium Chan*, resided, with whom *Jermakow* had several fortunate Engagements, and, at Length, took the whole Royal Family Prisoners, whom he sent to *Stroganow*, with many other Presents, of great Value. *Stroganow*, who out of Love to his Country, would not enjoy this happy Turn of Fortune alone, sent his Son, with his Prisoners, to *Muscow*, to the *Czar*, to give him an Account of his Progress, and to desire his Majesty to send an Army, capable of taking Possession of the whole Country; For which, Preparations were immediately made, and from this Beginning *Siberia*, by degrees, fell into the Hands of the *Russian* Monarchs. Besides all this, the Family of *Stroganow* twice assisted the *Empire*, when under the greatest Streights, with a Sum of 1,470,000 Ducats, not to mention many other Services and Assurances with which they were, upon all Occasions, ready to support and relieve

clin'd it, with Thanks for the Favour design'd him, and, at the same Time, gave to understand, that he desir'd only to preserve what his Ancestors had got with great Difficulty and Labour for his Family: Nevertheless, he would not fail to assist the *Czar*, and the *Empire*, when required, with some Hundred Thousands of *Rubels*: And no body would accept of the *Siberian* Government at the Rate it was taxed at, 'till a Nobleman, afterwards (*Knies*) *Gagarin*, offered his Service on those hard Conditions.

XLIX. THIS *Gagarin*, I say, who had formerly been *Waiwood* of a Province called *Irkutski* in *Siberia*, and had already experienc'd the Art of extorting Money from the *Siberians*, agreed to the Articles propos'd. And notwithstanding he had formerly been condemn'd to the Gallows, for Male Practices, in the Administration of his *Waiwodeship*, and obtained a Pardon by Means of a great Sum of Money which he had raised in *Irkutski*; Yet this Government was entrusted to him; But how he administred it, the Sequel shew'd.

L. MUCH the same was the Fate of the other Governments. For no sooner had these new Governors, or Farmers, taken Possession of their Posts, than they invented many new Stratagems to impoverish the Country, and fill their own Coffers. Among several others, the following was one. They sent the Commissioners, Clerks, &c. to receive the Contributions, at such Times, as they knew the Peasants had the most Business in the Fields, and the least Money; These poor Wretches were then obliged to sell their Cattel and Corn for half the Value, to satisfy these Cormorants, or make Presents to the Commissioners for a little Respite of Payment. This frequently obliged the Peasants to sell the poor Remains of their Cattle, to fly from House and Home. And as they could not be secure in their own Country, no Nobleman daring to harbour them, above One Hundred
Thousand

relieve their Country: For Instance, among many, *Gregory Stroganow*, during the last War, fitted out two Men of War, each of 64 Guns, with Men, Ammunition, and all Necessaries, to serve against the *Turks*, and, in the *Swedish* War, assisted the State, with very large Sums of Money. This Family, however, always declined accepting of any Employments, or Titles of Honour, till in the Year 1722. *Emperor Peter I.* made the three young Brothers Barons, and Gentlemen of the Bed-Chamber, at the Coronation of the *Empress*. This Family shew'd great Favours to the *Swedish* Officers, during their Captivity, in those Parts.

Thousand of them removed into *Poland, Lithuania, Turkey* and *Tartary*, where they built Villages, and enjoyed more Freedom than they had found in their own Country.

LI. BUT, when on Account of this, and on other Occasions, great Complaints were made, the *Czar*, in the Year 1715, appointed a Commission to examine the Affair; Upon which, most of the Governors were ejected, their Estates confiscated, and some were punished corporally, and capitally; Among which, two Senators had their Tongues burnt out with a hot Iron, for their Perjury. Others who were concern'd in the same Villanies, as Prince *Menshikow*, the two Brothers, *Apraxin*, *Kain*, and several more, bought themselves off with great Sums of Money, and kept their Posts. The Petitioners, in the mean Time, had no Satisfaction, but that of having other Governors put into the vacant Places, who were no better than the former, and who took the same Advantages. All this was, through Ignorance, look'd upon, by the common People, as a great Act of Justice in the *Czar*, while he only drew considerable Sums of Money into his Coffers, by these Proceedings, without relieving the Oppressions of his Subjects.

LII. THE Inquisition was, in all such, and the like Cases, so ordered, that those who were so unhappy to be accused, though innocent, could have no Hopes of escaping; Because the Commissioners had all been Officers of the Guards, who knew no other but the Martial Law, according to which, every small Crime is Corporally or Capitally punish'd; And the *Czar* had, besides, given to them all the Effects of the Condemned, excepting their Ready Money, Gold, Silver, and Jewels, which were delivered into the Treasury.

LIII. ANOTHER Thing, which had contributed to the Ruin of the Country was, that the Noblemen, as I have hinted before, had been obliged to live remote from their Estates, and some had not seen them for twenty Years together; By which Opportunity, their Servants had made great Gains for themselves, but had not endeavoured to improve their Lands, Meadows, and other Appurtenances under their Care: They rather suffered them to decay, if not to run into total Ruin: And thus these Noblemen's Estates, that formerly brought the greatest Quantities

ties of Corn to Market, and into the Magazines, lay waste; Which not only occasion'd a terrible Famine in the Land, but was the Cause of new Taxes, for Provision for the Army.

LIV. IN the mean Time, the Noblemen did not receive the tenth Part of their usual Revenues, and some nothing at all; Nay, they were obliged to be contented, if they could but maintain their Peasants; many of which could not have subsisted, had they not been supported by the Noblemen, with what they got in the War: For this Reason, many of those, to whom the *Czar* would have conferr'd the confiscated Estates, either refus'd them, or if they did accept of them, sold them again immediately, for a Trifle; Because they could make nothing of them, and were obliged to build costly Houses, and lay out more upon them, than the Estates could produce.

LV. (IV.) THAT the *Czar*, from his Infancy, had sought to make himself more absolute than his Ancestors, sufficiently appears by what has been said above; viz. that he had shew'd no Esteem for the wise, prudent, and ancient Ministers of State, but, on the contrary, had treated them like common Servants; For which Reason, it was no Wonder, if he could not confide in them. In the very Beginning of his Reign, he abolish'd the ancient Custom of using, in Proclamations of Council, and Mandates, the Words, *Bolare* (or *Bojare*) *prigovarili*, i. e. *the Senate commands*; and issued out Orders only in his own Name. This Mistrust of the Senate was often the Occasion of his Rejecting the best Councils and Opinions, lest there should be some private Views conceal'd under them. He constantly endeavour'd to breed Enmity between the Senators; and when, either at his Table, or in other Assemblies, they fell into Controversies, it was his greatest Pleasure to hear them, and to set them more at Variance. Nay, if they came so far as to abusive Language, he would seem not to hear it, and begin to discourse with other Persons. And no Example was ever known that he endeavour'd to reconcile Enemies; But for Instances of his sowing and fomenting Diffensions, almost every Day produced new Ones.

LVI. THE greater his Mistrust was of Persons of Distinction, and good Sense, the more Confidence he placed in mean and ignorant Wretches; some of whom would dare to tell him some-

times the Truth, and to propose such Questions to him, as would have cost another Man his Head, tho' these did not incur the least of his Displeasure by it. However, by this pretended Simplicity, he was often deceived, and, many Times, Things came thereby to Light which might better have been conceal'd. This Mistrust of his Ministers was, besides, the Cause that none of the Senators had any real Affection for him, nor would give him their unfeign'd and sincere Advice; Every one endeavouring, rather, to keep his Distance, in Order to be out of Harm's Way.

LVII. (V.) MOREOVER, they reckon, that the Corruption of Youth had not a little contributed to the Ruin of their Country; It had, in former Reigns, been customary for young Noblemen to appear daily at the Czar's Levee, which gave them an Opportunity of being acquainted with wise and prudent Men, to partake of advantageous Conversation, and to recommend themselves by their good Conduct; But this good Custom was abolished, by the young Czar's Retirement to *Preobrasenskoe*, whither none durst presume to come without Permission, and where nothing was to be seen besides visiting from one House or Apartment to another, irregular Assemblies in a Morning, where not only Tea and Coffee, but Wine and strong Liquors laid the Ground to the Days Debauchery; And, in those Assemblies, Cards, Tables and Dice were not wanting; In short, such a scandalous Course of Life was led there, that Youth was insensibly led into all Manner of Luxury.

LVIII. To this they add the Edict, by which Youth was obliged to be sent to *Muscow*, and from thence to travel into foreign Countries; Where no due Care was taken to keep them from Lewdness and Debauchery. Their Parents, being ignorant of the Customs and Manners of those Foreign Countries, knew nothing what Provision it was necessary to make for them there; They only took Care that their Children might not want, in which they knew no Measure, but allow'd them to the utmost of what their Estates could afford.

LIX. WHEN these young Gentlemen came to *Holland*, six, eight, or ten of them lodg'd in one House, and as they hardly knew their Mother Tongue, and less any foreign Language, much Time was lost before they could attempt to learn any Thing. In

the mean Time, being under no Discipline, they fell into all manner of Vice. But what was worst of all, they were not instructed in any Sciences proper for Gentlemen, as Jurisprudence, Politicks, Mathematicks, and the like; but were forced to apply themselves only to Ship-building, Navigation, and Handicraft-Trades; And as they were disgusted at, or ashamed of the latter; So the Ignorance, in which they were educated, was a Bar to their attaining to any Perfection in the former.

LX. FURTHERMORE, the Sons of the best Families were forced to do the Duty of Soldiers, and common Sailors, to labour, and mount the Guard, with the meanest Peasants, by which they contracted those vicious Habits so natural in the Vulgar, which were not easily shaken off again, and consequently no Good could be expected from such Discipline.

LXI. JUST the same Case it was (*according to them*) with the Academy at *Petersburg*, whither the Children of the best Families were sent from all Parts of the *Empire*, from Ten Years old and upwards: Here they were placed, and had Conversation with common Peoples Children, among whom they learned very little of the Sciences, but advanc'd the more in Wickedness; Especially as they were so far from their Parents and Friends, who could not daily assist them, either as to the Necessaries of Life, or a proper Inspection into their Learning. In short, this Party of the *Russians* believe all these Circumstances have concurr'd to the Corruption and Ruin of their Youth.

LXII. (VI.) As to their Commerce, the Transporting of their Trade from *Archangel* to *Petersburg*, and the Monopolies erected there, were, in their Opinion, more pernicious than profitable to the *Empire*; For, (1.) as their Goods were to be carried so far, by Water and by Land, from some Provinces, it took up two whole Years before they could be brought to *Petersburg*; Which (2.) made the Charges so great, that the Goods, when they came to Market, could not be sold without Loss; And therefore, (3.) the Merchants in the Provinces towards *Archangel*, as *Siberia*, *Permia*, *Wiatka*, *Jaroslawe*, &c. who formerly carried on a considerable Trade thither, were oblig'd to leave off Trading, and were ruin'd; And, (4.) the Produce of those Countries consequently lay dead and useless.

LXIII. AND as to the Monopolies, since the General Trade to *China* was prohibited, the best Sables, black Fox-skins, and other precious Commodities, were privately sent to *Poland*, *Turky*, *Tartary*, and *China*, whereby the *Czar* suffer'd as great Loss in the Duty, as he had Profit by the Monopolies; To which private Practices the Merchants were, in a Manner, constrain'd; Since hardly any Thing was left them to trade openly withal; And they were therefore oblig'd to run all Hazards, tho' often to the endangering of their Lives and Fortunes. The Trade of Tar, Pot-Ashes, Caviar, Stock-Fish, and the like Commodities, which was carried on by the *Czar* himself, by Means of his Farmers, had prov'd the total Ruin as well of the Foreign as Inland Merchants, and the poor Peasant was, likewise, thereby depriv'd of his Livelihood: For being greatly wrong'd by the Commissioners, when they brought their Goods to them, they were discourag'd from carrying any more. The Monopoly of Salt was the Ruin of most of the Inhabitants in the Cities; And the Proprietors of the Salt-Works, who formerly had considerable Incomes, and, in Cases of Necessity, could supply the *Empire* with large Sums of Money, were now reduc'd to a State of Insolvency, and oblig'd to let most of their Works ly waste; Which occasion'd so great a Want of Salt, that now they were oblig'd to buy *Spanish* Salt, whereas formerly they could send Salt to *Poland*; All which was of great Prejudice to the *Empire* (48).

LXIV. THE Abolishing of the old, and Introducing of new Laws, caused such a Confusion among the Judges, that they often pronounc'd the most absurd Sentences, and thereby brought many Hundred Persons into the greatest Misfortunes: Of this, particularly, a glaring Instance was the New Regulation of the Succession, published in the Year 1714, wherein it was ordain'd, that, not the First-born always, but whom the Father, by Will, should nominate and appoint his Heir, should inherit his Estates.

LXV. AND although this Regulation was compriz'd in a few Words; Yet it was so obscure, that no Body could come at the true Sense and Meaning of it, which had been the Cause of great Disputes. The College of Justice had, indeed, made some Re-

⁴⁸. Compare *Veränderte Rußland*, p. 37. §. 180. & p. 54 & 57. §. 218. & seq.

marks upon what they could not comprehend, and added some Articles, which seem'd to have been omitted; These they deliver'd to the *Czar*, and intreated him to favour them with a plainer Explication of it: But the *Czar* would not come to a Determination, before the Senators had given him their Opinion; And these, being apprehensive that there was a Snake in the Grass, and that giving their Opinion might be prejudicial to themselves, could not be brought to any Resolution. No one would give his private Opinion; Either not to speak against his own Conscience, and better Knowledge; Or out of Fear of saying any Thing that might clash with the Succession; On which Account it remain'd undecided, and the Dissensions about it rather increased than diminished.

LXVI. WHEN some of the Senators asked him, how he would have it take Place, with Regard to his Daughters, the Act or Regulation of Succession being obscure in that Point; whether, in want of Male-Issue, they should succeed? He (as it is said) only answer'd, *The Circumstances of the Person must be consider'd.* Which Answer gave them very little Satisfaction.

LXVII. As for others, as well Civil as Military Laws, they were much upon the same Footing; There being very few Passages, but what were capable of being explain'd, and interpreted in different Meanings.

LXVIII. IT was very difficult to comprehend, what might be the *Reasons of State* which induced the *Czar* to proceed in this Manner; However, He had open'd Himself so far to some Persons, as to signify his Opinion; That a Sovereign Prince ought always to endeavour to divide the Minds of His Subjects, for which He could have no better Means, than by keeping the Explication of short and obscure Laws to Himself. This, with the Answer I have mentioned above, concerning His Daughters, made some Persons imagine, that the Reasons why he would not declare himself more plainly in Point of the Succession, was; because it might occasion many Persons of Distinction to fall under the Imputation of transgressing the Laws, and thereby lay their Estates open to a Separation, if not a total Confiscation.

LXIX. (VII.) As to the *Czar's* having chang'd His Residence, He may, indeed, have had some Reasons for it: Among which may be reckon'd, His insatiable Inclination for Sea-Affairs, and equipping of Fleets; His Ambition to enlarge the Boundaries of His Empire; But more especially, because no Conspiracy could be so easily form'd against Him, in a Place but just erected, where it was necessary to keep a strong Garrison, as being on the Frontiers; And consequently he would be more secure there; To this End, likewise, He always caress'd his Guards, and took particular Notice, whether their Generals were beloved by them; Which, if He perceived, He immediately removed them. The Truth of this was seen in the Example of Prince *Dolgorucki*, who, for Causes hardly worth mentioning, was divested of his Office, Honour and Estates, and sent to *Siberia*. And, in case a Conspiracy might have happen'd in any of the distant Provinces, he would have had Time to use Means to quell, and bring the Conspirators to Reason. On the other Hand, the whole *Empire* suffer'd, and the Nobility were ruin'd by it; For, (1.) Provisions were brought to *Petersburg* from remote Places, at a Great Expence; Which (2.) might have been brought to *Moscow*, as lying in the middle of the *Empire*, for a quarter of the Charges. (3.) The Correspondence between the Senate and the several Governments, was slow and inconvenient. (4.) Those, who, through Oppression, were under a Necessity of petitioning the Court, instead of a Remedy, ruin'd themselves by travelling so far, and by the dear living at *Petersburg*; And, (5.) For this Reason, no due Inspection could be had over the Commissioners, and other Officers of the Crown, and other petty Tyrants, who took the Advantage of their Sovereign's Absence.

LXX. If the Number of Men, and Sums of Money, which the Building of this Residence cost, and that during a tedious War, were to be exactly computed, they would exceed even all Belief. But to mention a few Particulars; Some pretend, (1.) That above One Hundred Thousand Peasants, who were, every Year, driven thither, like Cattle, perished, through hard Labour, and Want of Provisions. (2.) This Place being a Frontier-Town, there was a Necessity of keeping a Garrison there

there of Ten Thousand Men, which was a very great Charge for the Country to maintain. (3.) The Place could not well be fortified, on Account of its Situation, and the Inundations of Water, which did, every Year, considerable Damage. It, therefore, requir'd a great Annual Charge to keep them in Repair, or they would have fallen to Ruin. (4.) After the Inhabitants had built large Houses of Stone, according to the Draughts first given them, they were constrain'd to pull them down again, and rebuild them twice or thrice, and were not then secure, that the last might give Satisfaction. And though, with Regard to the great Damage the *Empire* had sustain'd, the Building of this City might make some Amends; Yet the following Projects were, without the least Advantage. As (1.) the Works at *Azow*, and the Fortrefs at *Taganrock*. (2.) The Havens made on the *Baltick*; And, (3.) the many Canals, especially the two last, near *Kamiscbinka*, and *Iwanosero*; All which cost many a Hundred Thousand Men's Lives, who perish'd by Hunger and Cold; And many Thousands were killed by the Ground falling in upon them, and burying them alive. The Wars with the *Suedes*, *Turks* and *Perfians*, had swept away above Three Hundred Thousand Men, so that from the Beginning of the first War with the *Turks*, in twenty-eight Years, a Million of Men might have been more in the Country, which was a Loss of above 120000 Rubels, yearly Revenue. All which might have been prevented by a good Management, which was impossible in such precipitate Proceedings; And tho' the *Empire* gain'd by the War with *Sweden*, yet it was unadviseable to open a War again so soon, with the *Perfians*, when the Country was impoverish'd; Especially, as it was very difficult to maintain those Conquests, where many Thousands of Men must necessarily perish by an Intemperature of Heat and Air, which they were not used to.

LXXI. (VIII.) THIS Party, moreover, condemns the *Czar's* Severity, and hasty Introducing of so many foreign Customs, which had been the Cause of many Rebellions, and of much Bloodshed. The first of these happen'd in the Year 1682. by the Instigation of the Princess *Sophia*, of which I have given some Account above; The Occasion of which (say they) was as follows: The Princess had perceived that the young Prince, at Ten Years of Age, treated
some

some of the most ancient and honourable Men of the Court, in a very unpolite and unbecoming Manner. The *Narischkin* Family was grown so proud and haughty, that they neither valued the Princess, nor Prince *Iwan*; and had, besides, affronted many ancient Families and Senators. To this was added the ill Conduct of the *Czarina-Mother*, and her Favourite, a Singer, nam'd *Sergey*. And when the Princess talk'd about these Matters to the *Czar*, it frequently occasion'd high Words; So that there was a great deal of ill Blood bred between them, and the Minds of the People were divided; But the Princesses Party grew the strongest. After this, Factions increased daily; And in the Year 1689 the Conspiracy of the *Ocolnischzei*, or Minister of State, *Scheglowitow*; In the Year 1696 that of *Sokaonin*, Minister of State; *Puschkin*, a Lord of the Bed-Chamber, and Colonel *Sinckler*; And in the Year 1698 that of Six Regiments of Soldiers broke out. About the Time that this latter took Place, the *Czar* began to shew his great Strength of Body and Severity, in the Execution of many Thousands of Persons, most of them innocently, and partly with his own Hands. However, the latter Part of this Report is contradicted by many.

LXXII. IN the Year 1703 the *Casan* and *Ufim Tartars* rebell'd, kill'd and took Prisoners many Thousands, and sold the Prisoners to the *Turks*. The Reason of this Rebellion was the *Czar's* sending a common Clerk, one *Sawin*, a savage, brutish Person, to *Casan*, in Order to raise some Thousands of Recruits, among the *Russians*, to exact a great Number of Horses from the *Tartars*, and to send them both to the Army. According to the Orders he had, the Governour was to obey him in all his Demands; and in Case he refus'd, he was to put him in Irons. This young Man, who was but about 25 Years of Age, and had never been a Soldier, or bore any other Title but that of Commissary, behav'd in a very Tyrannical Manner. He compell'd every one to list in the Service whom he could come at, without any Distinction, whether Noblemen, Citizens, or Peasants: The Governour himself was forced to pay him a great Deference. Having no Coat of Arms, he put his own Name on the Colours and Standards of the new-rais'd Regiments. He made Officers according to his own Pleasure, and kept a whole Company, with Colours and Musick,

Musick, in his House, because he had seen the Field-Marshal do so. When he passed by the Guards, or review'd the Regiments, he obliged them to salute him with their Colours. He violated the Privileges of the *Tartars*, and made them pay new Contributions, took away their Horses, and pay'd but just what he pleas'd for them; and many more Excesses he committed, such as would hardly bear the Relation.

LXXIII. MANY of the *Russians*, who had, likewise, suffer'd, in the same Manner, bore it with Patience; But the *Tartars*, who resolv'd not to bear with it, first sent a Deputation, and represented to him how unjust, and contrary to their Privileges it was, to take that from them by Force, which they were ready to find Ways and Means to pay voluntarily, if Necessity, and the Service of the Country, required it, and the *Czar* would be graciously pleas'd to let them know by a written Order what was the *Quota* he expected from them. This enrag'd *Sawin*, and to be reveng'd, tho' after this Declaration, he could not publickly shew his Displeasure, he dissembled, made himself familiar with them, and invited the chief of them to a Feast; Where, knowing they would drink neither Beer nor Brandy, he had had a particular Sort of Mead prepar'd, with which he intoxicated them in such Manner, that Eleven Persons of them died the same Night, and the Rest lay sick a long Time, and narrowly escap'd with their Lives. Notwithstanding this, they would not attempt any Thing, before they acquainted the Court with these Proceedings; To this End, they sent a Petition to the *Czar*, but the Deputies were sent back, not only without Redress, but even with Contempt. They, here-upon, resolved, to revenge their Sufferings, with Fire and Sword, and march'd with 50000 Men into the Kingdom of *Casan*, burnt several Hundred of Villages, kill'd (as I have said above) many Thousands of Men, and sold the Prisoners to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. This obliged the *Czar* to make them a Promise of maintaining them in their Privileges, and to order a Committee to enquire into this Affair. However, *Sawin's* Punishment was no more than being deprived of his Office (49).

LXXIV. IN

(49) This *Sawin* in the Year 1716. was again made Chief Clerk of the Chancery, in the City of *Tobolsky*; But at Length, as I have been since inform'd, was rewarded with the *Kaut*, and the Gallows.

LXXIV. IN the Year, 1701, a Printer, called *Gregory Talitzkoy*, caused a Rebellion, by dispersing certain printed Libels, which he likewise posted up in the Markets and Streets, and, in which, he stiled the *Czar* the real *Anti-Christ*, and endeavour'd to prove, that His Extraction, Birth and Conduct, agreed with the Prophecies of *Anti-Christ*, in the Bible. Some of the Priests, and most common of the People, gave Countenance to this idle and wicked Prophecy. The Author, however, when he found he could be no longer in Safety at *Muscow*, attempted to escape into *Siberia*. But the *Czar* having offered a Reward of a Thousand Ducats, which were exposed to View in the great Market, in *Muscow*, in an open Lanthorn, for whomever should bring him to Justice; He was soon taken. This *Talitzkoy*, and his Adherents, being put to the Torture, were convicted, and he, with two of his Accomplices, were brought to the great Market, upon a Scaffold erected for that Purpose, where they were smoaked with a Corrosive Matter, 'till, in a short Time, all the Hair fell from their Heads and Beards, and their Bodies melted away like Wax; which exquisite Torture they endured for eight Hours before they died: After which the Scaffold, together with their Bones, were burnt.

LXXV. IN the Year 1721, a Fryar, in the Government of *Casan*, presumed to preach the same Prophecy, in the Market-Place; But he was immediately taken up, try'd and beheaded.

LXXVI. IN the Year 1704, the City of *Astracan*, and other smaller Places adjacent, rebell'd, on Account of the new Ordinance to oblige every one to change their Apparel, and cut off their Beards. When the Governour, by Order of the *Czar*, published this Ordinance, by which it was declared, that if the Nobility, Citizens or Garrison, should refuse to comply therewith, they should pay a Penalty of a *Rubel* for the wearing of a *Russian* Coat; and, for their Beards, ten *Copeiks*, (or about Sixpence) as often as they appear'd with them, in the Streets; the Citizens first began to complain of this Innovation, to the Governour, alledging, that they could not believe it to be the *Czar's* Order; Because of the Impossibility of making such an Alteration, so suddenly, in those remote Countries: And, be-

sides, that it would be too hard upon them, among their other Taxes, to be obliged to the great Expence of providing the Requisites for these new-fashion'd Cloths; They, therefore, entreated him that they might be left to their Liberty, in this Case, as the *Czar's* Father had left them, when He abolish'd the *Tartarian* Apparel; Not forcing the *Russian* Habit upon any one; But the Court beginning to wear it first, the whole *Empire* followed afterwards, by Degrees.

LXXVII. BUT the Governour, who could not condescend to their Desire, put the *Czar's* Order in Execution, and punish'd several of the Citizens, for Disobedience. Upon this, they, together with the whole Garrison, made an Insurrection, cut off the Governour's Head, and gave his House and Furniture a Prize to the Populace. After this, they made some of the Citizens their Chief Commanders, and sent Proclamations to the *Cossacks*, *Calmucks* and *Tartars*; In which they vilified the *Czar* with the Name of Tyrant, and Heretick. Among other Articles laid to his Charge, they accused the *Czar* of having, to the Scandal of the Church, converted the *Slavlenie*, which had been instituted to the Honour of the ALMIGHTY, into a Profane Masquerade, and of having given his Jester the Title of Patriarch, and twelve of his Comrades that of Archbishops. By this Proclamation they drew over several to their Alliance, and got together an Army of above Twenty Thousand Men. However, they did not pretend to act offensively, but only stood upon the defensive, in order for an Accommodation, and to obtain a Repeal of this Ordinance. But, to the *Czar's* good Fortune, they had no General, to bring them into Discipline, and Order.

LXXVIII. THE *Czar*, hearing this disagreeable News, which gave him fresh Uneasiness, was at first at a Stand what to do in this Case; For to send a few Men thither was not adviseable, and a great Army he could not spare, because of the War with the *Swedes*; Neither was it proper to give the Rebels Time to increase their Body. At Length, he resolved to send the General, Count *Seberemetow*, with two Regiments of Infantry, and his own Life-Guard, consisting of 320 Gentlemen, with which he had Orders to join the *Militia* and the Garrison of *Casan*; Well knowing
that

that *Scheremetow*, being belov'd and esteem'd by the Populace, on Account of many Victories he had obtain'd, and as being a Mild, Prudent, and Eloquent Man, would do more by his Presence than some others with a much larger Force. This Proposal was not only approved of by his Friends, but was a secret Satisfaction to his Enemies, who were in Hopes, as he was sent thither with so small a Number of Men, if he should be cut off, there would be the better Chance for them to advance their Fortunes. *Scheremetow*, without shewing any Dislike to the Expedition, march'd thither, with all possible Diligence, and the Troops proposed.

LXXIX. WHEN he came to the District of *Astracan*, one City after another submitted to him: But the Capital itself, tho' under great Apprehensions, would not surrender before they had made, at least, one Push for it. *Scheremetow* was, therefore, no sooner come before the City, than 5000 of the Rebels sallied out upon the new-rais'd Regiment, which was posted very near the City, and routed it. But other Regiments coming up, seconded by a Body of Dragoons, the Rebels were brought into Confusion, and forced to retire into the City. *Scheremetow* follow'd them so closely, that he got Master of the first Fort, entering it with them; Upon which, shortly after, the City surrender'd at Discretion, and the chief of the Citizens, with the whole Garison, were beheaded.

LXXX. IN the Year 1707. the *Donn-Cosacks* rebelled, who being all Vagrant *Russians* (50), that had settled on the River *Donn*, and other Rivers that fall into the same, and having very little Agriculture, were wont to live upon plundering the *Turks* and *Tartars*; This People had formerly done great Service to *Russia*, in keeping that Side secure from the *Turks*; For which they had only receiv'd an annual Recompence of a certain Quantity of Lead, Gun-Powder, and Cannon-Balls: But after *Asow* was taken, and, according to the Stipulation, they were strictly forbidden to commit any such Outrages as formerly; And, on the other Hand, they were ordered to till the Ground, and to apply themselves to Trade, over which the Governour of *Azow*

was to have the Inspection, and had given them a great deal of Trouble on that Account: The Czar having also forbid them to exercise their former Privilege of deposing and choofing the *Woi-skowoy Attaman*, and commanded them not to presume to do the same for the future, without giving him previous Notice of it; And having, likewise, order'd them to receive no more Deserters, whereby their Number, according to the Liberty, which they had before enjoy'd, might be increased; That out of the Produce of their Lands, they should deliver yearly a certain Quantity of Corn to *Azow*, and work like other Peasants at the Fortifications, and on board the Vessels, that went down from *Weronitz*, with Provision and Ammunition; These People, I say, being thus provok'd, grew, at Length, discontented, and thought on Ways and Means to get rid of this Yoke; And a great Number of Peasants, on Account of the heavy Taxes, and Soldiers of the Army, being gone over to, and received by them, the Czar sent Prince *Dolgorucki*, Major of the Life-Guards, thither, in Order to bring back all the People who had join'd them, after the Conquest of the City of *Azow*.

LXXXI. THIS Major, being arrived in their capital City, *Czerkaskoy*, and having delivered his Orders, they answer'd him, that tho' it was contrary to their Agreement, and, therefore, they could not execute the Orders themselves; Yet they would allow him to seek for them, and for that Purpose would give him a good Convoy. He, agreeing to this, was, in the Night-time, set upon and massacred, by a private Party. They immediately acquainted the Czar with it, and excused themselves, pretending it was done by a Rover, whom they had already punish'd according to his Deserts. But the Czar being convinced of their Wiles, sent thither the Brother of this *Dolgorucki*, Captain of the Life-Guards, with 15000 Men, who revenged his Brother's Death, with the Slaughter of 20000 Men, partly kill'd in Skirmishes, and partly by the Hands of the Executioner, in all their Cities. This put an End to the Rebellion; But above 10000 of them, afterwards, retired into *Turky*, where they remain to this Hour.

LXXXII. IN the Year 1708, the *Maloufian Hettman*, *Mazepa* rebelled; For the following Reasons, and upon the following Occasion.

LXXXIII. MAZEPPA perceiving that the *Czar* was not to be bound by any Contract or Privileges granted; That He forced the Nobility in *Russia*, to be Soldiers and Sailors; and laid burthensome Taxes upon their Estates; Had deprived the *Donn Cossacks* and *Tartars* of their Privileges: Had forced the Wearing of a Foreign Apparel upon the Nation, and made Alterations in their Religion: He, and his *Cossacks*, began to apprehend, that if the *Czar* should become more powerful, by the War, they might be the next to be treated in the same Manner, and, therefore, it was high Time for them to consider how to prevent it.

LXXXIV. FOR this Purpose, *Mazeppa* made Use of a Stragem, and went himself to *Muscow*; Where, by Means of great Presents, he made himself familiar with Prince *Menscbikof*, which gave him an Opportunity to be often in the *Czar's* Company, and discourse with Him of Publick Affairs. Among other Conversation, he represented to the *Czar*, how easy it would be to make the *Cossacks* Soldiers and Dragoons. Upon this Occasion he extoll'd the new Method of exercising the Soldiers, and their Cloathing; And knowing that the *Czar* was pleased with the *German* Habit, he himself wore Cloths of that Fashion, and persuaded the *Czar* to command the *Cossacks* to do the like. All which the *Czar* highly approved, but told him that Matters were not yet ripe for such a Change: However, for this pretended Loyalty, the *Czar* honoured him with the Order of *St. Andrew*. When *Mazeppa* returned, he declar'd the *Czar's* Intentions to the Chief of the *Cossacks*, and therefore persuaded them to take Part with the *Swedes*; But his real Intention was to convert his Country into a separate Principality. Three Colonels of the *Cossacks*, who would not concur in *Mazeppa's* Intrigues, discovered them to the *Czar*; But bringing no sufficient Proof, two of them were beheaded, and the third, on Account of his extraordinary Merit, was sent to *Siberia*. However, the *Czar* afterwards too sufficiently experienced the Truth of their Report, to His great Mortification. and considerable Damage to His Empire.

LXXXV. IN the Year 1715, *Knies Gagarin*, the Governour of *Siberia*, projected an Alteration in his Government; And, if the Design, which soon after was concerted in *Muscow* against the

the *Czar*, had been brought to Execution, he would have turned it into a separate Kingdom; For as he had this Government in Farm, and had amass'd considerable Sums of Money by it, he, by Means of large Presents, made the Senators his Friends, and thereby got the Power into his Hands, of doing just what he pleased. He put his Relations and Friends into all the Civil and Military Offices, who dared not to be against him, though he taxed and oppressed the People, at his Pleasure: When the common People complained to him of the heavy Taxes, he shewed an outward Compassion for their Misery; But told them, he had strict Orders for it from the *Czar*, which it was not for him to oppose. He had, indeed, often informed His Majesty of their Hardships, by which he had incurr'd the *Czar's* Displeasure, and had very near brought Trouble upon himself. In the meanwhile, he sometimes distributed Money among the common People, under Pretence of relieving their Necessities: Which persuaded many to believe him to be a charitable and publick-spirited Man. When he had Orders to furnish Recruits, out of his Government, he took the greater Part of them, out of those Provinces which lay near the *Russian* Borders, as *Permia*, *Wiatka* and *Petschora*, and spared other Places; But, at the same Time, he took Care to be well paid for it. When Opportunity offered, he gave Hints to some of the Inhabitants, of the Alterations in Religion, which were intended, and insinuated, that the Church was in great Danger: In *Siberia*, he wore Part *Russian* and Part Foreign Cloathing, and no Peruke; He appeared very devout, went daily to Church, and kept *Lent* very strictly; In going in and out of the Church, he spoke, in a friendly Manner, to the Peasants, and gave them Hopes of better Times; He gave a speedy Answer to Petitioners, and fed them up with Assurances of all possible Redress. He was very good to the *Swedish* Prisoners, and connived at them, when, in their Misery, they endeavour'd to get their Living. He kept up a great Familiarity with the *Siberian* Metropolitan, *Philotæus*: For though this Man had laid down the Administration of his Arch-Episcopal Function, and had taken a Resolution to retire to the Cloister of *Kiow*; yet he constantly resided in *Siberia*, in the City of *Tumecn*, under the Holy Pretence of building a Church, and

Converting the *Ostiaks* (51); But it was said, that he and the *Knies* had a good Understanding.

LXXXVI. MOREOVER, *Gagarin* took good Care to prevent any Reports of his Conduct being made, either in Writing, or by Word of Mouth, from *Siberia*: For which Purpose, he beset all the Roads between *Russia* and *Siberia*, and forbid Travellers, under Penalty of Death, to pass any Way, but through that called the *Werchoturian* Passage; where he placed a near Relation of his, a faithful Instrument of performing his Commands, call'd *Trachaniotow*, who took Care that no Person came through without a Pass from the Governour, and Letters to Persons of Distinction. And when any Persons took Notice of his Behaviour, and told him what would be the Consequences of it, he sent them into the most remote Provinces, where no one could ever hear what became of them.

LXXXVII. HAVING brought all this to bear, and knowing perfectly well, how to secure his Friends, and to stop the Mouths of his Enemies, with that Sovereign Remedy, Gold, he resolv'd to bring the *Siberian Militia* upon a better Foot. To this End, he first made a great many young Citizens *Synbojarskoy* (which are a Sort of Gentlemen-Volunteers, who maintain themselves, from the Revenues of their own Estates, when they serve in the Field.) Instead of one established Regiment of the Land-Dragoons, he made two, who were oblig'd to live upon the Salary, which formerly had been allow'd for one Regiment, pretending he had Orders for so doing; As for the Infantry, he was secure of them, at any Time, under Pretence of Recruits, and upon Occasion could make a good Number of the *Swedish* Prisoners Officers: But Arms and Gun-Powder would have been wanting; Canons and Bullets there were enough ready made, and making at the *Siberian* Iron-Works: And because he could get neither small Arms nor Gun-Powder, without Permission of the Senate, and having no substantial Reason for demanding it, all his Neighbours, on that Side, being in Peace, he made Use of the following Stratagem.

LXXXVIII. HE sent some People to *Buchary* (where there are some Rivers which give a small Quantity of Gold-Dust) in Order

(51) Compare *das Veränderte Russland*, p. 212. §. 8.

Order to buy up as much of this Gold-Dust, as could be had (52); And when he had got about 10 Pound of it together, he went with it to *Petersburg*, and discover'd it to the *Czar*; But told him that it was to be found much nearer than really it was. He remonstrated, however, that tho' it was easy to come at, the *Kalmucks* would not suffer it to be carried away, but by Force: That, therefore, he would take this Place, if the *Czar* would but furnish him with Arms and Ammunition for 10000 Men, and with some Armourers and Makers of Gun-Powder. The Rest he would find in *Siberia*.

LXXXIX. THE *Czar*, who was, indeed, pleased with this Proposal, shew'd him great Marks of his Favour, and promised

to

(52) Here appears the true Grounds of the Report of the Gold Dust, of which I made some Mention, in my Introduction, *Sett. I. §. XXIX.* in the Note, and *Sett. II. §. X.* And in *das Veränderte Russland*, p. 71. §. 273. and p. 233. §. 346. it is mention'd what seduced the *Czar*, to send *Alexander Beckewitz* to the River *Daria*, on the *Caspian Sea*. In some Respects it is true of the River *Daria*, but in others not: For as the Word *Daria*, in the *Persian* Language, is an Appellative, and denotes nothing but a River, so that one may say *Oby-Daria*, *Tobell-Daria*, *Amu*, or *Oxus-Daria*; So it is true, that in *Buchary*, or the *Empire of Caschkar*, there is a certain River call'd *Kaptzack-Daria*, which produces yearly about 20 Pounds of Gold-Dust, which the Stream brings along with it, when, in the Spring, the Water comes out of the Mountains; Of which Rivers, as it is said, there are two others, more towards *China*, and in the *East*; Whither *Kneis Gagarin* sent; Of which, among all the Accounts, that I have read about it, the *Allernueste Stat. et von Casan, Astracan, &c.* (the newest State of Casan, Astracan, &c.) printed at *Nuremberg*, (1723. p. 126. §. 29.) gives the best. For this River belongs to the *Kalmuck Kontaisch*, who has the Jurisdiction of the City of *Jerkeen*, in *Buchary*; But that *Cbesell Daria*, or *Jaxartes*, as the Ancients call it, whither the before mention'd *Beckewitz* was sent, lies above 120 *German Miles* from *Kaptzack Daria*; The Reader may now judge, whether *Kneis Gagarin* deserved his Punishment or not; For besides the Damage which, the Text says, *Siberia* suffered, by this Business, *Alexander Beckewitz*, and his People, were cut to Pieces, near the *Caspian Sea*; Colonel *Bucholtz*, of whom the Text makes Mention, was sent the first Time, and Major-General *Lycherow*, the second Time, in the Year 1720. from *Tobolsky* to the River *Irtisch*, almost to the Source of it, and yet found no Gold-Sand; (See my Introduction, *Sett. I. §. XXIX.*) The Place being distant from thence a Hundred and more (*German*) Miles, thro' vast Wildernesses, where neither Water nor Provisions were to be had. But the true Mountains which produce this Gold-Sand, are far to the *East*, beyond this *Kaptzack-Daria*, near the City of *Dobba-Selin*, or *Senia*, at the Source of the River *Craeus*, and the *Chinese Wall*. (See my Map;) Of which, likewise *Martianus Martini* (in his *Atlantica*, p. 47. & 50.) Also *Kircherus*, (p. 64.) make Mention; The latter of which calls this City *Sining-Fu*, and the former *Kinti*; But the *Tartars* call it *Dobba Selin*; The Reader may also judge, whether this *Kaptzack-Daria* may not be the same of which *Lucanus* (Lib. III.) makes Mention, tho' confusedly; in the following Words: *Arimaspi, Fluvius est Scythiae, ad Septentrionem, auris armis abundans.* (*Arimaspi* is a River of *Scythia*, towards the North, abounding with Gold-Sand.) Perhaps he had heard some blind Account of it; But nothing of a Certainty. However, if any Body can inform me of any other River in *Scythia*, that has Gold-Sand, I will retract my Opinion.

to send him every Thing, according to his Desire; However, he would not so entirely confide in him, but chose another Person, for this Purpose, one *Buchholtz*, a Colonel, whom *Gagarin* was to furnish with all Necessaries, out of his Government, for this Expedition. This was sad and unexpected News for *Gagarin*, yet he was obliged to submit to it, and to see the said Colonel, soon after, march, with 3000 Men, from *Tobolsky*, in Order to take a Post on the River *Irtisch*. By which Means, from Time to Time, all *Knies Gagarin's* Intrigues were discover'd, and he, after having been put seven Times to the Torture, was condemn'd to the Gallows. What *Siberia* suffered, and how he brought Ruin upon that Country, by his Farming of it, was evident to every one.

XC. IN the Year 1717. the Prince Royal, *Alexius*, together with his Mother, and his Father's half Sister, *Mary*, conspired against the *Czar* (53). But in what Manner this happen'd, would be too tedious to relate here; I therefore refer the Reader to the *Verändertes Rußland (the present State of Russia)* where (p. 257. and seq.) he may see it at large. Nevertheless, since those Persons who secretly favour'd the Prince, judg'd more moderately of this Conspiracy, I will here briefly relate what they say to extenuate it.

XCI. THEY will not allow the Blame to have been wholly on the Prince's Side; But say, (1.) That his Father had been the Cause of his bad Education; Prince *Menscbikof* having been his Tutor, whose Extraction, Education and Qualities being well known, it was easy to judge what Methods he could use for the Education of a Prince, who was himself, but of a mean *Genius*. Besides, *Menscbikow*, (say they) did not visit the Prince above twice or thrice a Year, and whenever he reproved him for any Thing, it was in very harsh and unbecoming Language. As an Instance of which, they report, that he once told the Prince, to his Face, *Thou must not expect the Crown; For I am as near to it as thou* (54), and more of the like Kind of Expressions; Which the Prince took so to Heart, that he lost all Taste of

53. Vid. *das Veränderte Rußland*, p. 142, & 315.

54. The *Russians* in their Language, speak familiarly, in the Second Person, as they do in Latin.

applying himself to any Thing that could be beneficial to him. (2.) The Prince was obliged to reside constantly at *Preobrasenskoi*, where he had no Conversation, but that of common People and Priests, who had been so indiscreet to talk with him of the new Customs introduced by his Father, as the Ruin of the Country, and which, soon or late, ought to be abolished; His Father, likewise, never spoke in a friendly Manner to him, but, when the Prince came to visit Him, He used him more like a Stranger than a Son; All which contributed to his Pusillanimity; Inso-much that he avoided every Opportunity of seeing his Father. Besides, under these Circumstances, he had not the best Counsellors about him; But on the contrary, such as *Kikin*, Archbishop of *Rostow*, *Bojar Glelow*, *Zarewitsch* of *Siberia* (55), and others, who were of Opinion that he would, soon or late, come to the Crown, notwithstanding these evil Appearances.

XCII. AND

(55) This *Zarewitsch* of *Siberia* descends from *Kutziun Chan*, who resided in the City of *Tura*, or *Tobolsky*, when the *Russians*, by Means of *Stroganow* and *Jermakow*, conquered *Siberia* and this City; Of which I have made Mention above, §. 48. in the Notes. *Kutziun Chan*'s Father's Name was *Murtasa*, who was Son of *Mamudack Chan*; and his Ancestors were, 1. *Itaafim*, or *Hadjim Mahomet-Chan*. 2. *Ali Oglan*. 3. *Beckondi*. 4. *Katluck Mengutimur*. 5. *Badakul*. 6. *Zuzi-buga*. 7. *Bagadur Chan*. 8. *Sebeyban Chan*. This latter was Brother to *Battu*, or *Battu Zagin-Chan*, so well known in the European History, who ravaged *Russia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Silesia*; He was a Son of *Zuzi*, or *Zagi-Chan*, eldest Son of the Great *Zingis-Chan*, the Founder of the *Tartarian* Monarchy. When *Battus* return'd from the above-mentioned Countries, he gave his Brother *Sebeyban Chan* that Country which lies North East of the *Caspian Sea*, where now the *Turkumanni* dwell, between the River *Jayk* and the *Arallian Lake*, where also his Descendants dwell till the Time of *Kutziun-Chan*; But he went, with his *Hordes*, into the Country Northwards from thence, and took from the Heathen Nations call'd *Gauschta*, or *Gauschstintzi*, the City of *Sibir*, or *Tura*, not far from the present City of *Toboll*; Which People are doubtless those *Getae* of whom *la Croix*, (in his *Timur Beck*), and likewise *Herbelot*, with others who have follow'd them, have wrote so much; And who, as they say, lived in *Tamerlane's* Time. But I cannot be persuaded, that the Word *Geth*, according to our Pronunciation of the Letters, has been found in the *Arabick*, *Persian*, and *Turkish* Text; But am rather of Opinion, that instead thereof, it must have been *Schutb*, *Sgubut*, or *Gazut*; The Posterity, or small Remainder of this *Gauschstintzian* Nation live still, in little Huts, near the City of *Tomskoi*, about 2 or 300 Men, and are *Heathens*, who use such Drums as the *Lapländians* and *Ostiaks* do. They themselves have told me, that they were the ancient Inhabitants of the true *Siberia*, where, however, I never heard any thing of a Name, pronounced *Geth*, which could not have been quite extinct, if, according to *la Croix's* Opinion, it had been pronounc'd in that Manner. Therefore, I believe, that, by this, either these People, or, in general, the *Sgubti*, *Tzudi*, or *Getjebudi*, must be understood, which Name is known, by History, to all the Inhabitants of *Siberia*, tho' no Nation, of that Name, is now in being; But those Inhabitants of *Siberia*, who came thither with *Kutziun-Chan*, are those *Tartars* who dwell near the Cities of *Toboll* and *Tumen*; Likewise the *Tzatsikian Tartars*, near *Tomskoi*, the *Czulimian Tartars*, &c.

XCII. AND as to the Signing of the Prince's Sentence, the greatest Part of those who sign'd it, might probably not have seen the whole and true Record, because only a small Extract of it was publickly produced (56).

XCIII. (IX.) THIS Party, which (as I have said) disagrees with the first I mention'd, reckon the new Order of Succession a Prejudice to the *Empire*; And say, in such vast Dominions, it may be the Cause of a Rebellion; As it happen'd, before the Reign of the *Czars Iwan* and *Peter*; Notwithstanding, at that Time, the Senators had weighty Reasons for excluding *Czar Iwan*. And when, in the Year 1721, the Subjects were to do Homage, according to this Order of Succession, and to swear Allegiance to a Successor not named, but whom the *Czar* should, at any Time, declare for his Successor, many Cities in *Siberia* revolted, the Inhabitants of the City *Tara*, who opposed this Order, were ruin'd by it, and in some small Towns, the People gathered themselves together, like Persons in Despair, by Hundreds, and by Thousands, in a House or Barn, set it on Fire, and burnt themselves alive.

XCIV. THESE then are the different Opinions and Reasonings which, after my Return from *Siberia*, I heard in *Muscovy*, from *Russian* Vassals of Credit and Reputation, on either Side, concerning the Life and Reign of *Peter the First*, which I thought proper to relate here with the greatest Exactitude, to the End that an impartial Historian may, for the future, separate the Good from the Bad, and judge rightly of the Achievements of this great Monarch. For as there are some Writers, who, for certain Reasons, blame the Actions of a Prince, and put the worst Construction upon them; So there are others, who, for Interest Sake, extol them to the Sky, and praise, what in Reality, ought to be blamed.

XCV. I HAVE also, since my Return from Captivity, shewn these Accounts to some *Russian* Noblemen, and desired them to give me their Opinions on them; Upon which, one of them communicated to me the following Remarks, especially on the Opinion of the latter.

M m 2

XCVI. (I.) WHAT

(56) Vid. *Verändertes Russland*, p. 300.

XCVI. (1.) WHAT has been said of the *Czar's* irregular Course of Life, and Debaucheries in His youthful Days, could not be deny'd; Which certainly was the Cause of much Mischief to Himself, as well as others, and particularly of His Premature Death; However, those who allowed Him too much Liberty, in His Youth, and ordered Him such mean Persons for his Education and Attendance, were the principal Causes of it; especially since, afterwards, when they saw the incongruous Beginnings, they did not lay hold of proper Means to stop the Career of it. To this His own Mother, in a great Measure, contributed, thinking, by conniving at this His Way of Living, to get the Common People on her Side, and thereby to be more able to oppose the Party of the Princess *Sophia*. Prince *Boris Gallizin* is, likewise, not excusable; since he administer'd to him more Occasions to follow such a Course of Life, than to hinder him from it; And as for Monsieur *la Fort*, he was no less a Promoter of it; But having, in other Respects, done great Services to *Russia*, it was not thought proper to disgust him. The Senators, on their Side, were also, in so far, to blame, because they might, by a discreet Behaviour, have diverted him from it, had there been a Harmony among themselves: For when any of them saw, that the *Czar* affronted one or other of them, the rest made a Jest of it, which encouraged him to take the greater Liberty, and was the Occasion that they suffered, in like Manner, in their Turns.

XCVII. (2.) As for His Conversation with common People, the Conspiracy fomented by the Princess *Sophia*, was the Cause of it (57). For being continually in Danger of his Life, or of meeting with some Vexation at Court, he was obliged to retire to another Place, for which Purpose he thought *Pretorasenskoï* to be the most convenient. And because he could not trust himself to the *Strelitzes*, without Danger, he levy'd, at first, a small Guard, consisting only of One Hundred and Twenty Men, who were call'd *Peteschny*, i. e. *Pleasure-Fire-Workers*, with whom he had his chiefest Pastime (58). These, and other Reasons above-mentioned, deprived him of the Conversation with People of Distinction, not knowing whom to trust; And those He could

(57) Compare *das Veränderte Rußland*, p. 26. §. 137.

(58) Compare *das Veränderte Rußland*, p. 27. §. 140.

could trust to, being too far off, to see him often, He was obliged to converse, and pass his Time, with His petty Guard.

XCVIII. (3.) As for the selling of Places, it was more than probable that the *Czar* knew nothing of the Matter; And if he had known it, it would have been impossible for him to see beforehand the Inconvenience the Country would thereby be liable to; Especially since the Senators themselves could discover very little of it, 'till Experience made the Damages, which accrued from thence, evident.

XCIX. (4.) IN making Dragoons, Soldiers, and Mariners, of his Noblemen, the *Czar's* Intentions were for the Good of the Empire, as well as for their own Benefit; But that this Matter was carried too far, was owing to his earnest Desire to prosecute the War, and his absolute Power in Command; For which, considering his Design, he was not to be blamed. Besides, being the most Time absent, and in Foreign Countries, he could not so soon perceive the Inconveniences which accrued to his Country from thence; And the Senators for their Parts, let it pass without Notice. Neither could the *Czar* see before-hand the bad Consequences of the Projects for the Augmentation of the *Imperial* Treasury, caused by the Avarice of those who had the Administration of it: But as soon as he was at Leisure to examine into their Management, to which Prince *Jacob Dolgorucki*, who escaped from his Captivity in Sweden, a prudent and loyal Patriot, very much Contributed, by laying a true State of the Empire before his Majesty, a Committee of Enquiry was constituted, in the Year 1715, and the Transgressors were severely punished, according to their Deserts (59). When, after this, the *Czar* had considered of a better Regulation, he ordered it so, 1. That when a Place was vacant, the Governour, or the several Colleges, should present three Persons to the Senate, of which one was to be return'd, And, 2. Whenever Offices, immediately depending upon the Senate, were vacant, that three Persons should be presented to his Majesty; which Constitution was also introduced in the Army.

C. H E

(59) Compare *des Potentats Russland*, p. 32. §. 167. seq. & p. 139. §. 185, & 186.

C. H E, moreover, commanded, that the Noblemen, in every District, should assemble, every Year, a little before *Christmas*, in Order to examine into the Administration of the Commissioners, and to turn them out, and chuse new ones, as they should think proper. There was likewise a Project upon the Carpet, that, out of the District of every Province, should be chosen four Provincial Counsellours; Out of the Provinces of every Government, four Counsellours of the Regency to assist the Governour; And out of every Government two Oeconomical Counsellors to assist the Senate, at the Board of Oeconomy. All these, as well as the Provincial Judges, were to be chosen by the Gentry, from among themselves, and every Year new ones to be elected in their Room; By this Means, those at the Helm would always be acquainted with the State of the *Empire*, and a Way would be opened to Men of Ability, living in remote Parts of the *Empire*, to be employ'd in the Service of their Country, and to be promoted to advantageous Posts; This also would be a great Ease to the Senators and Governours; For whilst Affairs of small Moment were determined by the Gentry, those great Officers would have the more Time for the Management of Affairs of greater Importance; But the Czar's premature Death put a Stop to the Execution of this Project, and it was believ'd, that now it would hardly be brought to bear; Because the Governours, perhaps, would not care to share the Government with others.

CI. (5.) CONCERNING his Absolute and Rigid Government, it was a Thing natural to every Man to be inclinable to rule over others; And as no Man is of himself capable to enslave so many Thousands, unless they themselves give him the Power, they ought to bear with what proceeds from that Arbitrary Power, to which they have once submitted without any Condition or Law; And no Man could be deem'd a Transgressor of the Law, to whom no Law or Contract was prescribed (60).

CII. (6.) As to the Corruption of Youth, it would be doing the Czar Injustice to tax him with it; His Intentions were good; And tho', in the Beginning, no adequate Method was, or could be

(60) Doubtless the Meaning must be, that this may be suppos'd in a Political Sense, but not in a Moral Sense, grounded upon the Laws of G o d, where it is said: *Quod tibi vis fieri, alteri ne facias*. Do unto others as thou wouldst be done unto thy self.

be fix'd, for Regulating their Education; Yet the Consequence shew'd, that notwithstanding this, many had profited by it; Of which diverse Circumstances could be alledg'd *pro* and *con*, were it not too tedious for this Place; Nay, if some Parents had not been constrained to give their Children Learning, many would, to this Day, have remained in their former Stupidity. This Benefit has, however, arisen from the first Foundation laid down by *Czar Peter*; That there is, at present, a Regulation to erect a College in every Government, and to maintain the same out of the Revenues belonging to the several Monasteries; For, when an old Monk dies, it is so ordered, that no other is to come in his Room.

CIII. (7.) THO' the Transferring of the Trade from *Archangel* to *Petersburg* had, indeed, done Hurt to some Provinces; Yet, on the other Hand, in some other Respects, it had been very advantageous to the whole *Empire*.

CIV. (8.) THE Changing of the *Imperial* Residence had, indeed, been occasion'd by the *Czar's* great Propensity to Navigation, which Satisfaction he could not have in *Muscow*; And he was often heard to say; That if the City of *Muscow* was situated on the Sea, or near a River that had Communication with the Sea, he would refuse the best Residence in the World for it; As well on Account of its agreeable Situation, fertile Soil, wholesome Air, and being placed in the very Center of *Russia*. That the Building of the new Residence had been so very chargeable, and cost so many Mens Lives, was not the *Czar's* Fault; But that of those who had the Inspection over the Works, and had taken no better Care. The *Czar* had given the best Orders imaginable for every Thing; But as he was seldom present, he could not have a Knowledge of every Thing that had happen'd; But when he was informed how Things went, he severely punish'd those, who had enrich'd themselves by it, and gave the Inspection to Persons more worthy of it.

CV. (9.) AND tho' it was said, that the long Wars were continued, more for the *Czar's* Glory, than for the Advantage of the *Empire*; And that as well from thence, as from the numerous new Buildings, the *Russian Empire* had received more Hurt than Good, both in its Revenues, and the Number of Inhabitants; Yet the

the conquer'd Provinces would, in Time, make amends for all; And the *Empire* had obtain'd such Barriers by the War, that, if it remain'd in the Condition in which the late *Czar* left it, *Russia* would have no Reason to fear her Neighbours, nor to complain of the Reign of *Peter I.* A War was at first necessary, to recover the Provinces which were formerly lost: And when it was once begun, it was not in the *Czar's* Power to make an End of it, without the Consent of *Sweden*, and therefore he had been oblig'd to continue it against his Will (61), till a Pacification ensu'd.

CVI. (10.) THE true Grounds and Reasons of so many Rebelions were (the *Czar* being but Ten Years of Age when he came to the Crown, and, with Respect to the *Empire*, incapable of doing Good or Harm) the Disharmony between his Mother and her Adherents, and the Princess *Sophia* and her Party, by which of Consequence the *Czar* became odious to the Princess, and she being ambitious and artful, had used all the Ways and Means possible, to render his Name odious to the People; Insomuch that no Body could believe any Good of him; Which was afterwards the Occasion, that all his Endeavours for the Good of the *Empire* were put a wrong Construction on, and thence so many Factions ensued.

CVII. (11.) CONCERNING the Order of Succession, *Russia* had no Reason to complain of it; Because it restrain'd the Princes from relying alone upon their Birthright, and encourag'd them to make themselves the more qualify'd for Governing. And much less was a Revolution to be feared here than in Elective Kingdoms, where it frequently happen'd, that by the different Views of various People, at an Election, the most pernicious Effects have been caused to a Country. An Instance of this Difference has been seen by the late *Czarina*, who, to the Admiration of the whole World, mounted the Throne without any Trouble, and rul'd in such Manner, that *Russia* can never desire a better Government; Since her constant Endeavours were for the Welfare of the *Empire*, and to shew herself gracious to her Subjects; And if any one should object: That it was a Thing unheard of, for a Woman

(61) Many Counter-Remarks might be made to these Observations; But I leave that to others. This Point might have been inserted in the foregoing fifth Article, but I refer the Reader to *das Veränderte Russland* (p. 340.) where he will find a short Discussion of the former Differences between *Sweden* and *Russia*.

Woman to be entrusted with an *Empire*, of so absolute a Form of Government ; Let him but look 700 Years back, into the History of this *Empire* ; And he will find, that the *Czarina Olga* reign'd many Years, very happily, laid the Foundation of the *Christian* Religion in *Russia*, and procured great Advantages for the *Empire*. Thus far these Remarks.

CVIII. THIS is what Information concerning the Life and Reign of *Peter* the First, of blessed Memory, I have had an Opportunity to procure, and have thought necessary to add to the Accounts we already have of the Life and Actions of this Monarch. And here I cannot help adding a farther Account of what has been mentioned, in the Introduction, (*Sec. II. §. IX.*) with Relation to the Dread of Water He had conceived in his Infancy, the Circumstances whereof are the following.

CIX. WHEN He was about five Years of Age, His Mother went with Him in a Coach, in the Spring-Season, and passing over a Damm, where there was a Waterfall, or Cataract, which made a great Noise, and He lying in His Mother's Lap asleep, He was so frighten'd by the Rushing of the Water, that it brought a Fever upon Him : And though He soon recovered this ; Yet He retained such a Dread of Water, that He could never bear to see any standing, much less to hear any running Water, without the greatest Uneasiness. This continuing, 'till He was fourteen Years of Age, was a great Grief to His Mother, as well as His Brother *Iwan*, who fear'd it would be a great Prejudice to Him, when, soon or late, He should come to the Crown. But Prince *Boris Gallizin*, who was his chief Governour, invented this happy Cure : He persuaded the Prince, it being fine Weather, to go with him into the Country, to partake of a Hunting-Match, which he had appointed there ; But the young *Czar* did not know that there was a Brook near the Place. After a little Diversion in Hunting, *Gallizin* said ; It is very hot Weather, I wish there was a Brook in the Neighbourhood, I would go in and bath. The young *Czar* replied : What ! will you kill your self ? The Prince answer'd : I have frequently bathed with your late Father, and nevertheless I am alive still : Adding, that it was very wholesome to bath in hot Weather. The young *Czar* was surprized, and said, He had

heard that People were frequently drown'd. The Prince answer'd: How can a Man be drown'd, when the Water is not deeper than his Knees? If it pleases your Majesty, I will send some Body to find out a Brook, and you shall see that it is possible to bath without Drowning. Accordingly he sent a Gentleman of the Bed-Chamber, who being return'd, said, that not far from thence, there was a Brook. The *Czar* went thither, but approached with Fear and Trembling, and stopp'd His Horse at a good Distance from the Brook. Prince *Gallizin* sent some Men thither, and ordered them to cross the Water on Horseback, forwards and backwards, and then to return, to shew themselves, that they were alive. After this the *Czar* ventured to ride nearer. Then Prince *Gallizin*, with his Horse, cross'd the Water himself, and ordered some of his People to alight from their Horses, and go barefooted through the Water, which the *Czar* admired at, and, at last, had the Courage to go through it Himself, with His Horse, to the great Admiration of those who were present.

CX. AFTER this Cure, He return'd to His Palace, well pleas'd, and told it to His Mother, and His Brother *Iwan*, who hardly could believe it, so great was their Joy.

CXI. SOME Days after, *Czar Iwan* went, with His Brother *Peter*, to a Summer-Palace, call'd *Izmaelowa*, where there are a great many Fish-ponds; And after they had diverted themselves in the Garden, He ordered some of His Servants to bath in a Pond, and They would look on. But *Czar Peter* forbid it; However, *Czar Iwan* persuaded Him, at Length, to consent. The young Men being very merry and frolicksome, in the Water, it pleased *Czar Peter* so well, that He had a Mind to try it Himself, to which *Czar Iwan* encouraged Him, and by that Means He got rid, at once, of all the Fear of Water, with which He had before been possess'd.

CXII. THIS Alteration, and the great Pleasure this Monarch afterwards took in Navigation, is to be admired; I cannot, therefore, forbear mentioning, in this Place, what gave the first Occasion to that, which afterwards ensued.

CXIII. AFTER

CXIII. AFTER the *Czar* was thus freed from His Fear of Water, He went often to the aforesaid Palace of *Izmalowa*, and bathed there, in Summer-Time.

CXIV. WALKING once, in the Court, He went into a Stable, where he found an old Boat, almost fallen to Pieces, which a *Dutchman* had built, in His Grandfather's Time, at *Muscow*, to use in the Ponds, at which the *Czar* was surprized; Because it was built in a different Manner from those that are used on the Lakes and Rivers in *Russia*: It was long before He could get a true Information concerning this old Boat, 'till, at Length, an ancient Man related, that a Foreigner had built it, that there had been Sails upon it, and that it would advance upon the Water, either before, or against the Wind. The *Czar* wondring at this, ordered Monsieur *le Fort* to look out for a Man who could repair it, and bring it into Order again. After long Search, a *Dutchman* was found, who had been a Sail-maker, and who brought the Boat into so good Order, that the *Czar* made the first Tryal with it upon the Water. But this Boat gave Occasion for the *Czar* to order Monsieur *la Fort* to write to *Holland*, for some Ship-Carpenters. These being arrived, and finding no Lake near *Muscow* fit for Sailing, the Lake near the City of *Pereflowle* was chosen for that Purpose, being about One Hundred and Twenty Wersts, or Eighteen *German* Miles from *Muscow*. This Lake being of a good Depth, and about a League long, and a Quarter broad, they there built two small Frigats, with which the *Czar* diverted himself, two Summers successively. But these People talking continually of the Difference between this Manner of Sailing, and that which was perform'd with large Ships, in great Seas; The *Czar* took a Journey to *Archangel*, where he found above Three Hundred Foreign Merchant Ships, and some large *English* and *Dutch* Convoys. And He taking a great Delight in them, the Commanders of the Foreign Convoys allow'd the *Czar*, for His Pleasure and Exercise, to go sundry Times into Sea with them. This gave Occasion to His Mother and Brother to complain, that He now ventured Himself too much upon the Water, But after the *Czar* had conquer'd *Azow*, He began immediately to build great Ships. near the City *Woronetjch*, and, in a short Time, brought a pretty large Fleet

Fleet into the *Palus Mæotis*; And for this Reason, he afterwards made the Harbour at *Taganrock*.



C H A P. VII.

Of the Difference between the Titles C Z A R and G R A N D P R I N C E, and of the R U S S I A N Seal.

S U M M A R Y.

§. I. to III. **H**OW the Titles *Czar* and *Grand Prince* are promiscuously used by some Writers, and wherein the Difference consists. IV. What the Signification is of the Word *Zaar*, *Czar*, or *Tzar*. V. When it was introduced into *Russia*. VI. How it came to be converted into *Emperour*. VII. An Account of a new erected Convent, in the Form of an Eagle.

I. **S**INCE several Authors make no Distinction between the Titles *Czar* and *Grand Prince*, but take them both to be one and the same; Stiling the *Russian* Monarch *Czar*, or *Grand Prince*, I find it necessary, in this Place, to take some Notice of this Error,

II. I T ought to be *Czar* and *Grand Prince*, or *Czar* only; For the two Titles are full as different, as *Roman Emperour* and *Arch-Duke of Austria*; Or, as *King of Poland* and *Grand Prince of Lithuania*; Or, *King of Sweden* and *Grand Prince of Finland*; Or, finally, *King of Prussia*, and *Electör of Brandenburg*.

III. B U T in what the Difference of these Titles properly consists, and when they came first in Use, will be seen by what follows.

IV. T H E Title *Czar*, in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, signifies *King*; And also, sometimes, *Emperour*; Because, in all *Sclavonian* Books, as well sacred as profane, all Kings are call'd *Czar*; As in the
Scla-

Sclavonian Bible, which was translated from the *Greek* about 700 Years ago, long before the *Russian Grand Princes* took the Title of *Czar*, the Kings, *Pbarao*, *Saul*, *David*, *Solomon*, and *Alexander the Great*, are called *Czars*; And, in this Language, there is no Difference between the Title of *Emperour* and *King*; For when, in the Bible, *Matth. xxii.* it is written: Give unto CÆSAR the Things that are CÆSAR's, and unto GOD the Things that are GOD's; in the *Sclavonian* it is, *Dajeb'd Zariu Zariewo a Bogu Bescbie.* But when, in the same Chapter, the Question is: Whose is this Image? And the Answer is, *Cæsar's*; then, in the *Sclavonian*, it is said *Cæsar*. Likewise, in another Place, we find *W'zarstwo*, *Augusta Cæsarea*, or in the Reign of *Cæsar Augustus*: Whereby we may see, that, in the *Sclavonian Tongue* the Name *Cæsar* is taken for a Proper or Family Name.

V. THIS Title *Czar* was first assumed, by *Iwan Wafielewitz*, surnam'd *the Great*, Grand-Father of *Iwan Basilowitz the Tyrant*, after he had conquer'd the City of *Casan*, was crown'd there, with the Crown of *Casan*, and had also seiz'd upon all the Principalities that were Appennages: For notwithstanding the *Russian Princes* often chang'd their Residence, they formerly styled themselves only *Grand Princes of Russia*. This *Iwan Wafielewitz* soon after dying, his Son *Basilus*, by Means of Civil Dissentions, lost the Kingdom of *Casan*, together with the Title of *Czar*, and suffer'd, besides, very much by the *Tartars*; But his Son *Iwan Basilowitz the Second*, surnam'd *Grosnoy*, i. e. *Tyrant*, recover'd all, conquer'd the two Kingdoms of *Casan* and *Astracan*, and resumed the Title of his Grand-Father; Styling himself *Czar of Casan, Astracan, and Siberia, Grand Prince of Muscow, W'olodimir, and Novogrod, Lord of Plescow, &c.* Likewise *Powelitel* and *Samoderzhetz* of all the *Russians*; The former signifies as much as *Imperator, Commander*; And the latter, *Self-Preserver, or Sovereign*; and these Titles have been allow'd him and his Successors by most Potentates; And by that it remain'd, till in the Year 1721, when *Czar Peter* made Peace with *Sweden*, the Senate, Synod, and Generals, desired the *Czar*, in the Name of the States of *Russia*, to style himself *the Great, and Father of his Country*, for an eternal Remembrance of his *Great Actions*.

VI. BUT one of the Clergy, viz. the Archbishop of *Novogrod*, who thought himself wiser than his Brethren, and in Order to bespeak his Prince's Favour, persuaded the *Czar* he might change the *Russian* Title *Powelitel*, into *Latin*, and call himself *Imperator*, which, tho' other Potentates had formerly allow'd him to use the Title in the *Russian* Language, yet it being turn'd into *Latin*, caused many Disputes in *Europe*; For, notwithstanding, in Reality, it is all one, whether he be called, in the *Russian* Language, *Powelitel*; in *English*, *Commander*; or in *Latin*, *Imperator*; the Explication of the Title *Powelitel* has occasion'd great Difficulties, and will remain in Dispute, perhaps, as long as the World stands, especially on Account of the Ceremonial and Rank. As for the *Russian* Seal, their Princes, in former Times, after they had embrac'd the *Christian* Religion, had three Circles, within a Triangle; In the first of which was written: *Our God, the TRINITY, who was before all Time; Not three Gods, but ONE, in Essence.* In the second were written the Titles of Honour of the Prince, to whom the Letters were directed; And, in the third, was the *Czar's* Title. But, in Time, this came out of Use, and instead thereof was chosen a Man, on a white Horse, in a Red Field, which was the Coat of Arms of the Princes who resided at *Muscow*; For this being situated in the Principality of *Wolodimir*, and by Marriage devolving to the *Grand Prince, Andrey*; And the City *Wolodimir* being destroy'd by the *Tartars*, the *Grand Princes* chose the City of *Muscow* for their Residence, and the Arms of *Muscow* for theirs; The *Dragon*, with which the Man on Horseback is combating, was added by *Czar Demetrius*, after he had totally defeated the *Tartars*, in the *Rulicoucian* Field. As for the two-headed *Eagle*, on the Breast of which the Man on Horseback is placed, it is not represented like the *Roman Spread-Eagle*, with Wings extended upwards, but hanging down. *Iwan Basilowitz* was the first, who, in the Year 1540, added it to his Coat of Arms, pretending that the three *Russian* Princes, *Rurick*, *Sinaus*, and *Truvar*, were descended from the Posterity of the *Emperour Augustus*.

VII. *CZAR Peter I.* of Glorious Memory, built a very fine Convent, call'd *Alexander Monastyr*, in the Form of an *Eagle*, five Wersts from *Petersburg*, on the River *Newa*, in which are

200 Apartments. In the Middle, is a very large Church, built according to the strictest Rules of Architecture, which represents the Body of the *Eagle*, the two Spires are the two Necks and Heads, and the Tops, or Crowns, the *Imperial Crown*. On the Sides are two smaller Churches, or Chapels, which represent the two Wings.



C H A P. VIII.

Of the Religions in Russia.

S U M M A R Y.

§ 1, II. **R**easons why Authors have not, hitherto, treated fundamentally of the Religions of Russia. III. The Account which can now be given of them; According to which, they may be distinguished into three principal Classes. IV. The first Class is that of the Christian Religion; Of which, the Greek Church is the Chief, or National Church. How that was first brought into Russia. V. It is probable, that before the Russians were converted, from Paganism, to the Christian Faith, the Foundation of the Christian Religion was laid in Russia, by some other Nations, inhabiting those Regions. VI. Which was propagated by the Grand Princess, Olga, and Her Successors. VII, to IX. Of the first Metropolitans and Bishops of Russia. X. The certain Time, from whence it may be said, that the Doctrine of the Greek Church has been continued in Russia, in one Succession, down to the present Time. XI, XII. From this Church is sprung a Dissenting Sect, call'd the Greek-Russian. XIII, to XVI. An Account of this Sect. XVII. They are accus'd of many Impieties. XVIII. Endeavours to convert them by Force. XIX. What Czar Peter did, in Point of Religion. XX. Of the other Christian Churches, in Russia, and particularly the Lutheran. XXI. The Reformed or Calvinist. XXII, XXIII. And the Arminian. XXIV, XXV, The second principal Class of the Religions of Russia, or the Mahometan. XXVI. The

XXVI. *The third principal Class, or the Pagan.* XXVII,
 XXVIII. *A general Account of it, as far as regards Russia.*
 XXIX. *The natural Piety of the Siberian Pagans.* XXX, to
 XXXIII. *The Author's Testimony of it.*

I. **A**UTHORS who have treated of this Matter, have either handled it imperfectly, for Want of due Information, or else have stuff'd their Accounts with ill-grounded Additions.

II. ALL Religions (except the *Jewish*) being tolerated in *Russia*, and there being, likewise, several Schisms in the National Church, Authors have often confounded one with the other.

III. No Doubt but it is very difficult for a Foreigner, who has not a perfect Knowledge of the *Sclavonian* and *Russian* Languages, nor has read all Sorts of Books in those Languages, to give a sufficient and fundamental Account of this Matter. However, in general, this may be said; It holds good in *Russia*, as well as in all other Countries in the World, that there are naturally good and bad People, of all Religions; And in every Nation, he who fears GOD and does *Justice* is acceptable to his Maker; But as to the several Religions, in this Country, they may be divided into three Classes; 1. The *Christian*. 2. The *Mahometan*. And, 3. The *Pagan*, Religion.

IV. CONCERNING the first, every one knows, that the *Greek* Church is in this Country, the Chief or National Church; Of which the *Grand Princess Olga* laid the Foundation in *Russia*, in the Tenth Century, according to the *Russian* Computation, in the Year 6463, and the Year of our LORD CHRIST 955, or, as some will have it, 941. When she was baptized by the Patriarch *Photius*, at *Constantinople*, and was named *Helena*, in the Reign of *Jobannes Zimesfes*, who would have married her, but she gave him a civil Denial. This Princess lived 14 Years after she was baptized, and died in the 80th Year of her Age. The *Russians* celebrate her Memory annually on the 11th of *July*.

V. BUT this *Olga*, after the Death of her Husband *Igor* (who was killed by the *Drevenses* (62) to whom he went to demand

(62) These People are call'd, in the *Russian* History, *Drevliani*, and also *Patzengi*; Whence they have this latter Name, the following Observation may probably shew; But the

mand Tribute, which happened according to the *Russian Annals*, in the Year 6423 or 952) coming then from *Novogrod* to *Kiow*, and not being baptized until three Years afterwards, as has been already said, it is not to be doubted, but that the *Christian Religion* was received, by some, though, perhaps, not fully established by all the *South Sclavonians*, the *Russians*, or the *Kiowians*, before that Time; For, according to the Chronicle written by the Metropolitan *Macarius*, in the Time of *Iwan Basilicatz*, the *Bolgares*, who are also call'd *Cosari* (63), living on the Rivers *Dnieper* and *Danube*, and having one and the same Language with the *Northern Sclavonians*, or *Russians*, were converted before, (64) by *Metbodius* and *Constantinus* (afterwards call'd *Cyrillus*) Sons of *Leo*, the *Thessalonian*.

O o

VI. AND

the former, according to that History, is derived from the Word *Drew*, or *Derew*, which signifies a Wood or Forest; Because these *Drewneses*, as it is said, dwelt formerly, near, and in great Woods, viz. on the Rivers *Desna* and *Semn*, in the *Ukraine*. Now these People bearing also the Name of *Petzensi*, it may not be amiss to enquire, whether the People call'd *Peucini*, of whom *Pliny*, (*Lib. 4. Cap. 12.*) and *Strabo* (*Lib. 7.*) speak, and who, in the Time of *M. Aurel. Antonin. Philosoph.* were Allies of the *Marcomanni*, (See *Müller's Geschichte der Teutschen. Lib. V. p. 146. Nota 13.*) are not perhaps the same. For *Cramer*, and others say, the *Bastarnæ a piccarum sylvarum multitudine* had also the Name of *Peucini* given them.

(63) The Signification of the Word *Cosar* and *Cosjar*, and that the Name *Cozar* and *Koszar* is the same, has been shewn above, Chap. IV. §. IX. Note 34. *Josephus Jorionensis*, (who, however, is not an Author of the best Credit,) says: That, of the Posterity of *Thargama*, 10 Families were descended, who lived near the River *Volga*, among whom were the *Cozares*. And *Herbelot* (in his *Diß. Orient*) as also *Andrew Mull.* (in *Comment. Agh. p. 42*) relate, from the History of *Abdalla Baidaviensis*, that *Japhet* had 7 Sons, and that the Name of the first was *Kozar*, from whom the *Cozari*, who, in History, are also call'd *Karari*, had that Name, and are supposed to have been one Nation with the *Bulgares*, on the *Volga*; Of this *Kozar*, as *Barbarts* says, (in his *Ptoleg.*) the *Caspian Sea* had the Name of *Mare Cosjar*. But many Authors will not allow such Derivations of the Names of Nations, as this here mentioned of *Kozar* is, e. g. when it is said, that *Hercules* had a Son named *Scythæ*, of whom the *Scythian* Name is deriv'd, &c. Therefore, it is more credible, not only that this Name is derived from Sea-Rovers, as has been hinted, in the Note above-cited, but that also the Island of *Corfica* had its Name from such a People. Compare with this what is alledged, concerning this Matter, in the *Bibliotheca Sæcra*, in the first Piece, p. 55. Note 9.

(64) In the above mentioned History of *Macarius*, it is said, that when the *Bolgares* were engaged in War with Emperour *Michael*, and the Sister of the *Bulgarian* Prince, *Bera* (whom some call also *Begeris*) was taken Prisoner and brought to *Constantinople*, she embraced the *Christian Religion* there; And after she was exchanged for a *Constantinopolitan* Lady, who had been taken Prisoner by the *Bolgares*; she persuaded her Brother to embrace the *Christian Religion* also. Upon which, he sent Ambassadors to the Emperour, telling him to send him some Learned and Godly Men, to instruct him, and his People, in that Religion. This *Macarius* mentions, likewise, that long before *Melodimir's* Time, when

VI. AND tho' *Swetoflaw*, Son of *Olgha*, who, after many great Actions, at Length was killed treacherously, by the *Peucingian* Prince, (65), who made a drinking Vessel of his Skull, (66) would not embrace the *Christian* Religion; yet *Wolodimir*, the third, Son of this *Swetoflaw*, after he had conquered his Brother *Jaropolck*, with the Help of the *Waragi* (67), killed him, and assumed the Government, did introduce the *Greek* Religion, at the End of the tenth Century, in the Reign of the Emperours *Basilus* and *Constantine*, whose Sister, the Princess *Ann*, he married, and was baptized, in the Year 987, or as some say 989, and named *Basilus*, by *Anastafius*, Bishop of *Corfun*, who when he catechis'd him, among other Instructions, advised him to keep only to the seven oecumenical Councils, viz. to those which were held, (1.) At Nice,

when *Rurick's* two Generals, named *Aschold* and *Idir*, or *Dirr*, had miscarried before *Constantinople*, it was stipulated in the Treaty of Peace, that they should embrace the *Christian* Religion; After which they had several Learned Men sent them, from *Constantinople*, in Order to instruct them, which happen'd long before *Olgha's* and *Wolodimir's* Time, and doubtless in the Time of the above-mentioned *Cyrillus*.

(65) In the *Russian* History, instead of *Peucingians*, we find *Petchenegians*, and, in another Place, it observes, that the Prince of the *Huns* had beheaded *Swetoflaw*, in *Petschenta Curia*; Here is to be observed, that by the Word *Curia*, or *Castra*, the *Kalmucks* and other *Tartars*, denote a Fortress or Castle, (vid. *L'Histoire de Timur Beck*, Tom. II. p. 222. Note b) which is conformable to the *Latin* Word, *Curia*; It is also to be further observed, that because the *Russian* History mentions, that the *Petschenegians*, who also are called *Drevensians*, as has been said above, were *Huns*, and, in the *Russian* Language, *Petsch*, or *Pietseh*, signifies the same as in the *German*, *Hund*, (a Dog); by which Name the *Germans* call'd the *Huns*, in Scorn; The Name *Petschenegians* is but an Interpretation of the former, and one and the same with the Word *Hund*; And if the Name of the *Pazinnacitæ* and *Peucini* are likewise the same with this, as it is reasonable to suppose, they then originally dwelt on the River *Volga*; For *Constantinus Porphyrogenetus*, (in the 34th Chapter) speaks thus: *Pazinnacitæ a principio ad Atell, & Geob Flumina habitant, &c.* And it is known that the *Atell*, is the River *Volga*, and *Geob* the River *Geyt*, both which run parallel to one another into the *Caspian* Sea; And it is observable, that there were two Nations of the *Pazinnacitæ*; vid. *Const. Porphir. de Administr. Imp.* (Cap. V. & VI) and *DiB. Car. Steph.* (p. 426. & 1799.) some of whom did live at the Mouth of the *Danube*, and some near the *Cberfunesus*, which latter are the *Russian* *Petschenegians*. I have farther remark'd, that, among the Eight Tribes of the *Pazinnacitæ*, which this Author speaks of, in that Chapter, there are Names, which agree with the Names of some Places, near the *Karakalpackian* Herda, on the East Side of the River *Geyt*, as *Talmasata*, *Curtata*, &c. (See my Map.)

(66) What is mentioned of the Skull of *Swetoflaw* was also customary among the Ancestors of the *Mongals* and *Kalmucks* (vid. *L'Histoire des Tartars*, p. 192.) and it is credible, that the *Drevensians* and *Petschenegians* were of *Hunnian* Extraction. At Length *Constantinus Muzmachus* converted them to the *Christian* Religion.

(67) Of the *Waragi* I have already said (Chap. IV. §. IX. Note 33.) that they dwelt on the *Baltick*. *Anna Comena*, in the *Historia Byzantina*, and in the Life of Emperor *Alexius* (Lib. 7. Cap. 1.) makes mention of a Nation named *Warangi*, which was a surname given to the *English* and *Normans* who served in *Constantinople*.

Nice, against *Arius*; (2.) At *Constantinople*, against *Macedonius*; (3.) At *Ephesus*, against *Nestorius*; (4.) At *Chalcedon*, against *Eutyches* and *Dioscorus*; (5.) Another at *Constantinople*, against *Origin* and *Evagrius*; (6.) A third, at *Constantinople*, against *Sergius* and *Perus*; And, (7.) the second at *Nice*, against those who would not adore the Images of the Saints.

VII. AFTER this, it is said, *Wolodimir*, or *Basilus*, accepted of *Michael Syra*, or *Cyrus*, (who was sent to him by the above-mentioned Patriarch, *Photius*, as the first Metropolitan of all *Russia*) who, a short Time after, baptized *Wolodimir's* twelve Sons, and Twenty Thousand *Russians*, in one Day. This some ascribe to *Cyrillus*; but he, as I have mentioned above, lived long before that Time, and came from *Chersonesus* to *Kiow*, in the Time of *Rurick* the First, and the Reigns of Empress *Theodora*, and her Son, Emperour *Michael III.* Besides, it is not improbable, that the *Russian* Translators have mistaken the Name *Cyrus* for *Cyrillus*.

VIII. AFTER *Wolodimir* had caused his twelve Sons, and a great Number of His Subjects to be baptized, He built Churches and Schools, and went, with the aforesaid *Michael Cyrus*, to the *Creytzi*, about *Novogrod*, and from thence to *Rostaw*, where he likewise converted the Inhabitants to the *Christian* Religion; And, after the Death of *Michael Cyrus*, one named *Leontius*, was regularly ordained Metropolitan of *Kiow*, *Joachim Korsunaim*, Archbishop of *Novogrod*, and *Fædor Grezin* Archbishop of *Rostaw*, by *Nicolaus*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*.

IX. *WOLODIMIR* sent also a learned *Macedonian*, named *Marcus*, to the *Bolgares*, who were *Mahometans*, *Saracens*, *Tartars*, and *Bessermenes*, in Order to convert them to the *Christian* Religion, but only three or four of the Princes came to *Wolodimir*, and were baptized.

X. FROM this Time, *Russia* has remained constant in the *Christian Greek* Religion; Wherefore *Wolodimir* or *Basilus* is reckoned among the Saints, and the *Russians*, in Honour to his Memory, have ordered the 15th Day of *July* to be celebrated.

XI. BUT, afterwards, a certain Sect separated from the *Russians*, who call themselves *Starowefsci* (or *Old Believers*,) But the *Russians* call them *Roscoloziki*, (or *Hereticks*.)

XII. THEIR total Separation did not happen 'till the sixteenth Century, in the Time of the Patriarch *Nicon*; Though they dissented long before. Concerning this Sect, *Demetrius*, Abbot of *Rostow*, has wrote a Book, entitled, *Rosficko Roscolnitscheskoi Brinski wierie o utschenniich o dialachich* (i.e. Examination of the Belief, Doctrine and Works of the *Brischienian Roscolnicks*.)

XII. VERY few, of this Sect, can write, or read; But most of them are simple, ignorant People, Citizens or Peasants, who have no Churches, but assemble in private Houses.

XIV. THE Difference, in Point of Faith, between these and the other *Russians*, consists, (1.) In that the former believe it a great Sin to say thrice *Halleluja*, which they repeat but twice; (2.) That not five, but seven Loaves, ought to be brought into the Church for the Use of the Mass. (3.) The Cross, which is impress'd upon the Mass-Loaves, or *Prosphora*, must not be four, but eight corner'd, because, as they say, there was such a cross Piece of Timber, of eight Corners, placed under the Feet of our Saviour. (4.) In signing with the Cross at Prayers, the three first Fingers must not be used, as the *Russians* do, but the End of the Ring-Finger is to be join'd to the End of the Thumb, and the first and middle Finger held streight; The Signification of which, according to their Opinion, is: That the first three represent the HOLY TRINITY, and the other two CHRIST, in both Natures, as GOD and Man. (5.) New Books printed since the Time of the Patriarch *Nicon*, though no Doctrine have been altered therein, and only some dark Words are explained, are to be rejected, and the old ones retain'd, and *Nicon* be accounted an Anti-Christ. (6.) They account other *Russian* Priests unworthy of Administring the Sacraments of Baptism and the Lord's-Supper, because they drink Brandy. (7.) They hold Civil Government to be no *Christian* Institution, but would have all live as Brethren. (8.) They allow, that a Man may kill himself for CHRIST's Sake, and that therein consists a higher Degree of Spiritual Happiness. Now, though none of these Articles are essentially Theological, yet they believe them to be absolutely

olutely necessary to Salvation; Therefore, when they are persecuted for their Religion, they frequently assemble together, by Families, and often Four or Five Hundred Persons, in their Houses and Barns, set them on Fire, and so burn themselves alive (68). They, also, reckon all other *Russians*, and Nations, unclean, or *Pagans*, and do not care to converse with them, much less will they eat and drink with them, out of the same Vessels; and if any one, not of their own Sect, has been in their Houses, they wash the Place where he has sat; Nay, sometimes they sweep up the Dust in the Room, and throw it after him, into the Street.

XV. THESE and other Articles besides, they pretend to defend by their Ancient Books, written and printed, especially by a Book pretended to be of *Cyrillus Hierosolymitanus*, in which all their Tenets are explain'd; But it is very difficult to believe this Book genuine; Because the Author writes, among other suspicious Passages, many absurd Stories concerning *Luther* and *Calvin*, and in some Places says, *We here in Russia*; But the true *Cyrillus* liv'd some Hundred Years before *Luther*, and consequently could not mention him. Wherefore it is reasonable to think this Book spurious, and rather to believe, as some will have it, that it was writ by a *Russian* Monk, in the 15th Century.

XVI. BUT these *Roskol/chiks* even differ among themselves, and are divided into several Parties; For some will allow no Priests, the Sacraments and other Church-Offices are administer'd by the Laity, as well Women as Men, and they account Celibacy a necessary Article of Christianity; Others have their Ministers, and marry: In general, they are, to all Appearance, a pious, moral, and quiet People, who will not curse, swear, or hold any vain Conversation. They account Drinking to Excess a great Sin; They seem to be just in their Dealings, do not over-rate nor haggle, and they admit no Person into their Assembly who drinks either Beer or Brandy.

XVII. THE other *Russians* charge them with abominable Vices, viz. 1. That in their Assemblies, after putting out the Fire and Lights,

(68) The like happen'd in *Siberia*, in the Year 1722, in two Places, first near the City of *Iara*, on the River *Irtysch*, and afterwards at a small Place on the River *Isett*, where some Hundreds of People were burnt.

Light, they commit Fornication in common. 2. That when thro' such Carnal Copulation a Maiden proves with Child, and brings forth a Girl, they let it live; But if a Boy, they kill it, save the Blood, dry it, beat it to Powder, and make Bread of it, which they use in their Sacraments; With other Enormities.

XVIII. WHEN this Sect first arose, the *Russian* Patriarchs endeavour'd to destroy it by Force, and many Thousands were burnt, and otherwise put to Death; But this prov'd a great Detriment to the *Empire*. Afterwards Czar *Peter I.* commanded, that, if they did not spread their Doctrine among the *Russians*, they should remain unmolested, and the Bishops and Priests should endeavour to convert them by pious Exhortations, and their own good Examples. In the mean Time, these *Raskolnicks* pay double Taxes.

XIX. IT being well known, wherein the Tenets of the *Greek Church* differ from those of the *Roman-Catholicks*, and other Denominations of *Christians*, it is unnecessary to make any Mention thereof here; I shall, therefore, only observe; That as Czar *Peter I.* took great Care in Temporal Affairs, to reform many Things in *Russia*, and put them upon a better Footing; So likewise, he endeavour'd to clear Religion from many superstitious Ceremonies, and useless Customs, which, by Degrees, were crept in; In which the Bishop of *Pleskow*, *Theophanes Procopowitsch*, was a faithful Assistant, by writing and translating many fine Treatises; As, 1. A Catechism. 2. An Illustration of our SAVIOUR's Sermon on the Mount, *Matth. v.* 3. Of Baptism, in which he proves that it is all one, and has the same Efficacy, whether a Person is dipt in the Water, or only sprinkled with it; For the Ancient *Russians* would allow no Person to be a *Christian*, unless he had been dipt quite under Water. 4. Of Confession. 5. Of Marriage, wherein he teaches, that those of the *Greek Church* may intermarry with other *Christians*. 6. Of the Office of Priests, in which he shews, that they ought not to intermeddle with the Civil Government, or Political Affairs. 7. An Ecclesiastical History, in which he shews what Ceremonies and Customs were in Use among the Primitive *Christians*, before the Time of *Constantine*, and by whom, and at what Time, so many superstitious Ceremonies, which are now held equally binding with GOD's Com-

mands,

mands, were introduced, e. g. The Adoration of the Images of so many Saints (69); Reading Mass for the Deceased; The sumptuous Garments of the Clergy, &c. He also takes Notice of such Things as the Ancient Fathers instituted, and voluntarily embrac'd, with a pious Intention; But were afterwards enforced as Laws by Pride and Avarice, as: A forced monastical Life, contrary to the Ordinances of the ALMIGHTY; Offering of Candles; Burning Frankincense before Images; All which are now accounted among the pious good Works of a *Christian*; He observes, that instead of these, it would be much better to serve God with Singing of Psalms, Praying, and Reading the Word of God, and Instructing the People by pious Sermons; And not, as now, barely spending the Time in singing so many Litanies and *Kyrie-Eleysons*, which, together with the Masses that are daily read, are only a tedious Repetition, which must naturally become irksome. This Man's Intentions are very good, and commendable; And if God spare him Life and Health, much Good may be expected from his Writings.

XX. I MUST now make some Mention of the other *Christian* Religions in *Russia*. Next to the *Greek Church*, the *Lutheran* is the most numerous; For besides the conquer'd Provinces, as *Livonia*, *Esthonia*, *Finnland*, and *Carelia*, the *Lutherans* have two Churches in *Petersburg*, two in *Muscow*, and one in *Belgorod*; And the foreign Generals have each their own Ministers and private Chapels. The *Swedish Captives* had their own Church in *Tobolsky* (70); And since their Return, as I am inform'd, a Church has also been built in the City of *Catbarinenburg* in *Siberia*, on Account of the Mines, in which a great many *Saxons* and other *Germans* are employ'd. As to the Government of the *Lutheran Churches*, and Schools in *Russia*, they are under the Inspection of a Superintendent-General in *Muscow*, and two Superintendents in *Livonia* and *Esthonia*.

XXI. THE

(69) In the *Verändertes Russland* (p. 310.) it is mentioned, that the Introduction of Images into the Church was ascribed to *Basilides*, which some other *Russians* attribute to *Dionysius*; And that, next to our Saviour and the Virgin *Mary*, of all the Saints, *Nicholas of Bari*, and *Sergius*, were rever'd the most.

(70) Concerning the free Exercise of Religion, and the Education of the Children of the *Swedish Captives*, read *Wahrhafte und umständliche Historie von den Schwedischen Gefangenen in Russland und Siberien*, (A full and true History of the *Swedish Captives* in *Russia* and *Siberia*) publish'd by Capt. Curt. Frederick van Wreck, *Soran*, 1728.

XXI. THE *Calvinists* and *Roman Catholics* have, likewise, their Churches in *Petersburg* and *Muscow*; But the latter are forbid having any *Jesuits* among them; Because they having intermeddled in the Affairs of the Prince, were, on that Account, banish'd out of *Muscow*, in the Year 1718.

XXII. THE *Arminians* have a Church, and a Bishop, at *Astracan*. Other Christian Sects hold their Divine Service in private Houses, because they cannot afford to build Churches, which otherwise they might.

XXIII. IT is also to be observed, that Persons of Merit can, without Regard to Religion, obtain the highest Posts, as well in the Army as in the Senat; For Instance, Count *Brufs* was a *Calvinist*, Baron *Osterman*, and *Jaguseniski*, *Lutherans*, a Thing hardly admitted in any other Country.

XXIV. (2.) MAHOMETANS are likewise tolerated in *Russia*, and make up about a 30th Part of the Inhabitants: In *Casan* and *Kasimow* are counted 20000 Houses, besides the *Astracan-Nagabascbir-Zerkass* and *Siberian Mahometan Tartars*. They have, in all their Cities and Villages where they live, their Meetings and Schools; They travel to their Holy Cities of *Mecca* and *Medina*; And *Polygamy* and the Exercise of other Tenets are allow'd them, according to their Law.

XXV. CZAR *Alexei* used a Stratagem, to bring over many to the *Christian* Religion; That is, he ennobled all those who were baptized, and then they were called *Kniaz* (i. e. *Prince*) which induced many Thousands to embrace *Christianity*. I have seen, in one Village, 18 such noble Families, who all liv'd by Tillage and Husbandry.

XXVI. (3.) THE Pagans in *Russia* are three times as numerous as the *Mahometans*; But they differ very much in their Idolatry and Ceremonies. And it would be too tedious here to give a particular Description of the Superstition of every Nation; Which may, however, be done hereafter, if I live to publish a Description of the *Southern* and other Parts of *Tartary*.

XXVII. IN general it may be said of them all, that they believe ONE ETERNAL BEING, who created all Things, and Whom they pretend to worship under the Form of many Sorts of strange Things. Some of them have taken a Fancy to many Sorts of Images;

Images; Some, to Animals, Birds and Stars; They set apart for their Offerings, which they make to Heaven, certain Places, or Holy Groves, and have Regard to Fire and other Elements.

XXVIII. **W**HATEVER Pains the *Russian* Clergy has taken to convert these People, have hitherto been in vain. 1. Because they live dispersed in the Woods, and are very seldom long in one Place. 2. Because they have no Writings nor Books, and do not understand the *Russian* Language; But those who live in Villages, among the *Russians*, are all baptized, and speak the *Russian* Language so well, that they are not to be distinguish'd from the *Russians* themselves.

XXIX. **A**ND tho' these *Heatbens* are stupid and ignorant in the Knowledge of GOD; Yet they are naturally honest, and good moral People, who hardly know what Perjury, Thieving, Fornication, Drunkenness, Tricking, and other such Vices, are. And it is very rare to find any of them charged with the like, except those who live among the *Russian Christians*, and learn these Vices of them.

XXX. **T**HIS latter I can testify on my own Experience. For when in the Year 1722, after I had heard that the Peace was concluded in the *North*, I went from the City of *Crasnoyabr*, on the River *Jenisei*, and had left Doctor *Messerschmidt*, with whom I went from *Tobolsky*, in *Siberia*, I had, in my Return, no other Companion but a *Swedish* Boy, about 14 or 15 Years of Age.

XXXI. **H**OWEVER, the Commanding Officer in *Crasnoyabr* gave me a Guide, who was a *Russian*, in order to conduct me to *Tobolsky*; But he left me on the Road; And I was forc'd to travel, with my young *Swedish* Companion only, thro' all these *Heatbenish* Countries. I had ordered a Boat to be built for me on the River *Kentzick*, to go from that River into the River *Czulim*, and from that into the River *Oby*; And the Commanding Officer in *Crasnoyabr* had allotted me five *Tartars*, or *Heatbens*, to row the Boat.

XXXII. **M**Y Guide having left me, I shew'd my Passport to these *Heatbens*, who, all the Way conducted me, from one *Jurte*, or *Hut*, to another; And I can truly say, that they wrong'd me of nothing; Tho' they might easily have done it; Because I was alone, and slept, in the Night-time, in the Boat; And, in the

Morning, before I was awake, I found they often had, of their own Accord chang'd Men 3 or 4 Times. Such a Voyage I should hardly have hazarded between *Tobolsky* and *Muscow*, where I question whether the *Russian Rosbonicks* would have suffer'd me to pass in so much Safety. And when, for certain Reasons, I was obliged to stay 14 Days on the River *Oby*, among the *Ostiacks*, all the Baggage I had with me lay openly in a Hut, in which a whole Family dwelt; And yet I did not lose the least Thing (71).

XXXIII. I SHALL say more of this, in my Journal, which I kept during my Voyage, and which I intend to publish, if God spares me Life and Health.



CHAP. IX.

Of the Ecclesiastical Government, in Russia.

SUMMARY.

§. I. II. **A** Brief Account of the Succession of the Russian Patriarchs and Metropolitans. III. Some believe Michael Cyrus, and others Leo, to have been the first Metropolitan of Kiow. IV. The Succession of the Metropolitans of Kiow, from Leo to Maxim. V. In whose Time, the Office of Archimandrite was in-

(71) A *Russian*, in *Tobolsky*, told me the following pleasant Occurrence. Travelling, at a certain Time, from this Place, to the City of *Bereffowa* (12 Days Journey from *Tobolsky*, Northward) he said he lodg'd one Night in an *Ostiack's* *Jurt* or Hut, and the next Day being gone about a German Mile from thence, he mis'd a Bag with near 100 *Rubels* in it; But the Roads not being so full of Travellers, as in *Europe*, the *Ostiack's* Son, who had been hunting, found the Bag, which, however, he did not take up, but went home and told his Father of it: The Father order'd the Son to go back again, and cover it with the Branch of a Tree, that the Owner, if he should come thither again, and enquire after it, might take it where he left it. Above 3 Months afterwards, this *Russian*, in his Return, lodg'd again with the same *Ostiack*, (who had forgot him) and telling how unfortunate he had been, a'ter he left that Place, the *Ostiack* with Joy cry'd; Art thou the Man who lost that Bag? My Son shall go with thee, and shew thee where it lies, that thou mayst take it up again, with thy own Hands. An excellent Lesson, from a *Heathen* to a *Christian*.

introduced, in Russia. VI. *The Building of two Capital Churches, in Muscow.* VII. *Miracles said to have been perform'd by Alexei Mirificus, in the Tartarian Horda.* VIII. *A Dissention about the Succession of the Metropolitans: Sofimus ordains Stephen Perinski Bishop of Great Permia. The Lithuanians elect a Metropolitan of their own.* IX. *Isidorus endeavours to unite the Roman Catholick and Russian Churches; But is, on that Account, confined to a Convent.* X. *The Election of a new Metropolitan; Who is rejected by the Republick of Novogrod: Upon which, the Grand Prince wages War with them.* XI. *Some new Ordinances, made with Regard to the Clergy.* XII. *The Deprivation of some Metropolitans, during the Minority of Iwan Wafiliewitz. Macarius obtains, at Length, this eminent Dignity; And crowns that Czar. A terrible Fire, in Russia.* XIII. *The Succession of the Metropolitans after Macarius; Among whom Hiob was the first who was consecrated Patriarch of Russia. How it went with his Successors.* XIV. XV. XVI. *Of the Patriarch Nikon, and the Dissentions on his Account; Which are the Occasion of a Synod being convok'd. Decrees of that Synod, as well concerning him, as otherwise.* XVII. XVIII. *The Succession of Patriarchs after him. The Intrigues of the Patriarch Joachim.* XIX. *Of Adrian, the last Patriarch after him.* XX. *The Office of Patriarch ceasing, at his Death, a Spiritual College or Synod is ordain'd in the Room of it.* XXI. *An Account wherein, and of what Persons that Synod consists.*

IT is well known that the *Russian Church*, as well as the *Greek Church*, from which it owes its Rise, has always been govern'd by a Patriarch, and by the Clergy which depended solely on him, till Czar Peter I. after the Death of the last Patriarch Adrian, made an Alteration.

II. It might not be improper to give the Reader, in this Place, the Succession of all the Patriarchs and Metropolitans, from the first Establishment of the *Russian Church*; And to mention all such Things as appear to be Praise-worthy in the Administration of every One who has been possess'd of that eminent Dignity; But this being done already by other Authors, I shall

only mention some few Particulars, which have occur'd to my Observation.

III. I HAVE already taken Notice, above, that *Wolodimir*, or *Basilus I.* being baptized in the Year 987, quite abolished *Paganism* (72) and embraced the *Greek Religion*; After which *Photius*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, recommended to him *Michael Syrus* (whom others call only *Cyrus the Philosopher*, whom *Emperour Basilus* had sent to him) to be the first Metropolitan in *Russia*. Some, therefore, reckon this *Cyrus* the first who possess'd that Dignity; But he not having fix'd upon any certain See, but having passed the greatest Part of his Life in travelling with the *Grand Prince Wolodimir*, in Order to convert the Rest of the *Russians*, especially those of *Novogrod* and *Rostow*; there are others who will not allow him that Honour; But pretend, that, after the Death of *Michael Syrus*, *Leontei* or *Leo*, was the first Metropolitan, whom *Nicholas*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, ordained Archbishop of *Kiow*, as he did, likewise, *Joachim* of *Korssun*, Archbishop of *Novogrod*, and *Fædor Grezin*, Archbishop of *Rostow*: And afterwards, when *Christianity* encreased, in *Russia*, the Number of Archbishops was augmented to seven.

IV. THE Successors of this *Leo* were, *John*, *George*, *Nicephorus*, *Theopentus*, *Hilarian*, *George the Second*, *John the Second*, *Eunuchus*, *Epbraim*, *Nicephorus*, *Niceta*, *Michael*, and *Cyrillus*; After whose Death, the *Russian* Clergy chose, for their Metropolitan, one *Clement*, who was the fourteenth in Succession, without asking the Consent of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; Though he was afterwards confirmed by him. However, his Successors, *Constantine*, *Theodorus*, *John*, *Nicephorus*, *Matthew*, *Cyrillus*, *Joseph* of *Nice*, *Cyrillus* and *Maxim*, were again all ordained by that Patriarch. The latter of these was the first who, in the Year 1283, was translated, by *George*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, from *Kiow* to *Wolodimir*, and afterwards to *Muscow*, when the former Place was ruin'd by the *Tartars*, and came into

(72) The *Russian* Annals mention, that *Wolodimir*, before his Conversion, was a zealous Idolater, and among all his Idols he worshipp'd one call'd *Perun*, with the greatest Reverence, the Rest were call'd *Chors*, *Dascbb*, *Strib*, *Smargel*, and *Mokosch*; But how he us'd his God, *Perun*, at *Novogrod*, when he caus'd him to be dragg'd thro' the River, the Reader may see, in other Authors.

into the Possession of the *Poles* and *Lituanians* (73). Nevertheless, if we may believe the *Karentinian* Historians, the Metropolitans of *Wolodimir* had their Vicars at *Kiow*.

V. IN the Time of *Maxim*, *Daniel Alexandrowitz*, the fourth Son of *Alexander Nefskoi* reigned, who was a quiet and peaceable Prince, and, therefore, was not molested by the *Tartars*, nor any of his other Neighbours. When his Brother *Demetrius*, and his Brother's Son, *Iwan*, died, in *Pereflaw*, that Principality fell, likewise, to the *Grand Prince*, *Daniel*; Who, however, did not much concern himself with Worldly Affairs, and is only noted for building the Convent called *Danielowka*, in which he instituted the first *Archimandrite*, or Abbot, in all *Russia*. Into this Convent, likewise, he himself retired, and became a Monk; Where dying, in the Year 1302, he left particular Orders, that they should not bury him in the Church, but, among his Brother-Monks, in the Church-Yard of the Convent.

VI. AFTER the afore-mentioned Metropolitan *Maxim*, succeeded *Peter*, surnamed the *Worker of Miracles*, who was instituted by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. In his Time reign'd *Iwan Danielowitz*, *Grand Prince* of *Muscow*, Who, by *Peter's* Advice, built in *Muscow*, the great Cathedral Church, in Honour of the *Virgin Mary*, and the Church of *St. Michael*, where he was buried.

VII. PETER was followed by *Theognostus* or *Pbeognistus*, who, likewise, was ordained by *Esaias*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*. *Theognostus* was succeeded by *Alexei Mirificus*, whom the *Tartarian Zanibek Chan* entreated to come to the *Horda*, where he restored the *Chan's* Wife, who was blind, to her Sight. He also gave his Benediction to the *Great Prince Demetri-Iwanowitz*, in Order for him to build the first Wall about the City of *Muscow*, which was finished in the Year 1527. In his Time, lived the *Igumen* or *Prior Sergius Troitskoi*, who, as well in his Life-Time,

(73) In the Year 1415, when the *Great Prince* of *Lithuania*, *Witold*, or *Witow*, had the Principality of *Kiow* in Possession, he ordered the *Russians* in *Kiow*, to choose a Metropolitan of their own, in the Church of *St. Sophia*; Because he would not suffer the Metropolitans of *Muscow* to receive the Revenues of *Kiow*. Accordingly, one was chosen, *Gregory Schemiblack* by Name; And thus there were, at that Time, two Metropolitans in *Russia*.

Time, as after his Death, by his Relicks, is said to have wrought great Miracles, and was sent to *Russia*, by *Atbanafius*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*. The Metropolitan *Alexei*, in the eighty-fourth Year of his Age, recommended this *Sergius*, to be his Successor, but he would not accept of it: And when the *Grand Prince* would have promoted one *Mitai*; *Alexei* refused to give him his Benediction.

VIII. THERE being, at this Time, great Troubles in *Russia*, and a Disunion among the Princes, we find two Successors of *Alexei* mentioned, viz. *Gerontius* and *Sofimus*, the latter of whom, some call *Pimen*, and others *Timen*; However, in the true Succession of Metropolitans, *Cyprianus*, who was born in *Servia*, is reckon'd the Seven and twentieth, and *Alexei*'s Successor. Of this *Sofimus*, we find it, nevertheless, recorded, that he ordain'd *Stephanus* of *Ustjug*, to be the first Bishop of *Permia*. This *Stephanus* had obtain'd Leave, and receiv'd the Benediction, of the Bishop of *Ustjug*, in Order to go to *Permia*, to convert the *Heathens*, in which he had good Success. He also invented a *Permian* Alphabet, and translated several Books, out of the *Russian* into the *Permian* Language; He died in the Year 1396, and lies buried at *Muscow*, in the Convent of *Spaska*. Therefore *Sofimus* or *Timen* ought to be reckon'd the 27th, and *Cyprianus* the 28th Metropolitan. The *Novogrodians* would not, at first, accept of *Cyprianus*, but at Length they gave him their Approbation. He translated several Books, from the *Greek*, into the *Russian* Language; And was succeeded by *Photius*, in whose Time the *Lithuanians*, as I have said above, chose a Metropolitan of their own, in the Year 1415.

IX. AFTER the Death of this latter, in the Time of the *Grand Prince Wafilie Wafliewitz*, one *Isidorus* came from *Rome*, who by insinuating himself into the *Grand Prince*'s Favour, obtain'd the Metropolitan Dignity; Whence it appears that the Confirmation from *Constantinople* was, at that Time, no longer look'd upon as absolutely requisite. *Isidorus* having given the greatest Assurances of defending the *Greek* Religion, was sent to the Council of *Ferrara*, where he voluntarily, and without the general Consent of the *Russian* Clergy, sign'd the Conclusion concerning the Union of the two Churches, which was, in a manner extorted from the

Grecians

Grecians. After this, he return'd to *Russia*, and endeavour'd to persuade the *Grand Prince* to confirm the Union (74) with the *Latin Church*, which the *Grand Prince* refused, and confin'd him to the Convent of *Tschudko*, whence he made his Escape, and fled to *Italy*, to Pope *Eugenius*.

X. AFTER this, the said *Great Prince* assembled the *Russian Clergy*, in Order to choose another Metropolitan, which Office, from the Death of *Photius*, had been vacant 18 Years. At this Election, the Bishop of *Resan*, *Jonas* or *Jonathan*, was chosen. After his Death, *Theodosius*, or *Theodosii*, Bishop of *Rostow*, was chosen, and to him succeeded one *Philip*. At this Time, the *Novogrodians* were divided, in the Election of an Archbishop, one Party choosing one *Theophilus* of the *Greek Church*, and the other Party one *Gregorius* of the *Latin Church*. The Consequence of this Disunion was, that, the latter Party having brought the former over to them, they both rebelled against Czar *Iwan*, and desired the Prince of *Lituania* to be their Sovereign. And tho' the Metropolitan *Philip*, as well as the *Grand Prince* himself, exhorted them, by Letters, to adhere to their former Religion, and submit to their lawful Prince; Yet by the Instigation of one *Martba*, a Rich and Powerful Lady, who aspired to marry the *Grand Prince* of *Lituania*, *Michael Alexandrowitz*, they continued in their Obstinacy, till Czar *Iwan* visited them, with a large Army, and brought them to their former Obedience, by Force of Arms.

XI. UPON the Death of the Metropolitan *Philip*, one *Jeronti*, and after him one *Sofimus*, succeeded; But this latter was deposed, and one *Simon*, Prior of the Convent of *Sergia*, was chosen in his Place. This Metropolitan, and the Archbishop of *Novogrod*, made Canons to oblige those Priests, who became Widowers, and were possess'd of any of the Dignities in the Church, to give them up; Because it was suppos'd they had their Time employ'd with their Domestick Affairs, and could not sufficiently attend the Duty of their Office. However, they were allow'd to keep some smaller Office in the Church, and either to enjoy the 4th Part of the Revenues of their Successors, or else to retire into a Convent.

(74) The Project for an Union of the *Roman Catholic* and the *Greek Churches*, which the *Synode*, in the Year 1717, deliver'd to Czar *Peter I.* is to be seen in the *Vremennye Russk.*

a Convent. They, likewise, ordain'd, that the Monks and Nun should no longer live in one Convent together, and that the Monks should have an *Archimandrite* or Abbot, and the Nuns a married Priest, for Inspectors.

XII. AFTER the Death of *Simon*, one *Warlam*, *Archimandrite*, or Abbot of the Convent of *Simanski* succeeded. And after him followed *Daniel*, the *Igumen* or Prior of St. *Joseph's* Convent: But at that Time, and during the Minority of *Iwan Wasiliewitz*, the Second, after the Death of his Mother *Helena*, who had reign'd four Years, the *Bojares* administering the Government at their own Pleasure, and they being divided into two Parties, the most powerful of them thrust the said Metropolitan, *Daniel*, into a Monastery, and chose another in his Room, *Joseph* by Name, who, three Years after, was, likewise, removed, and *Macarius*, Archbishop of *Novogrod*, an excellent Man, chosen in his Place. This *Macarius* crown'd *Czar Iwan Wasiliewitz*, in the Year 1546, in which Year, there happen'd a great Fire in the City of *Muscow*, which consumed a great many Antiquities, miraculous Relicks, and *Greek Books*. During the Fire, *Macarius* went into the Cathedral Church, where he remained in Prayers, 'till the Roof was consumed with the Fire, and the Heat obliged him to retire, when he took with him the Image of the Virgin *Mary*, which the Metropolitan *Peter*, surnamed the *Worker of Miracles*, had made with his own Hands, and the Code of *Ecclesiastical Canons*, which *Cyprianus* had brought with him from *Constantinople*.

XIII. AFTER him succeeded *Aphanasi*, *Philip*, *Kiril*, *Antonin*, and *Hiob*. In the Time of this latter, and in the Reign of *Czar Foedor Iwanowitz*, came to *Muscow*, *Jeremias*, the *Constantinopolitan* Patriarch over the whole World, who, as *Innocentius Gisel*, Abbot of *Kiow*, mentions, in his History of *Russia*, declared the said Metropolitan *Hiob*, in the Year 7097, the 26th of *January*, according to the *Russian* Reckoning; Or, in the Year of our Lord CHRIST, 1588, Patriarch of all *Russia* (75); And

(75) This *Jeremias* came to *Russia*, in Order to collect Money, to spend at the *Turkish* Court, to have the Patriarch *Mitriphan* (who was an *Unitarian*) deposed; And that he might succeed the better in this, he the readier consented to the Installation of *Hiob*, as Patriarch of *Russia*; Perhaps this is the same *Jeremias* who corresponded with the *Lutheran* Divines, especially with those at *Tubingen*, concerning the *Greek* and *Lutheran* Religions; Which Letters, it is said, have been printed, in the *Greek* and *Latin* Tongues, at *Wittenberg*.

And since that Time, there have always been Patriarchs in *Russia*, to which the Patriarchs of *Alexandria*, *Antiochia* and *Jerusalem*, have, by their Letters, consented, and thereby conferr'd the same Honour upon them, as they themselves enjoy'd. This is represented, in a Picture, in the *Russian Churches*, under the Type of the five Senses, viz. (1.) *Constantinople*, (2.) *Alexandria*, (3.) *Antiochia*, (4.) *Jerusalem*, (5.) *Russia*, which is called, in one Word, *Karai*. This *Hioh* was deposed, and thrust into a Convent by the Impostor *Demetrius*, in the Year 1605, and *Demetrius Ignatius*, who, in the *Russian Chronicles*, is reckoned a *Roman Catholick*, put in his Place. He also was put into a Monastery, by *Czar Czuiski*; And *Hioh*, not being willing to quit a Monastick Life, *Hermogenes*, Metropolitan of *Casan*, came in his Room; But he, likewise, was deposed, and died in Prison. After this, Archbishop *Pbilarct* was chosen Patriarch of *Russia*, and was succeeded by *Josaff*, *Josepb*, and *Nicon*; From the Patriarch *Hioh*, to this *Nicon*, all the *Russian Patriarchs* had their Confirmation from *Constantinople*.

XIV. *Nicon*, though but of mean Extraction, was very haughty and ambitious; He had not great Learning, but had read much, was a Lover of Books, and caused several *Greek* and *Latin* Authors to be translated; By which he got a great Insight into the Policy of the *Romish Church*, which he intended to introduce in *Russia*. He, therefore, as the first Step to this Innovation, represented to *Czar Alexei Michaelewitz*, how unnecessary it was to chuse a Metropolitan, for the future, with the Suffrage of the Patriarchs of the *East*, and to have the Confirmation from *Constantinople*. And this Proposal was applauded, partly as it would save great Charges, and partly for other Reasons. Hereupon, (1.) He acquainted the Patriarch of *Constantinople* by a Letter, that he was called to that Dignity by the immediate Spirit of *God*, and that therefore it was not proper for one Patriarch to depend on another. (2.) He altered his Title, and instead of *Most Hollowed*, as the former Patriarchs had styled themselves, he took the Title of *Most Holy*. (3.) He augmented the Number of the Archbishops and Bishops. (4.) He built four large new Convents, and by his artful Eloquence, and other

other Intrigues, obtain'd several Estates, and perpetual Revenues, as well of the Crown, as of Private People, which enabled him to maintain the four Metropolitans, twelve Archbishops, twelve Bishops, twelve *Archimandrites*, or Abbots, and several other new Ecclesiastical Dignities, which he had introduced. (5.) He altered the Canons of the Church, to his own Advantage, under Pretence, that, in the former Translation, many Things were given wrong; This not only caused great Disputes and Schism in the Church, but is one Reason, why the *Roskolschiks* remain separated to this Day. (6.) He claimed a Right to sit in the Senate with the *Czar*, and to have a Vote in temporal Affairs, especially in Justiciary Matters, and in making of new Laws, pretending that the Patriarch *Philaret* was allow'd an Inspection into these Matters. (7.) He insinuated, that the *Czar* had not Power to make Peace or War, with the Neighbouring Potentates, without his Advice; Because, he said, he was bound to take Care of the *Czar's* Soul, as well as of the Souls of the whole Nation, for which he was accountable to the ALMIGHTY; And that, therefore, he was best able to assist the *Czar*, in such weighty Affairs, with his Holy Counsel. But it afterwards appear'd, that the great Sums of Money which the King of *Poland* had remitted him for this Purpose, and his own exorbitant Ambition, were the true Motives of his pretended Holy Care.

XV. THESE Pretensions were rejected by the *Czar*, and the Senate, for which they alledg'd sufficient Reasons, *viz.* that the Patriarch *Philaret* had been advised with, in Temporal Affairs, not because of his Character, as Patriarch, but as the *Czar's* Father and Guardian; And that *Philaret* himself had been a Senator, and employed in the *Polish* Embassy, whereby he had acquired a greater Knowledge of Foreign Affairs, than the other Senators. Moreover, that since *Philaret*, no Patriarch had been advised with in Temporal Affairs, nor had ever pretended to it, and that, therefore, his Pretensions would be of Prejudice to the *Empire*. Nevertheless, he would not desist from them, but endeavour'd to gain his Point by Threats: He excommunicated some of the Senators, and by his Secret Intrigues, endeavour'd to raise a Rebellion among the common People, to which the Fa-

Famine, which reign'd at that Time, in some Measure, contributed: Insomuch that a great deal of Blood was shed in the Tumult, before it could be appeased. The *Czar* and Senate not knowing, by what Means, to bring this turbulent Man to Reason; Because he would hear of no Reconcilement; unless they consented to his Demands; And it not being advisable, at that Time, to use Force; Because it might raise a new Tumult among the Common People, and it was to be fear'd, that he might get Assistance from some weak Senators, who sided with him; It was, therefore, at Length, resolved to debate this Matter by a Synod; For which Purpose, the *Czar Alexei* sent for three Patriarchs, twenty-seven Archbishops, and One Hundred and seventeen other Prelates, from *Greece*, at the Expence of the *Empire*, to which were added One Hundred and Fifty of the *Russian* Clergy.

XVI. THIS Synod having examined the *Czar's* Complaints against the Patriarch, they came to a Conclusion, and Sentence was pronounced; (1.) That the Patriarch *Nicon* should be degraded, and confined to a Convent, with no other Sustenance, but Bread and Water, during his Life. (2.) That the new Patriarchs of *Russia*, for the Future, should be chosen, not only by the Archbishops, Bishops and Clergy, but also jointly by the Senate, under the Presidency of the *Czar*; and, in Case they should not behave themselves suitable to their Characters, or commit any Civil Crimes, they should be tried and condemn'd by the *Czar* and the Senate. (3.) It was confirmed, that the Patriarch of *Constantinople* should not be acknowledged as the sole Head of the *Greek* Church, nor should he have the Revenues of the Tithes in *Russia*; But it should be left to the *Czar's* good Will, what he would allow him. (4.) From that Time, no Man should have the Power, either to sell, or to give or bequeath his Goods or Estates to Convents, or to any other of the Clergy. (5.) That the Patriarch should introduce no new Bishops, nor other Foundations, without Consent of the *Czar* and the Senate.

XVII. BY Virtue of this Sentence, *Nicon* was sent to the Convent of *Woskresenski*, which he himself had caused to be built after a sumptuous Manner, where he lived ten Years under Confinement.

XVIII. IN his Place was chosen an Archbishop, called *Joseph*, an ancient, pious and quiet Man; After his Death, succeeded one *Pestrim*, whose Successor was *Joachim*, who, after the Death of *Czar Theodor*, intermeddled in the Affairs of the Princess *Sophia*, but with so much Art and Cunning, that nothing of it was discovered, 'till after his Death; And it is said, that, as soon as he had perceived the Rebellion, at that Time, would not fall out, according to his Project, and that the *Czar* would retain his former Sovereignty, he took Poison, and thus put an End to his Life.

XIX. THESE Intrigues occasion'd, at that Time, a great deal of Discourse about the Authority of Patriarchs, and of the Prejudice they had always been to the *Empire*. However, it was thought necessary, as Circumstances were then, to chuse another; Because the *Czar* was young, and Princess *Sophia* had spread abroad several false Reports of him, among the common People, especially that he sided with the Foreigners. The Choice fell on *Adrian*, the Metropolitan of *Casan*, in the Room of Patriarch *Joachim*; He was a very poor Genius, and a great Drunkard. He died, in the Year 1699, near *Narva*.

XX. AFTER his Death, the Clergy were for chusing another; But the *Czar*, being engaged in a War, deferr'd it 'till the Year 1719, when He declared, by a *Manifesto*, that he intended, instead of a Patriatch, to establish a Spiritual Court, or Synod, which, He would take Care, should be provided with good Regulations and Instructions, and this was accordingly brought to bear. The Orders or Regulations of this Synod are translated into the *German* Tongue, and, if I mistake not, printed at *Dantzic*.

XXI. THIS Synod, or Spiritual Court, consists of, (1.) A President, which Office the *Czar* reserv'd for himself. (2.) A Vice-President, who is an Archbishop, for which Dignity, the several Bodies of the Clergy and the Senate nominate two Persons, of whom the *Czar* confirms one. (3.) Six Counsellours, who are Bishops; and six *Archimandrites* or Abbots, as Assessors. And when a Vacancy happens, either among the Counsellours, or Assessors, the Synod chuses two Persons, whom they present to the *Czar*, who nominates one of them. There are likewise
some

some temporal Persons in this Synod, as an Attorney-General, one Principal, and several under Secretaries; Whose respective Duties are circumstantially described in the Synodical Regulations. But when any Affairs of great Importance happen, they must be laid before the Czar, in the Senate, on which Occasions, the whole Synod often come into the Senate, and take their Places under the Senators. The Synod have also under their Direction some other Bodies, as, (1.) The Ecclesiastical Court. (2.) The Board of Treasury. (3.) The Commission for Schools and Printing-Offices. In the Provinces, there are, in every Government, one Archbishop, and some Bishops, as, (1.) In the Government of *Muscow* is the Archbishop of *Sara* and *Podon* (which are only Names of two small Rivulets, that run by the Bishop's House, two *Wersts* from the City.) And under him are the Bishops of *Resan*, *Susdabl*, *Rostow*, *Colomba* and *Twer*, (2.) In the Government of *Petersburg* is the Archbishop of *Novogrod*, and under him the Bishops of *Plescow*, and *Olonetz*. (3.) In the Government of *Kiow*, the Archbishop of *Kiow*, and under him the Bishops of *Czernicow* and *Pereflawle*. (4.) In the Government of *Casan*, the Archbishop of that Name, and under him the Bishops of *Wiatka* and *Permia*. (5.) In the Government of *Astracan* is only one Bishop. (6.) In *Siberia*, the Archbishop of that Name, and the Bishop of *Nert-jitinski*. (7.) In the Government of *Archangelgorod*, the Archbishop of *Wologda*, and the Bishops of *Holmogorod* and of *Ustjug*. (8.) In the Government of *Woronitz* is only the Bishop of *Woronitz*. (9.) In the Government of *Smolenscow*, only the Bishop of *Smolenscow*. (10.) In the Government of *Nisegorod*, but one Bishop: Which make, in all, six Archbishops, and eighteen Bishops. The *Archimandrites*, or Abbots, concern themselves no farther, than with their Convents. Besides this, almost every City has a *Protopriest*, and in Great Cities there are more; as, for Instance, in *Muscow*, there are seven. This Dignity is much the same, as that of *Probst*, or *Præpositus*, among the *Lutherans*, or a *Dean* in other Places.



C H A P. X.

Of the Revenues in Russia.

S U M M A R Y.

§ I. **T**HE Difficulty a private Person, or one who has not been employ'd in Affairs of State, meets with, to come at an exact Account of the Revenues of any Country. II. What other Authors have reckon'd the Revenues of Russia to amount to III, IV. What Account, on the contrary, the Inhabitants, themselves, give of this Matter. V. What the Impost and Contributions amounted to, in the Reign of Czar Alexei, and what they now amount to. VI. What Persons are exempt from paying Head-Money.

I. **I**F it be a difficult Matter to give an exact Account of the Revenues of a Republick, it is certainly much more so to determine the Revenues of an Empire, under an Absolute Government; Because the Laws vary, according to the Circumstances of the Times, the Increase or Decrease of People, the Melioration or Ruin of the Country, and other Things.

II. ACCORDING to the Calculation set forth in *Das Veranderete Russland*, (p. 34, and 48.) the Revenues, in Russia, cannot amount to above eight Millions (of Rubels) with which the Author of the Remarks upon *l' Histoire genealogique des Tartars* (p. 724, in the Note,) agrees *. And as I have mentioned before,

* THIS vast Empire (says that Author) possesses very little Coin, and it is certain, that, every Thing reckon'd, the Revenues of Russia do not amount to eight Millions of Rubels per Ann. So that it is astonishing, how the late Emperor of Russia (Peter I.) could, with so moderate an Income, maintain so burdensome a War, during so many Years, in Foreign Parts, and, at the same Time, carry on so many vast Enterprizes, within his own Dominions: But we must allow, that a Despotick Government has great Ressources, and can render that possible, which would be impossible to any other.

fore, that in the Time of *Czar Alexei*, the Revenues were five Millions, supposing, at present, that they are raised to double what they were then, they do not amount to above ten Millions.

III. YET some *Russians* pretend the Revenues of their *Empire* are far more considerable. They reckon, for Instance, throughout the whole *Empire*, seventy-four *Kopeiks* for each Head, which amounts to five Millions. Besides this, all Citizens and Farmers belonging to the Crown, pay for each Head forty *Kopeiks*, more than those belonging to the Nobility, which, they say, amounts to two Millions. They reckon for the greater and lesser Tolls, and Excise, four Millions. The Monopolies, the Trade from *China* and *Persia*, by the Way of *Astracan*, the Duty on Salt and Publick Houses, the Sale of Tobacco, and some other Things, are counted at four Millions. The new conquered Provinces are supposed to pay two Millions. The Mines, the Privileges of Coinage, the Fees of Colleges, and *Chancery*-Dues, are counted one Million. The Revenues from the *Tartars* and *Pagan* Subjects, which they pay in Furrs, and other Commodities, are computed at two Millions; Which, makes, in all, twenty Millions.

IV. BUT whether this Calculation be just, I shall not pretend to decide; The Poll-Tax was introduced in the Year 1716. For before that Time, the Contribution was regulated according to the Number of Farm-Houses.

V. IN the Time of *Czar Alexei*, every Peasant, belonging to a Nobleman, paid no more than One Hundred and ten *Kopeiks*, and one Bushel, * of Corn, half Rye, and half Oats. But now, if we add to it the Tax for Recruits, it amounts to five *Rubels* and above; But then the Noblemen have so much the less to receive of their Peasants. (76)

VI. ALL who are in Service, either in the Army, or of the State, or that belong to the Court, and the Clergy, from the
Highest

* THE German Word *Scheffel*, which I have here translated *Bushel*, denotes a Measure, which does not hold a great deal more than half a Bushel *English*. If I mistake not, the Weight of a *Scheffel* of Corn is 36 Pounds.

(76) In the Year 1721, when I travell'd from *Tobolsky*, farther into *Siberia*, the Citizens or Peasants of the little Town of *Birgamaska*, near the City of *Tara*, told me, that their Contribution amounted to yearly about 7 *Rubels* in Money.

Highest to the Lowest, are exempt from paying Poll-Tax. Among those who are in Military Employ, are reckoned the *Cosacks*, *Kalmucks* and *Tartars* in Service, all Artificers, Master and Men, who constantly belong to the Fleet, Ordnance, Manufactory of Arms, and Mines.



C H A P. XI.

Of the Forces of the Russian Empire, by Land, and by Sea.

SUMMARY.

§. I, II. **T**HE Russian Land-Forces are divided into Offensive and Defensive Troops. What Account is given of them in other Authors. III, IV. The Offensive Troops consist of Regular and Irregular Infantry; V. Cavalry and VI. Artillery. VII. to X. Of the Command of this Army. XI. to XIII. Of their Cloathing, Arms, Ammunition and Pay. XIV. What Troops more belong to this Offensive Army. XV, XVI. In what Manner the Troops are quarter'd and maintained, in the Empire, in Time of Peace. XVII. Of the Regular Defensive Troops. XVIII. Of the Irregular Defensive Troops. XIX. Of the Russian Sea-Force. XX. to XXII. Of the Command of their Fleets. XXIII. to XXV. Of their Fleets in the Black, Caspian and White Seas. XXVI. XXVII. Latter Accounts from the Sea of Japan. XXVIII. Of the Russian Defensive Sea-Force, consisting of their Havens. XXIX. A new Haven at Reval, and another at Royerwyk. XXX, XXXI. Havens on the Black and Lamaian Seas. XXXII. Of the Russian Mariners. XXXIII, to XXXVI. A Relation of the Honour shewn to the small Boat, which first gave Occasion to the Building of the Russian Fleets.

I. IN Order to give a Brief Account of the *Russian Forces*, it will be necessary to divide them into *Regular* and *Irregular Troops*, both of which are again divided into *Offensive* and *Defensive*.

II. THE Number of the *Offensive regular Troops*, as they were in the Year 1717, may be seen in the *Veränderte Rusland*, (p. 377.) Since that Time, they are in some Measure encreased, as I was informed, in *Russia*, at my Return from *Siberia*. And are said to consist of forty-eight Regiments of Infantry. This Encrease may perhaps proceed from the new Regiments levy'd in *Siberia*, and other Parts, in the Year, 1720.

III. THE Life-Guard consists of two Regiments, the *Presbrafski* and *Simanowski*. There are two Regiments called Second-Guards; viz. the *Ingermanlandski* (or *Ingrians*) and *Astracanski*. These four Regiments make twelve Battalions. Each Battalion has four Companies, besides four Companies of Granadiers, all which are suppos'd to contain One Hundred ninety-two Men each. Insomuch that these four Regiments, together with the Company of Bombardiers, consisting of Three Hundred and Twenty Men, make above Ten Thousand Men; without the *prima plana*.

IV. THE rest of the Infantry is divided into three Divisions, each of which has one Regiment of Granadiers. Each Regiment has two Battalions, or eight Companies, and each Company consists of One Hundred Men. So that these forty-four Regiments make, in all, Sixty-three Thousand Three Hundred and Sixty Men; Besides the *prima plana*.

V. THE Horse is, likewise, divided into three Divisions, viz. ten Regiments of Musketers, and one Regiment of Grenadiers. Each Regiment consists of ten Companies, and each Company of Ninety-six Men. So that these thirty-three Regiments make, in all, Thirty-one Thousand Six Hundred and Eighty Men; Besides the *prima plana*.

VI. THE Field-Artillery consists in three Regiments, each of which has eight Companies of Cannoniers, one Company of Fireworkers, one Company of Bombardiers, one Company of Engineers, one Company of Miners, and one Company of Pon-

toneers; So that each Regiment has thirteen Companies, which amount in all to Seven Thousand Ninety-eight Men. If to these are added the Artificers, and those who belong to the Carriages, the whole is computed to be about Twelve Thousand Men; With the *prima plana*.

VII. THERE are two Field-Marshal-Generals; One commands the whole Army; Whilst the other presides in the Council of War, and they exchange their Posts every three Years.

VIII. THE Infantry is commanded by two Generals, three Lieutenant-Generals, six Major-Generals, six Brigadiers; Besides the Life-Guards, where almost all the Regimental Officers are, by their Posts, Generals and Brigadiers.

IX. THE Cavalry is commanded by a Lieutenant-General Field-Marshal, two Generals, three Lieutenant-Generals, three Major-Generals, and six Brigadiers.

X. IN the Artillery-Service, there is one Grand-Master of the Ordnance, one Lieutenant-General, and three Major-Generals, *viz.* one of the Artillery, one of Fortifications, and one Quarter-master General, and three Colonels, who have the Rank of Brigadiers.

XI. THE Colour of the Regimental Cloaths of the Army is regulated according to the principal Colours of the Arms of the *Empire*; The Life-Guards, for Instance, have, (1.) Green, (2.) White, (3.) Blew, (4.) Red Cloaths, instead of Yellow; and the Colour of the Facings of the Sleeves, and the Capes, are according to the Divisions and Brigades, whereby every common Soldier is known, not only to what Regiment, but to what Division and Brigade he belongs.

XII. THE Providing of Cloathing for the Army, is not entrusted with the Officers of the Regiment or Company, but is managed by a particular Commission, ordered for that Purpose; Which provides the Cloaths for the Army, and sends them, at certain Times, to the respective Regiments. It is the same, with Arms and Ammunition, which the Board of Ordnance takes Care of, and the Officers have nothing to do with it.

XIII. THE Officers and Common Men receive four Months Pay, and one Month's Provisions, always before-hand: Which is paid them by the Commissioners.

XIV. To

XIV. To the Offensive Irregular Army are reckoned, (1.) The Gentlemen Volunteers. (2.) The *Donn Cofacks*. (3.) The *Mala-Ruffian Cofacks*. (4.) The *Belgorodian-Cofacks*. (5.) The *Gayck-Cofacks*. (6.) The *Grebensskian Cofacks*. (7.) The *Kalmucks*; and (8.) The *Tartars*, Sixty Thousand of which may constantly serve in the Field. The rest of these are reckoned among the defensive Troops belonging to each Government, because they cannot be used in Wars, in remote Countries, without great Difficulty, and besides, being frequently annoy'd by their Neighbours, they are obliged almost always to be on Duty, to watch their Motions.

XV. THE Regular Offensive Army is, in Time of Peace, quartered in the several Provinces, where every Company builds their Barracks in empty Places, three single Men, or one that is married, being allowed a Room and a Garden, and the common Soldiers may work for the Country-People for Wages; But no Soldier is suffer'd to go into the Villages or Farmers Houses, without Permission of the Officers. They are exercised three Days in every Month, and to keep them from falling into Idleness, they are obliged to repair the Canals and Roads, throughout the *Empire*, every three Years.

XVI. THE Field-Artillery is divided into three Parts, the first of which is in the City of *Muscow*, and can easily be convey'd, by Water, to *Smolensko*, *Casan*, and other Places. The second Part is in *Great Novogrod*, on Account of *Livonia*, *Ingria* and *Lituania*. The third is in the City of *Seofsk* or *Scheofski*, on Account of *Kiow*, *Crim* and *Azow*. With each of these Divisions there is a Regiment of Artillery; And the Ordnance of each consists of 12 Cannons, 24 Pounders; 24, 18 Pounders; 30, 12 Pounders; 18, six Pounders; 120, three Pounders; and six Mortar-Pieces, of 368 Pounds; 12 of 300 Pounds; 18 of 240 Pounds; 24 of 80 Pounds, and 12 of 40 Pounds; with a proper Provision of Waggon and Ammunition, in Case of a Necessity of breaking up. They have always with them one third Part of the Horses necessary for the Train; And the rest are disposed up and down among the Country People. To be in a Readiness, in Case of a Siege, or a sudden Attempt on a Pass, one third of each Division of Artillery attends the Army; And, besides

sides that, each Battalion has always one three Pounder, and a hundred Charges.

XVII. (2.) THE Regular Defensive Troops are in Garison, some in the midst of the *Empire*, to prevent Insurrections, and Civil Broils, and some in the Frontier Towns: They are commonly call'd the Black Regiments. Of these there are, in *Muscow*, three Regiments of Infantry, and five Squadrons of Dragoons; In *Casan* three Regiments of Infantry, and one of Cavalry; In *Tobolski*; two Regiments of Infantry, and one of Cavalry; In *Gluchow*, two Regiments of Infantry, and one Squadron of Dragoons; In *Wernitz*, one Regiment of Infantry, and one Squadron of Cavalry. The rest ly in the Frontier Towns, as; *Kexholm*, *Schlusselfburg*, *Wyburg*, *Petersburg*, *Cronstadt*, *Narva*, *Reval*, *Pernau*, *Rogerwyck*, *Riga*, *Dunemunda*, *Pleskow* or *Pskow*, *Welikie Luki*, *Smolenskow*, *Czernikow*, *Kiow*, *Petscherskaja Krepost*, (or Fortrefs) *Poltowa*, *Belgorod*, *Backmatb*, *Sered*, *Nowaja Krepost*, (or new Fortrefs.) *Czaritzin*, with the Lines between the Rivers *Volga* and *Donn*, *Astracan*, *Tereck*, *Usa*, *Jamiscber*, *Tara*, *Zaarev-Keergan*, *Archangel*, *Nova-dwinka*, and *Kolo*. Besides these, there are in the Governments of *Casan*, *Astracan*, and *Siberia*, several little Fortresses, and likewise, in *Persia*, some conquered and new built Fortresses, besides several *Cosack* Pallisadoes and Forts built of Wood, which defend themselves. These Defensive Regular Regiments are computed to be 96,000 Men.

XVIII. THE Irregular Defensive Troops consist, (1.) Of the Nobility throughout the whole *Empire*, with their Servants; (2.) The Country Militia, in every Government; (3.) The *Cosacks*, *Kalmucks*, and all the *Tartars*, that do not go into the Field, as above-mentioned. And these have neither Pay, Provisions, nor Cloaths of the Crown, but only Arms and Ammunition; They have their own Officers, and are dependant on the Governour-General in each Province.

XIX. CONCERNING their Naval Force, every one knows, that before the Reign of *Czar Peter I.* the *Russians* had none. It now consists, on the *Baltick*, of thirty-six Ships of the Line, twelve Frigats, nine Yachts, or Snows, and 240 Gallies, sixty of which are built for the Cavalry, and ly always ready in their Ports.

Ports. The same Number of Gallies ly in the Magazines, in Numbred Pieces, ready, upon Occasion, to be put together, with their Rigging and Stores; And three Ships of the Line, and one Frigat are upon the Stocks; To this End, as much Oak, and other Timber, as is necessary for the Fleet, lies in the Salt Water, near *Stara Rusa*.

XX. THIS whole Fleet, which is divided into three Squadrons, is commanded by an Admiral-General in the *Center*, who bears a *White* Flag, with a *Burgundian* or *Crimson* Cross. The *Van* has an Admiral, who bears a *Blue* Flag, with a *White* Cross. The *Rear* has, likewise, an Admiral, who bears a *Red* Flag, with a *White* Cross. Each of these three Squadrons has a Vice-Admiral, a Rear-Admiral, and three Commadores.

XXI. THE Gallies are commanded by an Admiral, two Vice-Admirals, three Rear-Admirals, and three Commadores. Their Flags are of the same Colours as those of the Squadrons they belong to, but of a different Form.

XXII. WHEN the *Czar* commands his Fleet in Person, his Ship bears the Royal Standard of the *Empire*, which is Yellow, and in the middle of it are the Arms of the *Empire*, with the *Black* Eagle, and a Representation of the four Seas, viz. the *White* Sea, the *Caspian* Sea, the *Black* Sea, and the *Baltick*.

XXIII. RUSSIA had also a Fleet in the *Black* Sea; But since the *Turks* recover'd *Azow*, some of the Ships have been sold to them, and the Rest ly yet in *Stavror*, on the River *Donn*, in a dry, cover'd Dock.

XXIV. IN the *Caspian* Sea, *Russia* has no constant Fleet; But only, on Account of the War in *Perfia*, has had some Yachts or Snows, with some Gallies, and other small Vessels.

XXV. IN the *White* Sea, near *Archangel*, and towards the Kingdom of *Japan*, *Russia* has hitherto had no Men of War; But of late some Sea-Officers and Ship-Carpenters have been sent thither, as also to *Siberia*, in Order to look out for good Havens, and convenient Places to build Ships; And the Governour-General of *Siberia*, *Dolgorucki*, has Orders to assist them with Men, and all Necessaries.

XXVI. IN the common printed News-Papers, of the 20th of April, of this instant Year 1730, Mention is made, that the Per-

sons who were sent thither, in the Year 1727, were return'd to *Muscow*, and had given an Account of their Voyage and Success.

XXVII. IN my Map, the Reader will find the Names of ever one of the Places, where they built any Ships, as, 1. the River *Ocbota* and *Kamtshatki*; 2. the River *Lena*; From the Mouth of which, as they have reported, it will be very difficult to double the Point of *Kamtshatki*, or Promontory of *Tabin*, as it is call'd. And I know that the same Account has been, before this given upon sure Grounds. But from *Kamtshatki* and the Lake of *Lama*, it may be done, if a Want of Wood, and the *Chinese* *East* *Tartars*, on the River *Amour*, do not prevent it.

XXVIII. As to the *Russian* Defensive Sea Force, it consist only in keeping the Havens and Fortresses on the Sea-Coast in good Order and Repair; Which tho' it be, in some measure, comprehended under the Land-Defense, of which I have given some Account above; Yet, as the Havens are not under the Care and Inspection of the Council of War, as other Fortresses are, but under the immediate Direction of the Admiralty, I think it necessary to say something farther concerning them. In the *Baltick*, the most celebrated Harbour is that near *Cronstadt*, which is taken out of the Sea, and secur'd with Piles and Moles. About 300 Ships can ly with Safety there, at their Moorings. However, there are three great Inconveniencies, which attend it. 1. The Sea is too narrow at the Mouth of the Haven, and is surrounded with Rocks, and dangerous Sands; Insomuch that the Ships cannot go out without a very fair Wind. 2. The Ice remains too long there, the Sea being seldom clear of it, before the latter End of *May*. 3. There is too much fresh Water, which occasions the Ships to rot very soon.

XXIX. For these Reasons, Czar *Peter* I. caused a Harbour to be made near *Reval*, at a vast Expence; But it being too large and lying too much expos'd to Storms, Ships cannot ly there in Safety; And it has once happen'd, that three large Ships sunk in the very Haven; The Czar, therefore, order'd another to be begun near *Rogerwyck*, 7 *German* Miles from *Reval*, towards *Pernau*, on which 10000 Men have, for some Time, been constantly employ'd. If this ever comes to Perfection, it will be one of the best Havens in the *Baltick*. The Stone-Pier, which stretches into the

Sea

Sea, is about 4000 Geometrical Paces long, 40 or 50 Foot high, and the Top 50 Foot broad, fill'd up with broken Quarry-Stones. In the *White Sea*, and near *Archangel*, there are no other Sea-Ports of Note made. And on the West Side of the *Caspian Sea*, which partly belongs to *Russia*, it will be very difficult to make any, because of the Flatness of the Shoar.

XXX. ON the *Black Sea*, near *Taganreck*, *Russia* had the best Port in the World; Which, after the Peace concluded on the *Treaty*, the *Turks* entirely ruin'd, and blew up the Fortifications of it.

XXXI. WHETHER there are any Havens, or Conveniences for Ship-building, at the Mouth of the Lake of *Lama*, or on the East Side of the Country of *Kamtshatki* (otherwise call'd the Land of *Jedso*) towards the Streight of *Anian*, Time must inform us.

XXXII. CONCERNING the *Russian* Mariners, they are upon the same Footing with the Land-Forces. They are summon'd from all Parts of the *Empire*, and are always kept in Places near the Sea-Ports. When they are not at Sea, they are obliged to be upon Guard, two Days, every Week, three Days at Work, and one Day they are allowed to be at their Habitations.

XXXIII. As I am now speaking of the *Russian* Sea-Forces, I cannot forbear mentioning here, what Honour was done to that Boat, which gave *Czar Peter I.* the first Hint, and Inclination for Ship-Building, and, was, in some Measure, the Origine of the *Russian* Fleet. I have already made some Mention of this Boat above, at the End of the sixth Chapter.

XXXIV. IN the Year, 1721, after the Peace was concluded with *Sweden*, *Czar Peter I.* caused this Boat to be sheath'd with Copper, and gilt; And then to be brought from *Muscow* to *Petersburg*, where, on a certain Day appointed, it was, with great Solemnity, launched, near the *Czar's* Summer-Palace, and was saluted by all the great and small Vessels then lying at *Petersburg*.

XXXV. SOME Days after the *Czar* went in it to *Cronstadt*, where the whole Royal Fleet lay, in the Road; The Boat was steer'd by the Admiral-General, and row'd by two Admirals, and two Vice-Admirals; Being accompanied by 250 Yachts, and other

other small Vessels. As soon as it came in Sight, all the Guns in the Fleet, and on the Fortresses of *Cronstadt* and *Schlott* were fired; When it came into the Middle of the Fleet; they were fired, the second Time; And, a third Time, when it came to Anchor. Every one of these Salutes was answered from the Boat, with three Shot, out of small Silver-Guns, as they were, likewise, by all the Vessels, in the *Czar's* Retinue.

XXXVI. THE same Solemnity was observed on the *Czar's* Return to *Petersburg*, where the Boat was laid up, in the Arsenal, as a Monument to Posterity.



C H A P. XII.

Of the Chief Families in the RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

SUMMARY.

§. I. **W**Hat put the Author upon giving an Account of the Chief Families of Russia. II. to IV. Of the several Degrees of Nobility, and their Rank. V. VI. Of the Distinction between the several Classes of Knieces. VII. Of the Gentry. VIII. IX. Of several new Degrees of Nobility and Gentry introduced in Russia. X. to XIII. Of the Knieces, Nobility and Gentry, which are either descended from *Wladimir I.* or from those who were created by him. XIV. XV. Noble Families of Foreign Extraction. XVI. New created Princes, Counts and Barons. XVII. Of Titulary Knieces. XVIII. Of the ancient Noble Families of Russia. XIX. Of the Rise of several Noble Families, occasion'd by their *Czar's* marrying into them. XX. XXI. Of the Rise of others, by their Merit only. XXII. to XLI. An Extract of the Russian *Matri-cula Nobilitatis*.

I. **A**LTHO' several eminent Men of the *Russian* Nation are become known to us, in this Century, and the common News Papers have frequently taken Notice of some of the principal Families in *Russia*; Yet we find very little Intelligence of this Kind,

Kind, in Authors who give us an Account of *Russia*, except what we have in the *Atlas Historique*, in which, nevertheless, are many Mistakes; Several of the chiefest Families being omitted, and some of the meanest inserted as great Ones; For which Reason I shall give the Reader a brief, but more just Account of them.

II. NOTWITHSTANDING there are a great many *Kniefes* and *Dworians*, or Noblemen, in *Russia*, of a very numerous Parentage, even to many Hundred Families; Yet it must be observ'd, 1. That those differ very much in Point of the Antiquity of their Progenitors. 2. That formerly, and till this last Century, the Nobility did not take their Rank, according to the Antiquity of Families, or the Degree of Nobility, but according to the Number of Persons of Merit and Distinction in each Family; Even Senators and Generals have not observed their Rank, according to their Offices and Titles, but according as they could produce more or less Names of Persons, in their Families, who had serv'd high Offices.

III. F O R which Reason, it has often happen'd, that a Noble Family, of no great Antiquity, which has had many *Bojares*, Generals, and Ministers of State in it, has taken the Rank above an Ancient Princely Family.

IV. B U T because this used to occasion great Disputes and Inconveniences, Czar *Theodore II.* began to make an Alteration in it; But Czar *Peter I.* entirely abolish'd it, and order'd the Precedency to be observ'd, according to the Titles, Offices and Merits of each particular Person, without any Regard to Family.

V. A S to the Difference, by Birth, the *Kniefes*, (or Princes) as well as other Noblemen, may be divided into sundry Classes; Among the *Kniefes* are:

VI. 1. THOSE descended from, or created by the *Great Prince Wledimir I.* 2. Those who are descended from Foreign Kings or Princes, or came from Foreign Parts. And, 3. Those who have been since created by the several *Great Princes*, in their own Dominions.

VII. A N D just the same it is with the Nobility, or *Dworians*, to which they add, in *Russia*, the *Synbojarskoy*, or Sons of *Bojares*, who hold feudal Tenures, which commonly they inherit from Father to Son; And, therefore, in Time of War, are obliged to appear in the Field, with one or more Servants.

VIII. AT present, and in the Time of Czar *Peter I.* the *Russian* Monarchs began to create Counts and Barons, Dignities formerly not known, they having none between the Princes and Inferiour Nobility. Neither was there formerly any Order of Knighthood, in *Russia*.

IX. NONE of these Titles, according to the New Regulation, give a Person any Rank, unless he has, by his Merit and Ability, himself acquired a Post or Character. This has given an Opportunity to many Foreigners, of mean Extraction, but great Ability, to obtain high Offices, in *Russia*.

THE 1st CLASS.

X. CONCERNING the first Class of those Princes, who are descended from *Wolodimir* the First, and are in High Esteem, to this Day, I must own, that I have not placed them according to their former Rank, of which not only I am ignorant, but they themselves have never determin'd it. I have, therefore, plac'd them in Alphabetical Order, and have distinguish'd them into Great, Midling, and Meaner Families, *viz.*

XI. (I.) (1.) *DOLGORUCKI*, a numerous Family. (2.) *Odejewski*, whereof few are remaining. (3.) *Prozorowski*, likewise but few remaining. (4.) *Ramodanowski*, of which only one remains, who has no Male-Heir. After his Death, his Son-in-Law, the young Count *Galloukin*, is to take his Name. (5.) The Field-Marshal, *Repnin*, who has two Sons. (6.) *Trojekuraw*, the only one remaining, who has no Male-Heirs. After his Death, his Sister's Son, Count *Tolstoy*, is appointed to take the Name. These are the most antient of this Class.

XII. (II.) THE midling Families are, (1.) *Borcatinski*. (2.) *Cbilkow*; (3.) *Kozlowski*; (4.) *Lobanow*; (6.) *Masalski*, (7.) *Obolenski*: (8.) *Sczerbatow*; (9.) *Wadbolski*; (10.) *Saccollinski*.

XIII. (III.) THERE are about thirty of the meaner Families, or that have not great Estates; But as they are not all known to me, I shall only mention those whom I have known, *viz.* (1.) *Belofeskoï*; (2.) *Czertenskoy*; (3.) *Daschkow*; (4.) *Diabrinkoy*; (5.) *Ge-*

(5.) *Gagarin*) (6.) *Gundorow*; (7.) *Uchtowski*; (8.) *Viazem-ko*, &c.

THE II^d CLASS,

XIV. ARE those Foreign Families, in *Russia*, who, for a long Series of Time have been in equal Esteem with the former; as, (1.) *Gallizin*, which has been almost counted the most eminent Family in the whole *Empire*. (2.) *Trubetskoy*, of which there are five Males remaining. (3.) *Kurakin*, of which two only are Living. (4.) *Cbovanskoy*: These four Families have been in *Russia* upwards of Two Hundred Years, and descend from the *Coriatian* Royal Family of *Poland*, of whom are likewise descended the *Wisniowitzki*, *Czertorinski* and *Sanguchkaian* Families in *Poland*. (5.) *Militinski*, from *Mingrelia* and *Georgia*. (6.) *Sibirski*, descended from the *Siberian Chans*; These two latter have, incontestably, had the first Rank before all other Families, with Regard to Antiquity. (7.) *Czerkaski* from *Cabarda* (77).

XV. THE following descend from other foreign Princes of less Note, as, (1.) *Urusow*; (2.) *Scheidiakow*; (3.) *Mesczerski*; (4.) *Jusupow*. The two former had, for a long Time, the Rank above many great Families, but lost it about One Hundred Years ago.

THE III^d CLASS.

XVI. THE Chief of the Princes who have been created at different Times, are, (1.) *Menscbikow*, who was made Prince of the *Roman Empire*, in the Year 1706, and afterwards Prince of *Russia*, has one Son only. (2.) *Cantimir*, who formerly was *Hof-padar*, in the *Moldau*, and was made Prince of *Russia*, in the Year 1711, on Account of the good Services he did the Czar, on the River *Prutt*. He has four Sons. To these we may add the *Wolskowskian* Family, though of lesser Note now, who were

S f 2

made

(77) Prince *Sunfalei Jacolowitz Zercaski*, from the *Circassian Cabarda*, came to Czar *Peter Iwanowicz*, and assisted him in Conquering the County of *Circass*, and the City of *Serk*. It is the chief *Circassian* Family, and almost the richest in *Russia*, having near 2000 Peasants. There are more Families of that Name, but they are descended from *Circassian Murfis* or Generals.

made Princes, One Hundred and Sixty Years ago, on Account of the Merits of *Dolgorucki*, the great Progenitor of this Family, which Prince had one Natural Son, by a favourite Lady.

XVII. BESIDES these, there are in *Russia* about Two Hundred Families of Titular *Kniefes*, or Princes of no great Extraction; Among whom we may reckon, more especially, those of the *Cajan* and *Casimowian Tartars*, which the *Czar Alexei* created, and by this Means induced them to be baptized. However, they are but reckoned among the Inferiour Nobility, and even that not without Contest.

THE 1ST CLASS OF NOBILITY.

XVIII. THERE are some Noble Families, who have, long since, been reckoned in the same Class with the chief Princes, and have preserved their Esteem to this Day; Such are, (1.) *Scberemetow*, of which there are eight Persons living; Some of whom are Counts. (2.) *Romanow*, from which descends the present *Imperial* Family, and for that Reason ought to have the Rank above all others; But because they were Noblemen before they came to the Crown, of the same Rank with the *Scberemetowian* Family, I have placed them here together. The Male Line of the *Romanowian* Family is extinct, by the Death of the late Emperor *Peter Petrowitz*. (3.) *Buterling*. (4.) *Wolynskoi*; and, (5.) *Pleszczew*. Among these were also the Families of *Morozow*, *Schein* and *Gadunow*, which are all three lately extinct. To this Class belong also those Families, whose Ancestors were, some Hundreds of Years since, Generals and Senators, of which there are above fifty Families; but not knowing all their Names, I can only mention the following: (1.) *Golowin*; (2.) *Tolstoy*; (3.) *Muscbin Puschkin*, who are all three made Counts; (4.) *Matinscbkin*; (5.) *Saltikow*; (6.) *Puschkin*; (7.) *Kwasinin*; (8.) *Ismaelow*; (9.) *Tatiscbew*; (10.) *Naledinskoy*; (11.) *Jazykow*; (12.) *Bestuschow*; (13.) *Cbitrow*; 14.) *Rzchewskoi*.

THE II^d CLASS,

XIX. THERE are some ancient Noble *Russian* Families, into which the *Czars* having married, they thereby came into great Repute; Such are, 1. *Streschnew*; 2. *Miloslawski*; 3. *Narischkin*; 4. *Gruscbetski*, which last is extinct; 5. *Apraxin*, are now Counts; 6. *Lopuchin*.

THE III^d CLASS,

XX. CONSISTS of *Russian* Families, which came into great Repute, by their Merits, in the Reigns of *Peter I.* and his Father; Such are, 1. *Golowkin*, the Great Chancellor, and created a Count, has three Sons; 2. *Ivanow*, who has left two Sons, with very considerable Estates; 3. *Matbeow*, a Privy-Counsellor, and Count of the *Roman Empire*, he has one Male-Heir. These two latter are Sons of Priests. 4. *Tolstoy*, a Privy-Counsellor, and Count. 5. *Stroganow*, three Brothers, Gentlemen of the Bed-Chamber, of whom I have made some Mention above. Though this Family has been reputed in *Russia*, for Two Hundred Years, as a very Honourable and Wealthy Family; Yet they would never accept of any Degree of Nobility, but were contented with the Title of *Imenitoy* (*i. e.* noted.) 'Till, in the Year 1724, at the *Czarina Katherine's* Coronation, the three Brothers were made Barons.

THE IVth CLASS,

XXI. ARE the Foreign Families, who came to High Offices, during the Reign of *Czar Peter I.* There are, 1. *Bruce*, Grand Master of the Ordnance, and Count; He has no Children of his own, but Nephews in *Scotland*, who are his Heirs. 2. *Baur*, a German, General of the Cavalry, has left two Sons behind him. 3. Count *Canteguse* of *Greece*, was Lieutenant-General, and left three Sons. 4. *Kreutz*, Admiral, born in *Holland*. 5. *Gordon*, a Scotchman, was General of the Infantry, and has left two Sons. 6. *Jagufinski*: Lieutenant-General and Attorney-General, born

born in *Prussia*. 7. *La Fort* was General Field-Marshal, born in *Switzerland*, he made his Nephews his Heirs. 8. *Ostermann*, Privy-Counsellor, and Baron, (*since Count*) born in *Westphalia*. 9. *Renn*, General of the Cavalry, born in *Courland*, has left two Sons. 10. *Schafrow*, Baron and Privy-Counsellor of State, of *Jewish* Extraction. 11. *Devier*, Lieutenant-General, and Governour-General of the Policy, born in *Portugal*. Besides these, there are several other foreign Families in *Russia*; But as they are in no considerable Posts, I omit them.

XXII. I HAVE, besides, had Information in *Russia*, concerning the Pedigree of the Major Part of the *Russian* Families, from the *Russian matricula Nobilitatis*; But as by that I am not enabled to say which of them are extinct, or still in Being, I shall only give the Reader a bare Extract from thence.

XXIII. THE Families, for Instance, that descend from the Princes of *Susdabl* and *Nuschnanowogorod* are; 1. *Schuiskin*; 2. *Skopin*; 3. *Gorbatow*; 4. *Borbojchin*; and, 5. *Nogtiew*.

XXIV. THE Families which descend from the Princes of *Rostow*, are; 1. *Golenin*; 2. *Uchatin*; 3. *Schepin*; 4. *Priimkow*; 5. *Bachtejarow*; 6. *Puschbalskin*; 7. *Briuchatin*; 8. *Cbocbolcow*; 9. *Katirew*; 10. *Buinosow*, 11. *Temkin*; 12. *Lobanow*; 13. *Lastkinin* and *Kosatkin*.

XXV. THE Families who reckon themselves descended from the Princes of *Brel-Ozerki*, are; 1. *Kargopolski*; 2. *Kemski*; 3. *Uchtowski*; 4. *Schechowski*; 5. *Wjeviatski*; 6. *Schelepanski*; 7. *Ugolski*; 8. *Diabrinski*, and *Baibalski*.

XXVI. FAMILIES descending from the Princes of *Twer*, are; 1. *Holmski*; 2. *Mikulinski*; 3. *Dorogobuschki*; 4. *Czernatepski*; 5. *Teletewski*; 6. *Uchatski*; 7. *Poraschinski* and *Kaschinski*.

XXVII. FAMILIES descending from the *Staradubian* Princes, are; 1. *Rapolowski*; 2. *Pescharski*; 3. *Paletschki*; 4. *Kriwoborski*; 5. *Romadanowski*; 6. *Golibiesowski*; 7. *Gagarinski*; 8. *Striginski*; 9. *Kowrowski*; 10. *Gundarowski*; 11. *Chilcowski*; 12. *Tatewski*; 13. *Tulopowski*; 14. *Lalouski* and *Neugodkinski*.

XXVIII. FAMILIES descending from the Princes of *Smolenskow*; are, 1. *Wasemski*. 2. *Pbominiski*. 3. *Mortkimski*. 4. *Krepotkinski*.

XXIX. FA-

XXIX. FAMILIES descending from the Princes of *Jarislav*;
 1. *Sudski*. 2. *Moloski*. 3. *Sutjschki*. 4. *Proforowski*. 5. *Ucha-*
ynski. 6. *Penkowski*. 7. *Kurbski*. 8. *Schestunowski*. 9. *Sase-*
kinski. 10. *Schachowski*. 11. *Schetininski*. 12. *Ochliabininski*.
 13. *Drewski*. 14. *Cbworotinski*. 15. *Mortkinski*. 16. *Lewski*.
 17. *Solnitschowski*.

XXX. FAMILIES descending from the Princes of *Obolenski*;
 1. *Nogotkowski*. 2. *Curliatewski*. 3. *Striginski*. 4. *Tetepnewski*.
 5. *Nemiewski*. 6. *Tureninski*. 7. *Repininski*. 8. *Penkinski*. 9.
Goronski. 10. *Solatski*. 11. *Serebrenski*. 12. *Schewirewski*. 13.
Likowski. 14. *Schepinski*. 15. *Kaschinski*. 16. *Dolgorukski*. 17.
Scherbatowski. 18. *Trostenski*. 19. *Tiupbakinski*. 20. *Koliscbin-*
ski. 21. *Nasdrawatiuski*. 22. *Bielewski*. 23. *Borajschewski*, and
Kumenski.

XXXI. FAMILIES descending from the Princes of *Glinski*;
 viz. A Tartarian Prince, call'd *Alexa*, came to the Grand Prince
 of *Lituania*, *Witow Kestutiewitz*; This Prince was baptiz'd, and
 named *Alexander*; He had three Estates, call'd *Glinsk*, *Linitza*,
 and *Podotwa*. His Son, *Iwan*, had three Sons, viz. *Boris*, *Fædor*,
 and *Senen*, from which descend the *Glinskian* Families.

XXXII. THE *Mescherskian Knieses* descend from the Tartarian
Belschoi Orda; The Head of their Family was *Macbmet*, who set-
 tled on the River *Meschersk*, his Son *Becklemisch* was baptized,
 and nam'd *Michael*, and he had a Son nam'd *Fædor Meschirskoi*.

XXXIII. THE *Babitzewskian* and *Putatitzewskian* Families
 are descended from *Knies Simon Dmitrowitz*, who had four Sons.

XXXIV. THE *Galitzian* (not *Galitzincian*) Family descends
 from the Grand Prince *Jarislav Wjewoloditz*, who had nine Sons,
 the fourth of whom was called *Constantine Galitzkoi*.

XXXV. THE *Pbominskian*, *Kriukowskian*, *Sabakinskian*, *Tra-*
zinskian, *Piriewskian*, and *Koslowskian* Families, descend from
 the eldest Son of the Grand Prince *Wolodimir, Monomachus, Mu-*
hislav, of *Smolenskow*.

XXXVI. THE *Worontzowian* and *Weniaminowsian* Families
 descend from a Foreigner, who was in the Service of the Grand
 Prince *Jarislav Wladimirowitz*.

XXXVII. THE

XXXVII. THE *Kwaschinian*, *Samarinini*, *Dudinian*, *Kasladinian*, and *Pojarkowian* Families, descend from *Rodion Nestorowicz*, of *Kiow*, who had a Son called *Iwan Kwaschna*.

XXXVIII. THE *Saburovian*, *Godunowian*, *Pilemowian*, and *Weljaminowian* Families, descend from a *Tartarian Prince*, from *Orda*, who was baptized in the Time of *Iwan Danielowicz*.

XXXIX. THE *Pleschewkian* Family descends from a *Bojar* of *Czernikow*, who had five Sons, from the second of which, called *Thepban*, descends the *Ignatewi-Schereb-Schow-Phomin* and *Pleschewian* Families.

XL. THE *Chowrin* and *Gollowinskian* Families descend from *Prince Stepan Wasiliewicz*, who signalized himself in the Service of the Grand Prince *Wasilie Dmitrowicz*.

XLI. THE *Morosowian* and *Saltikowian* Families descend from Foreigners out of *Prussia*, the chief Progenitors of whom were *Michael Praschenin*, and his Son *Terentei Morom*, who were in the Service of the Grand Prince, *Alexander Jarislawicz Newskoy*, and *Terentei* signalizing himself very much, the Grand Prince made him a *Bojar*.



C H A P. XIII.

Of the most noted Mercantile and Fair-Towns, as also of the Mines, Minerals, Vegetables, Fossils, Curiosities, Antiquities, Manufactures, Fabricks, &c. in the RUSSIAN EMPIRE, digested into Alphabetical Order.

TO treat fully and circumstantially of these Things, I ought to have divided them into so many separate Chapters; But as I have already declared, that it was never my Intention to treat, *ex-professo*, of the *Empire of Russia*, but only to touch on such Things,

Things, which I have either not met with at all, in other Authors; Or, at least, found imperfectly related; Which will be a good Help to any, who may, hereafter, be desirous of continuing the Description of that Country; I shall content my self, therefore, with giving an Alphabetical Account of the several Things, which the Title of this Chapter mentions, and so, by Way of Conclusion, present the Reader with a short Miscellaneous History, chiefly of that Part of the *Russian Empire* called *Siberia*; viz.

ACACIA. There are two Sorts of this, viz. the true and *Pseudo*-or *Bastard-Acacia*. This latter is found, in great Plenty, in *Siberia*, near the City of *Tomskoi*; The Blossom is yellow, and its Pods contain a Kind of small black Pea, or Vetch, which tastes bitter; And, therefore, they must be boiled in two or three Waters, before they are eatable; For which Reason, they seldom are used for Food. The *Russian* Girls string them like Necklaces, and ty them about their Necks and Hands.

ACCOUNTS. All Accounts in *Russia* are kept, in *Rubels*, *Griens* and *Kopeicks*.

AGATE. A precious Stone, which is partly transparent, and partly opaque; And of divers Colours, as red, white, black and coral Colour. In *Siberia*, in the Province of *Dauria*, along the Rivers *Amur* and *Argun*, is found a transparent Sort. In the River *Tomm*, near the City of *Tomskoi*, and higher up, are found small Stones of a deeper Red, and transparent; Which, when they are polished, can hardly be distinguished from red Opaque *Agate*; But whether they are really so, or not, I leave others to judge.

ACONITUM, or *Doronicum*, (*Wolfsbane*) is found in *Siberia*, near the City of *Crasnoyabr*; The *Russians* mix it with some hashed Meat, make Balls of it, and lay them in the Woods, for the Wolves; Which, when they eat them, makes them vomit till they dy, and if other Wolves eat of what has been vomited up, they dy likewise.

ADAMAWOI-KOST, of which *Hubner* takes Notice; (in his *Zetungs Lexicon*, or *Gazetteer*;) But very few of the Inhabitants of *Russia* know either the Name, or the Thing itself. In the German Tongue, it is called *Adam's Knochen* (*Adam's Bones*.)

However, some say, that this Mineral is dug out of the Earth, near *Archangel*, and is as hard as a Stone, black as a Coal, and has a Grain like Fir. And though I have not been in that Part of *Russia*; I have found Plenty of it, on the Shoar of the River *Oby*, according to the above Description; Of the Bigness of a Man's Head, some Pieces larger, some smaller. The *Ostiacks*, on the River *Oby*, and the *Russians*, who live thereabouts, make Spindles of it, with which they spin Yarn of Nettles, and other Things. They work it like Wood, though it is harder and more compact. I had written down the Name by which the *Ostiacks* call it; But my Manual being lost, as I have said above, I have forgot it: Now whether this be the same *Adama-woy-Kost*, of which other Authors make mention, I leave undetermined: However, I do not know that there is any other black petrified Wood, excepting this, to be found in *Russia*. The *Ostiacks* say, that this black Stony-Wood, falls from the high Shoars of the Rivers *Oby*, and *Taffada*. It is likewise to be met with between the Cities of *Tobolski* and *Tumen*.

ALABASTER; Near the City of *Todma*, at a Place called *Peremegora*, are Alabaster-Mountains, in which are Wonderful Subterraneous Passages, and *Grottos*, formed by Nature, which the *Russians* call *Pitschorets*. This Substance is, however, somewhat softer than other Alabaster. Another such wonderful *Grotto*, consisting of such soft Alabaster-Stones, is in *Ugoria*, near the City of *Kongar*, of which more hereafter.

ALBATZIN or ALBATSCHIN. A demolished City on the River *Amour*, situated in the *East-Tartarian* Country of *Niu-chæa*, which was formerly a *Russian* Barrier Town, against the *East-Tartars*; But in the Year 1689, by a Treaty of Peace, it was surrendered to the *Chinese*, and razed: From the City of *Nertschinskoi* thither, is fourteen Days Journey, down the River. Between these two Places are caught the very best Sables: The Soil, near the City of *Albatzin*, is flat, and so fertile, that the Corn grows of itself, without being sowed; For when the *Russians* surrendered this Place, which happen'd in Summer-time, they were obliged to leave the Corn, which was not yet ripe, standing; And as there were no Inhabitants left in it, and the whole Coun-

Country became a Wilderness; the Corn sows itself, and grows up yearly of itself.

ALMONDS, *Bitter Almonds*, grow near the River *Don*, as also in the *Best-Arabian Desarts*, between the Rivers *Dnieper* and *Back*. They grow only on small Shrubs, hardly eighteen or Twenty Inches high.

ALNUS NIGRA, in the *Russian* Tongue, called *Scherumka*, in the *Tartarian* *Gumuruth*, and *Moyl*, (in *English* *Black Alder*,) grows plentifully in *Siberia*; But no *Elder* is found there. The *Russians* dry the *Elder-Berries*, beat them to Powder, and bake them, in white Bread, in the Nature of Tarts.

ALTYN. A Silver Coin in *Russia*, equal to three *Kopeiks*. 33; *Altyns* make a *Rubel*; It is a *Tartarian* Name, and signifies 66, because six *Dengas* makes an *Altyn*.

ALUM. Between *Tula* and *Kaluga*, near a Place called *Kojiki* in *Russia*, is an *Alum Mine*; And, in *Siberia*, is a Lake, the Water of which is clear and fresh; This leaves, in the Heat of the Summer-Season, a certain *Alummy* Salt, on the Shoars; But, it seems, it contains more Salt than Acidity, and they are difficult to separate. The *Kamina Masla*, (or *Stone-Butter*) of which Mention is made in *Das Veränderte Russland*, (p. 181.) is a liquid Matter, which ouzes out of a black Slate-Rock, near the City of *Tomskoi*, of which, in some Places they make *Alum*; This *Kamina Masla* has very much the Quality of *Vitriol*, is Sour, and of an Astringent Taste.

AMBAR. Thus the *Russians* call a Pantry, or the Room where they keep their Victuals, and all Sorts of Utensils; *Amber*, with the *Cosacks* and *Czerkassians* on the *Black-Sea*, signifies a Cave, in which they keep their Corn, or Magazines; and *Amber*, in the *Arabick* Tongue, signifies to collect, or gather together.

AMBER. Some Pieces of it have been found, between the Rivers *Chatanga* and *Jenisei*, towards the *Mare Glaciale*, and likewise in the Sandy Desert between *Mungalia* and *China*.

AMETHIST. This Kind of precious Stone is found in the Mountains, near *Catharinenburg*, and sometimes in the River *Isset*.

AMIANtus, or *Asbetus*. In *Siberia*, near the River *Issett*, and *Catherinenburg*, is a Mountain, which was first discovered about the Year 1720; Where this Mineral is found in Plenty, and as they say, Cloth, Gloves, Stockings, &c. may be made of it, and are incombustible. The Stone is whitish Gray, but when it is wrought, it is perfectly soft and white, like Cotton. In the News from *Russia*, in the Year 1729, some Mention was made of incombustible Linnen, which the Reader may compare with this.

AMMONIACUM or *Salmiac* and *Salarmoniac*; The *Russians* call it *Naschatir*, and the *Arabians*, *Alnushader*; taking the Article *al* from this latter Word, it has the same Pronunciation with the former; The like Affinity, I have observed, of more Words in the *Russian* Tongue, as; *Rhubarb*, they call *Rævan*; the *Arabians*, *Ruvam*; Also *Basar* and *Bazar*; a Market; so likewise *Bagadir* and *Babato*. In *Siberia*, near the River *Jenesei*, towards the *Mare Glaciale*, a burning Mountain, or *Vesuvius*, throws out a certain sort of Ashes, which are taken for *Flores salis Ammoniaci*, or *Flores sulphuris nativi*. The same is said to be found near the Mountains *Vesuvius* and *Ætna*; vid. *Instit. Pharmaceuticæ*, Job. Rosenstengel, (p. 195.) And is perhaps the same, of which *Abulfeda*, *Ismael*, *Princeps Hamab*, in the Description of his Tables, *London CIOIXL*, gives the following Account: In *Montibus Albotom* (near *Samarcand*) *spelunca est, cujus spiraculis occlusis vapor in ea densus exoritur, noctu ignem interdum fumum referens, in hoc est Alnushader. (Salarmoniac) Nemo poterit cavernam ingredi, nisi vestimentis crassis, corporique astrictis cooperiatur, & confestim inde Alnushader auferat. Vapor de Loco in locum movetur, quem quoad apparuerit, fodiendo consequuntur, si nullus fuerit fornix, qui dilationi vaporis impedimento fit, accedentem non lædit.*

ANTIQUITIES; It is most certain, that no Country in the World can shew more scarce, as well as curious, and useful Antiquities, serving to clear up the Obscurities of the History of the Ancient *Scyths*, than the *Russian Empire*: And it is great Pity, that there was not a Beginning made twenty or thirty Years ago, to furnish the *Czar's* Cabinet of Rarities with a Collection of these *Scythian* Antiquities. The Author of *Das Veränderte*

Russ-

Russland just hints something concerning them; But the *Idols*, *Minotaurs*, and Ancient Manuscripts, mention'd by him, were not found near *Samarcand*, nor near the *Caspian Sea*, as that Author would have it, (p. 124, and p. 225.) But were brought from the Desarts of the *Kalmucks*, on each Side of the River *Irtisch*, upwards, out of the *Pagan* Temples and Tombs; And as to the Manuscripts, mentioned by that Author, they consist of *Tangutian*, *Mungalian* and *Kalmuckian* Characters, not upon Parchment, but upon a thick Paper, made of Cotton or Silk, done over with black and blew Vernish (78); Upon which the Characters or Letters are not wrote, but printed, as we print Linnen or Callico (79); And the Letters are partly of a Yellow or Gold- and partly of a White or Silver-Colour. But as they are already known in *Europe*, having been engraven on Copper, and published by the learned Mr. *Mencke*, in the *Acta Eruditorum Lips.* (though I could have added, at least, ten or twelve Pieces, which to avoid Expences, I made a Present of to some Friends) I chuse only to add here another Sort of Ancient Writing, which is not impressed, like the former, on broad and long blew *Cbin*-*ese* Silk Matts, or Paper, but on curious fine white Linnen-Paper, just as it is represented in the Copper Plate, *Numb. I.* both as to Length and Breadth, the Original of which I have yet by me. *A.* is the Face, or Right Side, and *B.* the Reverse. These Writings were found by a *Russian*, born at *Crasnoyabr*, towards the Extremity of the River *Jenisei*, where a little River, called *Kemtscbyk*, falls into it, in which Place, formerly, an ancient Chapel stood. I have shewn this Writing to several *Russians*, *Tartars* and *Kalmucks*; but they did not understand it; When I come to the Titles, *Medals*, *Rune-Stones*, Letters and Characters, I shall give a farther Account of the like Writings; And as to the *Idols*, *Minotaurs*, &c. of which *Das Veränderte Russ-*

(78) These Papers are roll'd up, according to the Custom of the Ancients, and not bound like our Books; The *Swedes*, at their Return from their Captivity, may have brought about two Hundred of these Leaves into *Europe*. But since they cannot be interpreted here, it will be sufficient to shew the Publick the Nature of those Characters, in Order to see the Difference between the Manner of Writing of this and other Oriental Nations.

(79) In the Year 1723, at *Tobolsky*, I saw one of these wooden Forms, for printing such *Kalmuck* Letters, in the Governour's House. This Governour, *Knies Czirkaski*, has a Collection of Curiosities, of which he is a great Admirer.

Russland speaks, they have been brought not only from the Places and Tombs, above-mentioned; But they, or the like, have also been taken from the *Ostiacks*, on the Rivers *Irtisch* and *Oby*, when they were baptized; Among which there are some of above a Foot high, of Metal, very artificially cast: The *Ostiacks* say, they inherited them from the Ancient *Asiatick Scythians* or *Tzudi*, who inhabited those Countries, before they came thither; Which may be true enough, because these People, who formerly were one and the same Nation with the *Permekes*, *Laplanders* and *Finnlanders*, are too stupid and simple to have made any such Work. This appears by their other Idols, which are only rough-hewn Pieces of Wood or Stone, hung over with Rags; and by the Copper Cut, *Tab. IX.* which represents a Plate of Metal, that was found among them, and which they worshipped, for no other Reason, but because of the Figures of several Animals, as Harts, Dogs, &c. which are represented upon it (80); These they also used to paint upon their *Lapponian* Drums, and, in their Hunting and Fishing, made Use of them, in their superstitious Idolatry; The like Figures of Animals are also to be found on Rocks and Stones. (See *Characters.*) The Learned Professor of the Oriental Languages, Mr. *Kobr*, of *Leipzig*, has made the following Explication and Remarks upon the above-mentioned Metal, Plate or Medal, to be seen (*Tab. X.*) in *Arabick*, and *Roman* Characters, and the *Arabick* Sentence is there set down in *English*.

(80) In *Tab. VI.* the Reader will see the Representation of some such Drums and Idols, which were found among the *Barabiatzian Tartars*, who have the same superstitious Customs as the *Ostiacks*.

TABLE X.

The ancient <i>Arabick</i> or <i>Kufian</i> Character.	The modern <i>Arabick</i> Character, <i>Nis'-chi</i> .
---	---

لَطَالِبُهُ

لَطَالِبُهُ

There will be given by God
(to the Man who seeks him)
the following good Gifts, viz.

Letbâlébe-pi. }

بَارَكَاتُهُ

بَارَكَاتُهُ

Blessing, Encrease, Abundance,
Prosperity,

Barákaton.

وَأَمْثَلُهُ

وَأَمْثَلُهُ

And Plenty, (of Fruits) great
Riches,

*Wa- { tbsámeron.
 + bjomeron.*

And

وَسُرُورٌ

And Joy,

وَسُرُورٌ

Wa-sorûron.

وَسَعَادَةٌ

And Grace, Assistance, Favour :

وَسَعَادَةٌ

Wa-säädäton.

وَكِرَامَةٌ

And he shall receive Honour,
Dignity, Generosity from
others,

وَكِرَامَةٌ

Wa-kärämäton.

وَتَنْزِيلٌ

And Glory, Praise,

وَتَنْزِيلٌ

Wa-tandyjoron.

وَعِزَّةٌ

And Stability, Welfare,

وَعِزَّةٌ

Wa-ëstekämäton.

And

وَالْأَبَدِ

And Eternalization;

وَالْأَبَدِ

Wa-táábídon.

وَالْمَكْلُ

And store of Corn, and other
Provisions, for the Time to
come:

وَالْمَكْلُ

Wa-támkíron.

وَالسُّلْطَانِ

And Power, Authority, Strength,
to execute a Design,

وَالسُّلْطَانِ

Wa-fultbánon.

وَالسُّلْطَانِ

And Applause,

وَالسُّلْطَانِ

Wa-thsfánaon.

وَالسُّلْطَانِ

And long Life.

وَالسُّلْطَانِ

Wa-bákáon.

THIS Sentence, as explained in *Tab. X.* was found embossed on a large Medal, after the most Ancient *Arabick* Manner of Writing, in a Character called the *Kufian*. See *Tab. IX.* The *Tartars* hang four such upon their Generals, two upon their Shoulders, one upon their Breast, and one upon their Back, and call them *Tscábrinā* (or the four Mirrours) from the *Persian* Word *Tjchebár*, (*i. e.* four) and from the *Turkish* Word *Ajna*, or *Ajine*, a *Mirroure*. The *Russians* took this Medal, or Metal Plate, from the *Ostiahs*, near *Samarow*, who had hung it up, as a great Rarity, and worshipped it. It was perhaps taken as a Booty by the *Tartars*, from the ancient *Saracens*, or *Arabians*, who, in the Time of *Charlemaign*, were Masters of *Trans-Oxana* or *Sogdiana*, beyond the *Caspian Sea*, they being then at War with the *Saracens*. The Custom to worship such great Plates or Medals, may have been propagated among the *Tartars*, by the Ancient *Persians*, who, in the Time of the Kings *Cbofroes*, did also Worship a certain Medal, called *Cbusfrewaní dírem*, or the *Cbofrewanian Coin* (Compare *Meninsky in Thesaur. Ling. Orient*, p. 1897, under the Word *Cbusfrewaní*, *genus nummi vetusti, nempe a Cbofrecusi*.) And as the Ancient *Persian* Kings have had the most remote *Northern* Countries under their Dominion; So it is very likely that the *Scythian* or *Tartarian* Nations, in *Asia*, have taken their Religion from the *Persians*, or, at least, kept some of their Rites. In the Year 1725, *Mons. Jacob von Melle* published some Sheets, in which he treats of those small golden Idols, call'd *Brástei*, which were found on the Island of *Börnholm*; Upon which *Christianus Democritus* has made some Remarks. Many Thousands of these *Brástei*, and other cast Idols of Metal, Copper, Brass, Tin, Silver, and Gold, have been brought from the *Siberian* and *Tartarian* Tombs, many Hundreds of which I might have described, if my Time had not been so much taken up with my Geographical Work, during my Stay in *Russia*; Some of these are to be seen in *Tab. III.* *A.* was of Copper, *B.* with a little Bell, the same. *C.* of Brass, *D.* Studs of Horses Bridles; Also *Tab. V. lit. B.* of Copper. I have likewise seen some of the finest Gold, three Inches long, in Form of *Minotours*, *Harts*, *Old Men*, and such like strange Figures.

APPLE. In the *Russian* Language it is called *Jabliki*, in the *Tartarian* and *Kalmuck* Language *Alma*, which Words have some Affinity with each other. There is, in *Russia*, a Sort of Apples called *Naliv*, which Word signifies poured full, because when these Apples are ripe, all the Pulp turns to Juice; they have a sweetish-tart, and very pleasant Taste, and an agreeable Smell; They are so transparent, that if they are held against the Sun, one may see through them, and count almost all the Seeds in them; And when they fall from the Tree, the Skin bursts, and the Juice runs out. It has often been tried to raise this Fruit in other Places; But they grow no where so transparent as in *Muscovy*.

ARBUS. Is a Fruit in Shape almost like a Melon, which grows in *Russia*, in the warmest Countries; Such as *Astracan*, *Azer*, and *Kiow*. The Fruit is of a dark Green Colour, quite round, and on the Top flat; On the Stalk, there are round Wales, like Hoops, and this Fruit is as big as the largest Gourd; Within, it is full of Pulp, and has no Hollow, like Melons and Gourds: The Pulp is either white or red, watery, and melts in the Mouth without Chewing; The Taste is a very agreeable Sweet; It is cooling, very good to quench the Thirst, and wholesome; So that one may eat of them fasting as much as one pleases, without any Danger, as there is in eating of Melons; The Leaves of this Fruit are very large, deeply indented, and dark Green; The Seed does not ly in the Middle, as in Melons and Gourds, but is here and there buried in the Pulp, 'till within three Fingers Breadth from the Rind; It is dark Gray, and flat, not so big as Gourd-Seeds: The *Turks* and *Tartars* call them *Karbus*, which has an Affinity with the *German* Word *Kurbis*, (a Gourd.) But in *Russia*, they are called *Arbus*; The Description of the *Citrulli* is very like this, and the Seeds of them, and of the Water-Melons are very like the Seeds of this Fruit.

ARCHANGEL. In the *Russian* Language, *Gorod Archangels* *Ksi*, is Five Hundred *Wersts* from the City of *Wologda*, in the Province of *Cholmogorod*, on the River *Dwina*, and thirty *Wersts* from the *White Sea*. *Czar Peter I.* prohibited Trading to that Place from any but the neighbouring Provinces. A full Description of this Place, and of the Commodities which formerly were brought

brought thither from *Russia*, may be seen in *Das Veränderte Rußland*, (p. 407.) He that will travel in Winter-Time, from *Archangel* to *Petersburg*, must provide himself well against Cold and Hunger; Because between *Archangel* and the Lake *Onega*, is almost wholly a Wilderness, without House or Village to be seen, and Travellers are obliged to ly two or three Nights in the open Air.

ARGALI, Are a sort of wild Goats, in *Siberia*, near the City of *Crasnoyabr*, which have their Horns not upon the Top, but on the Sides of their Heads, and they grow so large and heavy, that these Animals cannot feed on flat even Ground, like other Sheep and Goats, but with their Heads erect, at the bottom of the Mountains; This is the same Animal which the *Tartars* call *Argara*; (vid. *l'Hist. Genealog. des Tartars, à Leyden*, 1726, p. 72.) and not the *Hyena*, as some think.

ARIKI or *Arki*. Thus the *Tartars* and *Kalmucks* call the Brandy which they distil from Mare's, or Cow's Milk; They put the Milk in raw Ox-Hides, sewn into Bags, and there let it grow sour and thick; They afterwards shake it so long, 'till a thick Cream settles upon it; This they take off, and dry it in the Sun, and treat their Guests with it; And the sour Milk they either drink, or distil the said Brandy from it; The sour Milk which they drink, they call *Kumisse*.

ARSCHYN, Is a *Russian* Measure, twenty-eight Inches long, and is divided into sixteen *Werschock*, or Parts, so that each Quarter of this Measure contains four *Werschocks*; three *Arschyn* make a *Sazoben* or *Russian* Fathom.

ASPHALT. A bituminous Matter, on the River *Irtisch*, between the Salt Lake *Jamisbewa*, and the Seven *Palati*, or Houses; It burns when held to a Candle, and does not ly flat, but stands on Edge, like so many Leaves of Slate, and is of a brownish Colour.

ASTRACAN. This City, as well as its Inhabitants, and their Trade, is described at large, in *Das Veränderte Rußland*, (p. 431.) And as to the Trade from thence to the *Southern Asiatick* Countries, it is certain, that from this Place, one may correspond all over *India*. In the Year 1716, there was a *German* Minister in *Astracan*, who had wrote to the Missionaries in *Tranquebar*,

quebar, by the Ships which went thither from *Europe*, and he received an Answer to his Letter in *Astracan*, by a *Malabarian* Merchant, who came thither by Land, through *Persia*. The Merchant was born in *Coromandel*, who after giving the said Minister a handsome Entertainment, took Letters back with him again; This Place being, on Account of Trade, visited by so many several Nations, near thirty Languages are spoken there. The *Armenians*, who trade, in the *Eastern* Countries, as the *Jews* do in *Europe*, travel backwards and forwards almost every where; Particularly to the Cities of *Samarcand*, *Buchara*, *Balk*, *Caska*, and to the Capital City of *Jerkeen*, in *Little Buchar* (81); But not into *Great Tartary*. When they travel to these Places with *Caravans*, they have eight Days Journey through Sandy Desarts; And the Winds from the *Caspian Sea* covering the Roads continually with Sand, they direct their Course by Means of certain Stars. Upon this Journey they use Camels, which, in Case of Necessity will live eight Days, without Victuals, if they have only a handful of Salt to lick, once in four and twenty Hours. These Camels carry Leather Vessels with fresh Water, and a Sort of Square Leather Baskets, one on each Side, in which are Bedding for the Passengers to sit and rest upon. Thus two Persons may sit commodiously on one Camel (82). In the Year 1642, the Plague raged in the City of *Astracan*, with such Violence, that about Forty Thousand People died of it. There are twenty-two Vineyards belonging to the Crown, and six to the Convent. The latter

(81) If the *Armenians* were as good *Christians* as they are Traders, they might do a great deal of Good among the *Heathens*; Since a Trade is now carried on again, from the City of *Jerkeen*, as far as *China*. Vid. *Hornii Neuboff*, pars ult. p. 78.

(82) As for the Name of *Astracan*, some say it is deriv'd from the Word *Stracban*, which, in the *Russian* Language (according to the *German* Translation) signifies an Artificial Canal cut in two Rivers, or the Section of a Building. Others say, that as this has been a *Tartarian* City, from Time Immemorial, and the *Tartars*, in their Language, call it *Hadjebitarcan*, and add, that *Tarcan* signifies a Person who is exempt from all Taxes or Tributes, and *Hadjebi* a Chief or Commander; Therefore some such Independent Chief, having taken Possession of these Parts, built a City there, and gave it that Name. This seems the more probable, because, in the Ancient *Scythian* Language, the Word *Ajs* signifies a Chief, or rather more than *Hadjebi*, viz. a Commander in Chief of an Army, also a Demi-lieut. I therefore, firmly believe, that this Name, in its Original, was *Ajs Tarcan*, and so had the same Signification with the *Tartarian* *Hadjebitarcan*; Especially as the *Tartars*, in *Siberia*, yet call a certain Nation, dwelling between the *Caspian* and the *Black Sea*, by the Name of *Ajs*, of which I shall have Occasion, in speaking of the *Tartars*, to make some farther Mention.

ter sell their Wine for three *Griffwen*, when that belonging to the Crown is sold for four *Griffwen*, the half *Awm*, or twenty Gallons; the *Czerkassian* Tobacco, call'd, in that Country, *Zebichir*, is sold here for four *Griffwen* a Pound, for the Benefit of the Crown.

B.

BADIAN or ANISUM STELLATUM. This the *Russian Caravan* brings, in Abundance, from *Cbina* to *Siberia* and *Muscow*.

BARABINTZI. A *Heathen* Nation, between the Cities of *Tara* and *Tomskoi*; They make Use of such Drums as the *Laplanders* do, which are described *Tab. VI.* Letters *C.* and *D.* with a wooden Ladle, which serves for a Drum-Stick; *E.* is the Drum-Skin, and *F.* the Handle which turns round, and which the *Schaman* holds in his Left Hand, and the Drum-Stick in his Right. *G.* represents Pieces of Iron upon a Cross-Stick, to make a Rattling Noise. An Account of their Manners and Customs is given in *Das Veränderte Russland*; (*p.* 76.) Formerly they were one and the same Nation with the *Ostiacks*, on the River *Oby*, which both they and the *Barabintzi* told me, when I travell'd through their Country; The District where they live, the *Russians*, according to their bad Pronunciation of the *Tartarian* Words, call *Barabu*; But the *Tartars* and *Ostiacks* call it *Barama*. In my Opinion, this must be the Country which, in the History of *Achmed Arabshades*, (*p.* 106.) is called *Adshara*, and in *Herbelot's Biblioth. Orient.* (*p.* 383.) *Aschbara*, *Ville des Getes*; On the Borders of which, viz. on the River *Sibon* or *Jaxertes*, *Timur Beck*, or *Tamerlan*, built the Fortress of *Scharuchia*, to curb that People. I have asked the *Barabintzi*, how it came, that as they were formerly one Nation with the *Ostiacks*, they had now different Names? They answered: They had the same Name when they and the *Ostiacks* lived together. Now, as these and the former, as I have mentioned above, are of one Extraction with the *Permeki*, or *Biarmi*, it may not be improper to consider what *Schæfferus*, in his *Lapponia*, alledges, from *Buræus*, of the *Biarmi*, viz. That they had their Name from the

the *Finnlandian* Word *Warama*, which denotes a Hilly Country; Likewise that they and the *Finnlandians* were formerly one Nation. Compare with this my *Polyglott Table*, and you will see how far the *Finnlandians* and the *Ostiacks* agree in their Dialects.

BATH, BATHS, HOT-BATHS. In the Country of *Kamtshatki*, which belongs to the *Siberian* Government, there are two Hot-Baths, near the Burning Mountain; (See my Map;) And there is another, near the *Kalmuck Chontaijeb*, not far from his Summer Camp, which Bath is called *Ijseeb-kull*, or *Kalan-ajan*, for *Ijse*, in the *Tartarian* Language, and *Kalen*, in the *Kalmuck*, signify *warm* or *hot* (83).

BAZAR. An *Arabian* Word, which is adopted, not only by the *Persians*, but by the *Russians*; And denotes a long and broad Street, where nothing is to be seen but Shops and Warehouses, like the Markets in all *Russian* Cities; Which Places are not Square as they are in *Germany*. In the *Sclavonian* and *Russian* Languages, a Market is called *Reddi*, and also *Torg*, which latter signifies likewise, in the *Swedish* Tongue, a *Market*.

BEAVER. In the *Russian* Language, called *Bobri*, and in the *Tartarian*, *Condus*; In the Province of *Kamtshatki* in *Siberia*, are very large ones: The Skins are about four Foot long, and two and a half Foot broad, the Hair is black, short and soft; These Skins are sold in *China* for about sixty *Rixdollars* a-piece, and in *Russia*, not for above twenty *Rubels*, and therefore few are brought to *Russia*; But whether these are the right Sort of *Beaver*, is yet uncertain. However, they have that Name, because they have a Tail like a *Beaver*, and live in the Water; The true and common Sort of them, are in several Parts of *Siberia*, on the River *Oby*, *Irtis*, *Czulim*, *Kia*, and several other Rivers, in great Abundance, and are very cheap there; But they sell them, with good Profit to the *Mungals*, and other *Tartars*, who border, and trim their Cloaths with them (84).

BEA-

(83) The *German* Words *Hitze* and *Heiss* (*Heat, hot*) may have an Affinity with the *Tartarian* Word *Ijse* or *Ijseeb*: And the *Latin*, *caleo*, *calidus*, with the *Kalmuckian* Word *Kalen*.

(84) The *Russians* and *Tartars* tell several strange Things of this Animal: As, 1. They distinguish them into two different Species, one of which they call *Gulafchniki*, i. e. *those that*

BEAVER-STONES. They are not properly the Stones of a *Beaver*, but certain Bladders, covered with a thin Skin, in which is contained a Substance like Wax, yellow, soft, and of a strong Smell. The *Beaver* has two of these Bladders, which are cut off, and then well washed, cleansed and dried in a shady Place. In *Siberia*, on the River *Jeneisei*, I have bought this Commodity, pretty dry, for a *Rubel per Pound*, or a *Rubel* and a half; But, at the first Hand, of the *Tartars*, one may often buy it cheaper: And at *Muscow* it will yield three and a half or four *Rubels*.

BEEs or BEEHIVES. In *Lituania* and *Russia*, the *Bees* are not kept in Hives near Houses, but in the Woods, upon the highest and straitest Fir-Trees, near the Top, where the Branches are cut off a good Distance below the *Bees* Nest, and a Scaffold like a Round-Top of a Mast, is made round the Tree, that neither Men nor Bears can easily climb up; Formerly the Peasants in *Derpt* made a Contract with the Citizens of *Plescow*, that they might have their *Beehives* in the Woods, in the Jurisdiction of *Plescow*, for which every Peasant was to pay yearly six *Whites*, (a *Livonian* Coin;) But when those Woods were afterwards destroy'd, the Contract was void, and yet *Czar Ivan Wasi-*

that are idle, and the other *Robotniki*, i. e. *those that work*; The latter have the worst Skins, because they do much Labour in gathering their Provisions for the Winter. These two Species have often War together; For those who are idle often fall upon the other, and rob them of their Provisions. On the other Hand, those who are idle are more liable to be hunted, because of their fine Skins, and the others, because they feed these, are the more spar'd: From which, a very apt Application might be made to Human Life. 1. They say that the *Beavers* build Dams, at the Mouths of little Rivers, in which they keep their Fish, when, in Summer, the Water decreases in the Rivulets; Which Dams are built of Trees, set in those Rivers, upright in the Ground, close to each other, and so strong, that neither Wind nor Water can throw them down. 2. That they set great Trees, with their Branches, in the like manner, in the Water, in which they live like so many Families, viz. the old Ones in the undermost Branches, or first Story; The next in the second Branches; The others in the third, and so forth. 3. When they cut or gnaw those Trees off, with their Teeth, they work 40, 50, or more together, and commonly choose such Trees as stand by the Water-side, and will naturally fall into it, of themselves. And when they raise a Tree, in Order to fix it, and, during such hard Labour, one of their Company happens to break Wind backwards, or to bewray himself, they leave the Tree, and touch it no more. These Things have been told me, not only by *Russians*, but by *Kalmucks*; whether true, or no, I cannot, of my own Knowledge, affirm; But these People being, at certain Times, Night and Day in the Woods, and these Animals having more Room and Liberty in those great Wildernesses, than in Places more frequented, make them the more probable.

Nasliewitz insisted upon having it paid by the Peasants of *Dorpt*, as a Right due to him.

BELAJA RYBIZA. A Fish in the River *Wolga*, quite white, of the Size of a large Salmon, is one of the best and most delicate Fishes in *Russia*. The Roe is red, and the Grains are as big as small Pease. Many take it to be a white Salmon. In *Siberia*, it is only in the Rivers *Oby* and *Irtisch*, and is called *Nelma*.

BELGOROD OR BIELAGOROD. A fine City in the *Lesser-Russia*, or the *Ukraine*, for which *Hubner* (in his *Staats und Zeitungs Lexicon*) takes the little City of *Bialogrodsko*, near *Kiew*, and places it in *Wolia*. This City was built by *Wolodimir I.* in the Year 6498, according to the *Russian* Calculation, and was formerly the Capital City of the *Ukraine*; In which, in latter Times, a large Garrison has always been kept to resist the *Turks*. The Governour is a Lieutenant-General, who has under him two Major-Generals, and ten Colonels of Horse and Foot; For as the General of the *Cosacks* resides in the City of *Baturin*, so the *Russian*-General, in the *Ukraine*, has his Residence here. The River *Donetz* runs through this City, over which a Wooden Bridge is built, not far from the City. A quarter of a German Mile from this City, lies a great Chalk-Hill, where formerly the City stood, and whence it has its Name; But now it stands in a Valley, between two Mountains. It is divided into the Old and New Town, and has three large Suburbs; The Old Town is fortified with a Rampart and a Ditch; But the New Town only with *Pallisadoes*. It is said that there are neither Mice nor Rats in this City. The Garrison is commanded chiefly by *German* Officers, who came thither with the *Russian* Regiments, in the Reign of *Czar Alexei*, and have a *Lutberan* Church there. In the Year 1706, there happen'd a Fire, which reduced the greater Part of it to Ashes.

BELUJA. A Fish in *Russia*, in the *Hungarian* Language, called *Haussen*. It is caught in the Rivers that flow into the *Caspian* and *Baltick* Seas; There are some also caught in the *Baltick*, but very seldom, and not so large as those in the Rivers *Wolga* and *Donn*. This is one of the largest River-Fishes in the World, that are eatable. I have seen one of fifty-six Foot long, and near eighteen Foot thick; The Skin upon the Back is light Grey,

Grey, but under the Belly it is White, without Scales, and very like a Sturgeon, but the Snout, in Proportion, shorter and thicker. The Flesh is very white, tender, and of a good Taste, and wholesome: This Fish has little or no Bones, and but little Gristle, if you except the Head. The largest are cut to Pieces, salted, and sent to *Muscow*, and other Provinces. The small ones, which weigh not above fifteen Pudes, (or about Six Hundred *Russian* Pounds) when they are caught, in Winter-Time, are sent whole to other Places. Of this Fish they Salt, and Smoak the Flesh, and give it a Name according to the different Parts of the Fish; As, (1.) *Kosjack*, is of the Back; (2.) *Tejcha* of the Belly; (3.) *Tumack*, of the Cheek, which is the best; (4.) *Kawardak*, the Liver, Heart, Stomach, and the Fat; (5.) the Tongue and Throat; (6.) *Caviar*; (7.) *Weziga*; and (8.) *Carluck*, or the inward Skin of the Gut, of which they make Ising-glass. The Name of this Fish, *Beluja*, signifies *White*, because of the white Flesh; In the Head and Stomach are found large Stones, but I do not know whether they are of any Use. The Stones in the Stomach are black and hard, like Touch-Stones. It is more likely, that the Fish swallows them, than that they grow in the Stomach; And for what they say of Stones in the Head, I could never learn the Truth with any Certainty.

BERKOWEZ. Is a *Russian* Weight, of ten *Pudes*, or Four Hundred *Russian* Pounds.

BIRCH-TREE. In *Siberia*, in the Province of *Dauria*, the Bark of the *Birch-Tree* is black, the Wood brown, and much harder than our *Birch-wood*; But the Leaves and other Properties are the same with common *Birch-Trees*.

BISERT. Thus the *Russians* call Beads of Glass of all Sorts of Colours; as red, green, white, blew, &c. which they buy by the Pound, and sell them to the *Pagans* and *Tartars* in *Siberia*, who use them as an Ornament on their Cloaths. This *Bisert* is one of the most profitable Commodities, because it lies in a small Compass. The *Mungals* and *Heathens* give, for one Pound and a half of *Bisert*, a whole *Tun* of *Kitaika* or Cotton Ware.

BLOOD-STONE. *Haematites*, the brown-red Sort is found in *Siberia*, on the River *Issett*. BORO-

BORANEZ. I enquired among the *Tartars* and *Russians* about this Commodity, but none of them knew any Thing of it, nor of the Skins, that are pretended to be prepared of it, Therefore, since, besides, no credible Author asserts it, there is Reason to believe all that is said of it to be fabulous.

BRAGA. A Liquor which the *Russians* and *Tartars* brew of Oatmeal and Hops. It is thick and white, yet when it is fresh, it is pleasant enough to drink, and has a tartish vinous Taste; In Summer it is cooling, and not unwholesome. The Verb *Braga* is the same with the *Swedish* Word *bruggia* (to brew). Brown Beer, the *Kalmucks* call *Schbara*, which Word signifies red, and Brown-yellow; Because the Water is ting'd of that Colour by the Ingredients. The *Usbeck Tartars* brew *Braga* of *Rice*, and also of *Millet*.

C.

CABARDYN. Thus the *Russians* call the *Musk-Animal* and the *Musk*, in order to distinguish it from the true Musk of *Tibet* and *China*, which the *Tartars* call *Gipbar*, and the *Chinese* *Xe*. But the Difference, between this and the other, is not in the Animals, for they are perfectly alike, but in the *Musk*. The Musk of *Tibet* is of thrice as strong a Smell, and, in Proportion, so much dearer than the *Siberian* Musk. In the City of *Tobolsky*, I can have the *Siberian* Musk for five or six Rubels a Pound, when the other is not to be had under twenty or twenty-five Rubels; The *Siberian Musk* is whitish gray, the other is yellow, and the Bag somewhat larger: And there is such a Deceit in it, that if only one Musk-Bag or Navel, of the *Tibet* Sort, be laid among ten Pounds of *Cabardyn*, it gets as strong a Smell as the other, and, therefore, this Trade requires a good Skill; Especially as the Dealers that Way, have also the Art, to give it the true Colour. The *Arabians* call it *Dababtal Musk*, i. e. *Tibet Musk*, and the *Tartars*, as I have said before, call it *Gipbar*. As to the *Tibet* Animal itself *Martinus Martini* gives us a Description of it, in his *Atlas*, (p. 24.) He says: If this Animal be brought out of the *Chinese* Provinces of *Xantum*, and *Tibet*, into other Places, it dies, like a Fish when it is taken out of the

X x 2

Water.

Water. Of the same Nature are the *Siberian Animals* of this Kind, which are in great Numbers between the Cities of *Crasnoyabr* and *Abakan*; But the Reason of their dying, I have been told, by a *Russian* who had caught several of them with a Snare, which he laid in a Wood between two Trees, where there being a Kind of a Passage, he hung some white Moss, which they are very fond of. In Summer, they live in the thickest Woods, and never appear but in Winter, and then they are so very wild, that they will not eat after they are caught, and that is the Reason of their dying. They do not run like other Beasts, but jump and leap continually. Colonel *Kanifer* (who was some Years Prisoner at *Jenesei* and *Ilimski*) told me, that if they were caught young (which, however, was very difficult) they might be tamed. When a Wolf or Fox pursues this Animal, it runs up to the Top of the highest and steepest Rocks; and when it is pursued thither, it will jump down upon a Stone or Shelf, on the Declivity of the Rock, tho' it be but two Hands broad, and sometimes to the Depth of twenty or twenty-four Foot, where it is at once safe; For neither Fox, nor Wolf, will venture such a Leap after it. Just the same this Animal does when it is hunted; But then a Shot will often fetch it down. The *Russians* and *Tartars*, near *Crasnoyabr* and *Abakan*, eat it, as they do Venison. I my self have tasted it, but it has a very strong Taste of the Musk; But the Flesh of the Females does not taste so Rank; Because they have no Musk; Neither do their Teeth project out, like those of the Male. This Animal is not so high as our Deer, but full as long, and hath much such Hair, but more harsh, and not a brown Grey, but a white Grey; In other Things, it is just like the Deer. The Musk is not in the Testicles, but is lodged under the Belly, between the Flesh and Skin, just where the Yard pierces the Skin, As to the Preparation of the Musk, I refer the Reader to *Kircher*, and other Authors. It is certain that the Musk in these Animals is not always of the same Strength, neither in hot nor cold Countries: For it is always best, in Summer, in Rutting-Time, and in the Full of the Moon.

CANAL. The Verb to dig or cut through, in the *Sclavonian* Language, is *Perocopeiu*, whence the *Preopenian* *Tartary* is called *Perecop*, which otherwise is called *Crimm*.

CARAVANS. There goes, every Year, a great *Caravan* from *Russia* to *China*; The Commodities which the Merchants carry thither, consist mostly in Furs, as Sables, Fox-Skins, Grey Squirrels, Ermins, &c. Besides Woolen-Cloth, Linnen and Toys; As soon as the *Caravan* comes to the Borders of the *Chinese Mungalia*, the *Chinese* Commissaries receive it, and conduct it to the Capital City of *Peking*, at their Expence; Where, likewise, the *Chinese* maintain both the People and Camels for three Months, within which Time the *Russians* are obliged to Sell or Exchange their Goods. This Time being expired, the *Caravan* is again conveyed to the Borders, at the Charge of the *Chinese*. This *Caravan* sets out from *Muscow*, in the Winter-Season, and returns within the Space of three Years, bringing back Silk and Cotton-Ware, Gold, Jewels, *China*-Ware, and other Goods, which turn to a very great Advantage to *Russia*. The Merchants have, besides, this Benefit, that in their Journey thither, they can trade also with the *Siberian* Cities under the *Russian* Government, and in their Return with the *Tartars*, with whom they exchange *Chinese* Tobacco (or *Scharr*) for Furs, and other Goods; which as well as the *Chinese* Commodities, they can sell to a good Advantage in *Muscow*. I have been told, that those who advance their Money for three Years, in this *China*-Trade, frequently make *Cent. per Cent.* thereof. In going from *Russia* to *China*, the Duty upon Goods of the Value of one *Rubel*, is, in the City of *Werchoturja*, one *Griffwen*, in *Toboll* one *Griffwen*, and in *Selinginski* four *Griffwen*; And, on their Return, the Duty is but five *Kopeiks*, for the Value of a *Rubel*, in every Place where they are Barter'd or Sold. Black Sables are not carried to *China*, but only the pale ones; Nor black Fox-Skins, but the red only: Dogs, Soap, all Sorts of *European* Paper, whether white, marbled, painted, or gilt; Also gilt Leather, are all Commodities which go off in *China*; and the *Tartars*, *Ostiacks*, *Tungusians*, and other *Pagans*, consume a great Quantity of Beads of all Colours, Needles, and other Nick-Nacks: The *Mungals* likewise buy Beaver-Skins. Powder and Bullets are not allowed

to be carried to the *Tartars* in *Siberia*; But when they can get it, they pay very dear for it.

CARCHARIA or **CARCHARIA PISCIS**. Is a *Fossil*, something like the Bills of Birds, of a blackish Colour, and is found on the Banks of the River *Taffda*.

CATHARINENBURG. A new City, begun in the Year 1721, in the Government of *Siberia*, in the Province of *Ugor*, on the River *Issett*, between the *Uralcian* Mountains, and had this Name given it, in Honour to the late Empress *Catbarine*. This Place is Five Hundred and fifty *Wersts* from the City of *Tobolski*; Three Hundred *Wersts* from the City of *Kongur*, and Three Hundred *Wersts* from *Wercboturia*. The Fortification is Square, and has six whole, and four half Bastions: The River *Issett* runs through it, along which is a great Dam made, and near it the following Works and Manufactures are set on Foot: (1.) Two high Mast-Ovens *; (2.) Four Mills with Hammers for drawing Iron-Bars; (3.) Three Mills with Hammers for flatting Plate-Iron; (4.) Two Fabricks, for making of Plates for Tin, with a Stone Building where the Plates are tinn'd; (5.) A Fabrick for working rough Steel, containing two small Hammer-Works, and eight Forges; (6.) A Steel Fabrick, with two Hammer-works; (7.) A Wire Fabrick; (8.) Two Machines for making Iron Hoops; (9.) A Machine, for cutting Iron into small Bars for course Wire and Nails; (10.) A Mill for hammering of Anchors; (11.) Two Machines for making Sword-Blades; (12.) A Machine for boring and polishing Cannon; (13.) Six Furnaces to melt Copper; (14.) A Saw-Mill with three Frames; All these Works are kept going by forty-two Water Wheels. The Directors of these several Works are mostly *Germans*, each of whom has a House to himself, all built in a regular and uniform Manner; They have, besides the *Russian*, a Church of their own, and a *German* Minister, who also teaches their Children Reading, Writing, and the Languages.

CAVE. (*Spelunca*.) In the *Russian* Tongue, call'd *Pytschiora*. There are, about two *Wersts* from the City of *Kongur*, in *Ugoria*, wonderful subterraneous Passages, framed by Nature, in the high

* So my Author calls them, but what he means by the Word Mast-Oven, I must confess I am at a Loss to determine.

high and steep Banks of the River *Silva*, in a kind of soft Alabaster Rock, which the *Russians* burn, and make a Sort of Mortar, Struck or Plaister of it. There are many Caverns within these Passages, which seem to have been formerly Habitations for above a Hundred Families. This Cave is, in all, no less than six Wersts in Length, and about three in Breadth, the Figure of which is represented in *Tab. XIX.* where all that appears black, denotes the Alabaster-Stone covered with Earth, which here and there has Openings to transmit Light into the larger Places of this Subterraneous Cavity; And the white Places in the Table denote the Passages. Letter A. is the City of *Kongur*. B. The Entrance of the Cave. C. The Kilns where the Plaister is burnt. D. Denotes some dark Passages to the greater open and light Places. E. Stone Steps formed by Nature. F. Pieces of Alabaster-Stone fallen from the Roof. G. Heaps of Plaister. H. Natural Rocks. I. The Image of Saint *Nicolas*, placed there for the Devotion of the *Russians*, who Work in this Place. K. Some Sandy Hills. L. A small round Lake, whence a River proceeds, which afterwards loses itself under Ground. M. A River breaking forth from the Top of a Rock with great Impetuosity, which in falling occasions Whirl-pools of Water, with a terrible Noise. N. A very large Place, covered with Grass and Flowers. O. Crosses erected by the *Russians*. P. A large oblong Lake. Q. several Pillars to prop up the Stony-Vault. R. Several Vaults fit for Habitations, formed by Nature. S. The high Banks of the River *Silva*. T. The River *Silva*. U. The River *Ireen*. Y. Pillars to support some Part of the Stony Roof. There are more such Subterraneous Habitations in *Siberia*: One of which I have already given some Account of, under the Title of *Alabaster*: I am informed, that the like are to be found also about the River *Pytschiora*, which has its Name from thence. These, however, I have not seen. Moreover, on the right Side, of the River *Oby*, not far from the Mouth of it, at a Place called *Nadim*, there is a Mountain and Rocks inhabited by the *Ostiacks* of *Nadim*; By the Help of Ladders they get up almost to the very Top of the Rock, and there, through a large Opening, let themselves down into their Habitations. In the Year 1722, in the Month of *February*, going in a Sledge on the River *Jenisei*, I ob-

I observed such a Cave between the two Cities of *Abakan* and *Crasnoyabr*. The Banks of the River ate in this Place a steep Rock, as high as any Church Steeple, in the middle of which there appeared an Opening about forty Fathom above the Surface of the Water. The Entrance into this Cave is about five Fathoms wide, and near fifteen Fathoms in Height. I went into this Place, and advanced upwards into the Rock, as far as I could conveniently, I think about thirty Fathoms; But finding the Passage darker and darker, and, notwithstanding it was in the Depth of the Winter, and that Day being, besides, a terrible cold one, there came forth from this Cavity so warm a Vapour, that it made me sweat, and discouraged me, as well as my Fellow-Traveller, from venturing any farther. We had a great deal of Trouble to come at the Entrance, from the bottom. For this Rock is very steep, and was, at that Time, covered near six Foot thick with Snow, which being pretty compact, was the only Means we had to get up, by fixing our Feet into it: However, we could not help sliding sometimes a good Way down again. The *Swedish* Boy, whom I have had Occasion to mention above, was with me in this Place, and he, with the *Tartar* who drove the Sledge, both advanced higher, almost to the Top of the Rock, where they met with another Opening, within which they found several Pieces of old House-hold Goods, and this gave us Room to believe that formerly it must have been inhabited. This confirmed the Opinion which my self and my Fellow-Traveller, who was a *Russian* Dragoon, conceived when we were in the Cave; viz. That there must be a Communication between the Opening we entered into, and some other Cavity; Because, smoaking a Pipe whilst we were in it, we did not perceive that the Smoak came back towards the Entrance of the Cave. That which I thought most observable, in that Part of the Cave I was in, (besides some dead Birds, such as that Sort which the *Germans* call *Silk-Tails*, in *Latin* *Garrulus Bobemicus*, and two Kind of Bats, with long and narrow Ears) was a vast Number of Icicles, about the Top of the Entrance, formed by the Concourse of the warm Vapours from within, and the external Cold. These Icicles were not round, but hexangular, pretty long, and tapering into a Point. I shall

make

make Mention below, (under the Title *Chrystal*) that, in several Rivers, Pieces of Chrystal of different Sizes, are found of that Form; And though I cannot think that this Kind of Icicles, falling into the Water, are there petrify'd into *Chrystal*; Yet it is not improbable, but Chrystals may have been formed after the same Manner, as these Icicles are form'd, from a Matter fit to produce that Kind of Mineral; With Relation to the People inhabiting these subterranean Abodes, I refer the Reader to what has been said in the *Appendix* to my Introduction, §. X. in the Note, concerning the *Catuzi* or *Cajabtuzi*, and he may judge, whether these Habitations may not have suited those People.

CAVIAR, Is the Fish-Roe, which the *Russians* Pickle, and call it *Ikra*. It is made of the Roe of the *Beluja*, as well as of the Roe of Sturgeon; But that of the *Beluja* is the best, and is of two Sorts, *Zernistaja*, Grainy, and *Pajusnaja* press'd. The first is made in *Autumn* and *Winter*, in the following Manner: As soon as the Fish is out of the Water, they cut open the Belly, and take out the Roe; Then they lay it in a Chest, the Bottom of which is full of Holes, which they cover with Straw; Then they throw Water upon it, and mix it well, take out the Veins and little Skins, 'till it is clean'd of every Thing but the Grains. After this they throw Salt upon it, in Proportion to the Quantity of the Roe; For if it be too salt, it does not fetch half the Price, and if it is not salt enough, it grows sour, as soon as it begins to thaw. After it is thus prepared, they put it into great Baskets or Casks, made of the Bark of Lime-Trees, the Inside of which is lined with Mats, because of the Smell. This *Caviar* is mostly consumed in *Russia*, and but small Quantities of it sent to Foreign Countries, for Presents. The other Sort, *Pajusnaja*, is made in Summer, well salted, and the Juice pressed out afterwards, put into Sacks or Casks, and sent abroad; But chiefly into *Italy* and *Spain*. There is also Abundance of red *Caviar*, in *Russia*, which is made of a little Fish, called *Sig*; *Caviar* is the Czar's Monopoly.

CEDAR-TREE. I am not certain; Whether those *Cedars* that grow on Mount *Libanus*, and elsewhere, in *South Asia*, are of the same Kind with those that grow in *Siberia*; The Kernels, at least, that come from the warmer Countries are larger; But the

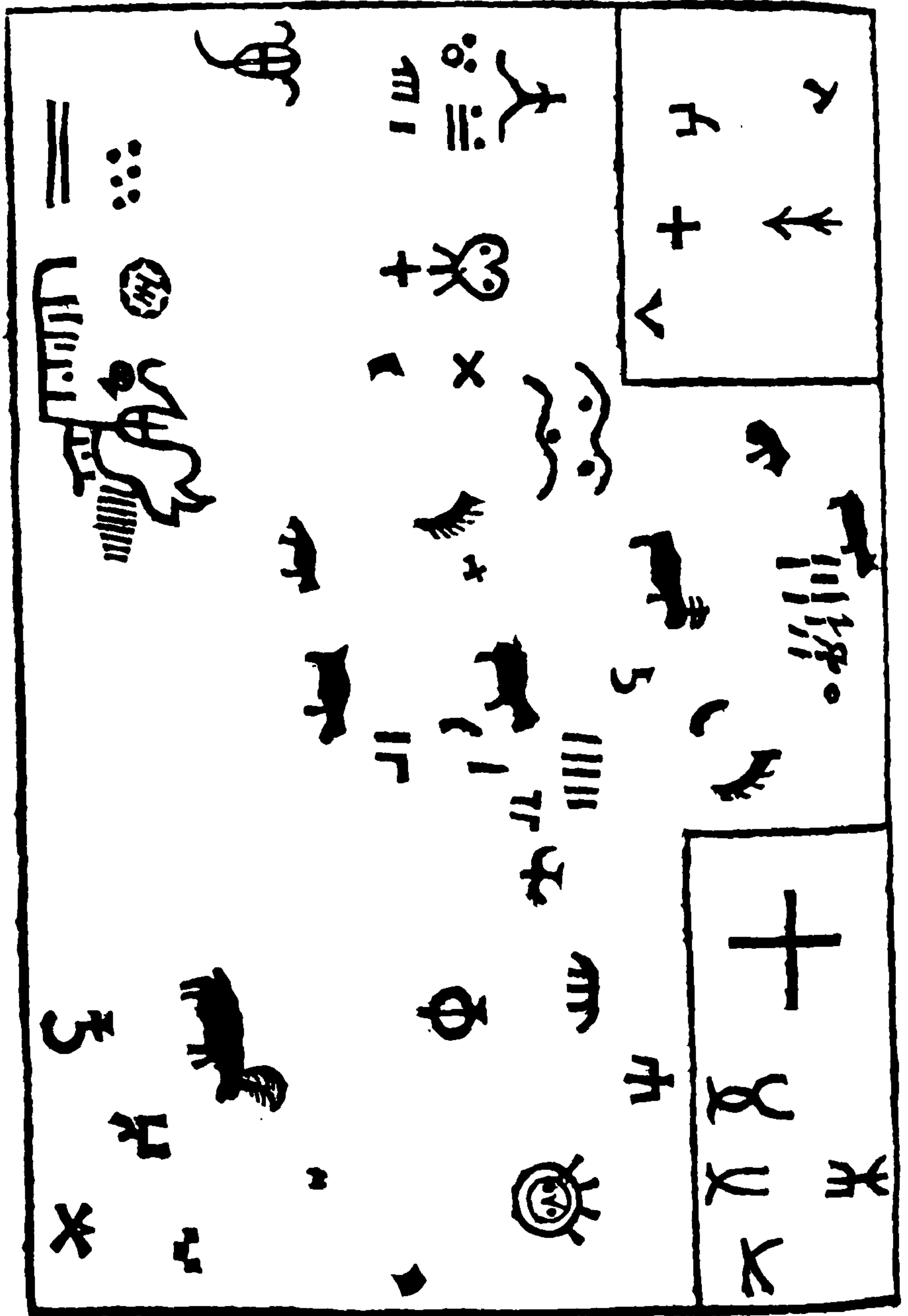
Trees, themselves, are not unlike one another: For the *Siberian Cedars* grow, as it were, in a Pyramidal Form, and are, for the most Part broader, higher and thicker than Fir-Trees. I have seen one single Board of *Cedar* almost four Foot * over. The Needles of these Trees are like those of the rest of the Turpentine Trees, only much longer, and near the Length of one's little Finger. The Fruit, or Apple, is like that of the Fir-Tree, except that they are twice or three Times as big, and has a Kernel between every Leaf of it, so that one of them often yields forty or fifty Kernels, which, however, (as I have already said) are less than those which grow in warmer Countries. The Wood of the *Cedar* is closer and finer-grained than that either of Pine or Fir. This Tree appears very beautiful to the Eye, and as its Needles exceed in Length those of the Pine, or Fir, they hang like so many Plumes of Feathers, and represent as it were a Pyramid. In *Siberia* they press an Oyl out of the Kernel, for the Use of the better Sort of People; But this will not keep long, and therefore must be used while fresh. The *Turks* have a pretty Way of taking off the Hulls of these Kernels, by Means of a Hand-Mill, with which they grind off the outward Coat, and bring them to Market, where they sell them by the Pound. These Kernels, beaten up with Sugar and Rose-Water, serve instead of Almonds, to make Tarts and Cakes of. Many Trials have been made of Transplanting young *Cedars*, as well as setting the Kernels, in the *Western* Regions, but they will not thrive there: In the Country called *Kamtshatki*, *Cedar*-Trees are very small, or rather Shrubs, and do not grow higher than the largest *Junipers*, and yet are full of Fruit.

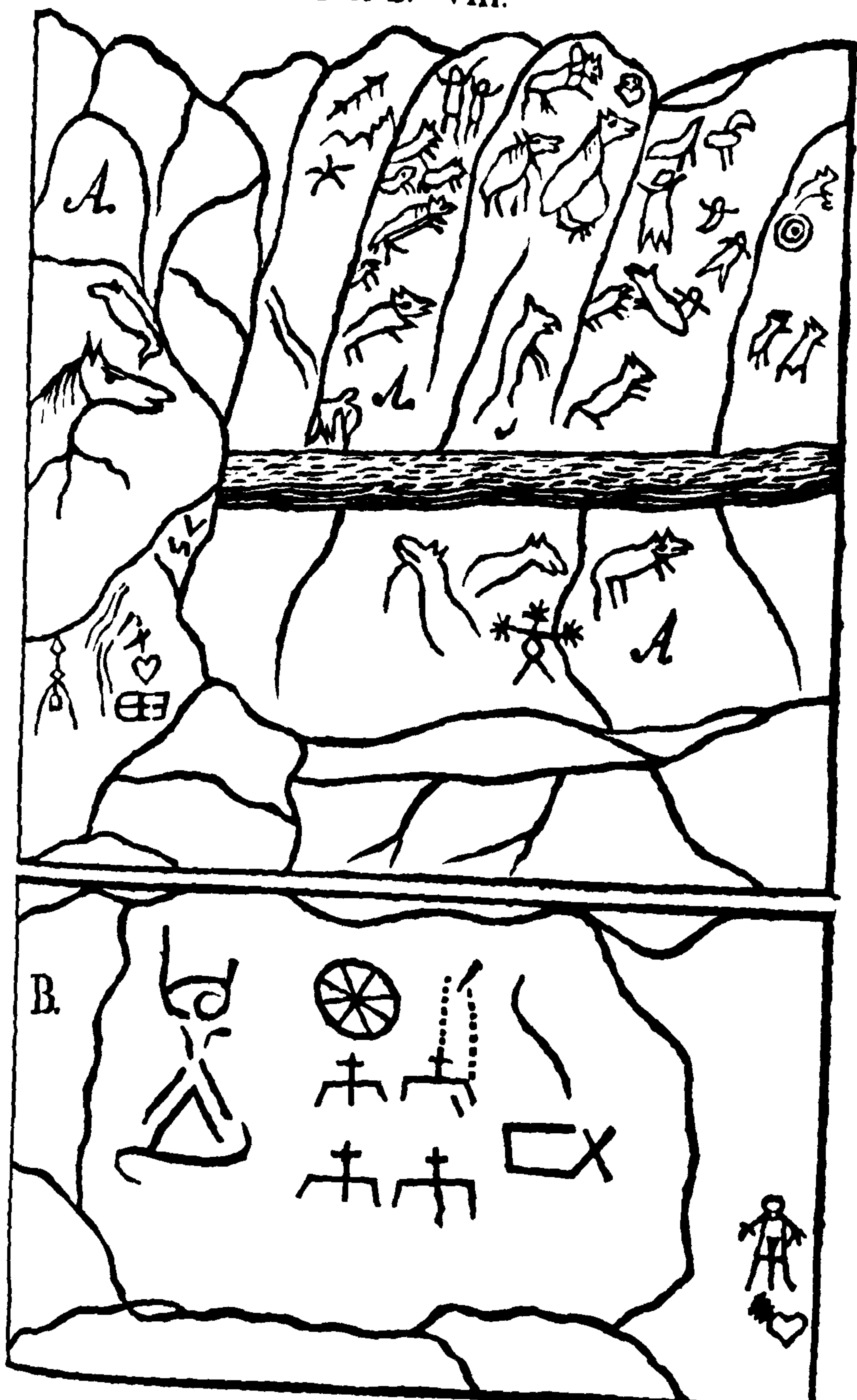
CHARACTERS. Chymists, Astronomers, and Mathematicians have their peculiar Characters; But this Word, likewise, denotes such a kind of Writing, which no one can understand but he that hath the Key to it; And besides this, a certain Sort of Figures carved on Stone, or engraven on Metal, or written on Parchment, or otherwise, which are pretended to have a secret Signification, and are us'd in Magick, and other superstitious Cere-

* THIS, I think, is no such great Matter; I have seen a round Table of Cedar, at the Duke of *Wolfenbuttle's* Palace of *Saltzdahl*, near *Brunswick*, all of one Piece, which I believe (for I never measur'd it) must be, at least, nine Foot in Diameter.

Ceremonies, are called Characters. Of this latter Sort many are to be found in *Siberia* and *Tartary*, upon Rocks and Stones, either carved, or painted, in the same Manner almost, as the *Laplanders* are wont to paint their Drums (85); I could have produced a great Number of such, if, in my Captivity, I could have had Time, Liberty, Money, and other Requisites, to travel to the Places where they are; But though I was destitute of such Helps, perhaps others may hereafter discover, and oblige the World with an Account of them. In the mean Time, however, I shall present the Reader with a Description of some few of them here; as, (1.) Those which are in *Great-Permia*, near the City of *Tzerdyn*, which either are burnt in, or written by some other Means, upon Rocks there, with a red indelible Colour; perhaps after the same Manner as formerly, in *Iceland*, they used to write upon the Bones of Animals and Fish; See below, *Tab. VII.* (2.) The same Sort of Figures cut or carved in Rocks, are also to be seen on the Banks of the River *Tomm*, between the Cities of *Tomskoi* and *Kusnetskoi*, as in *Tab. VIII. Lit. A.* But the Figures in this *Tab. Lit. B.* which are likewise painted or stained with a red Colour, as I have said above in *Tab. VII.* were found in the farther Part of *Siberia*, between the Cities of *Crasnoyabr* and *Abakan*, upon the Rocks which are on the Banks of the River *Jenisei*. With this, the Reader may compare what *Matth. Belius* (*de Vet. lit. Hunn. Scytb. p. 15.*) mentions of these Characters; And considering that the said River *Jenisei* runs close under the Rocks, which in some Places are very smooth and steep, like a Wall, and as high as a Steeple, it is hard to conceive how these Painters, or other Artificers, could come at them, to make these Figures, which are mostly on the middle of the flat Surface of these Rocks. They could not do it in Summer, by Means of Ladders, because the River is, in those Places, deeper than the Rocks are high; And, in Winter, the Snow which lies there above Man's deep, and the terrible Frost, would, by no Means, allow them to climb up, and paint them at all. There is, therefore, Room to conjecture, that they either found Ways to let themselves down from above, or climb'd up from below,

Y y 2





below, by the Help of Stone-Wedges drove into the Rock. This may, in some Measure be confirm'd, by what follows: For (1.) Mr. *la Croix*, in his History of *Timur Beck* (Tom. II. Cap. LVIII.) describes a *Tartarian* Nation, called *Mecrites* thus *Timur* (or *Tamerlan*) *fit appeller le Touman des Mecrites, qu'étoient dans son Armee, Ce sont de Gens si adroits à marcher dans les Montagnes, qu'ils vont par tout, où les Gazelles & les Chevreuils peuvent aller, &c.* See also the same Author, Tom. II. Cap. XLIII (2.) See likewise that Passage in *Curtius* and *Arianus*; Where there is an Account of *Alexander Magnus* storming the *Petra Sogdiana* with Three Hundred chosen young Men of his Army, who drove Stone-Wedges into the Clefts of the Rocks, and by that Means climb'd up. (3.) *Menander*, in his *Hist. Byzant.* (Tom. III. Cap. 7 §. 5.) gives a Description of the above-mentioned *Mecrites*, who lived near *Taugaste*, a City lying towards the *Indies*, as of a People who pass'd their whole Life-Time in Danger, and under Arms; (4.) *Marcus Paulus* (Lib. I. Cap. 61.) makes mention of some *Tartars*, whom he calls *Madistes*, but should perhaps be *Macrites*. I have, my self, met with such Stone-Wedges, on the River *Jenisei*; And the above-mentioned Colonel *Kaniser* has also told me, that Abundance of them are found near *Ilim*, and other Places. where there are terrible high Rocks. It is, therefore, very probable, that these Painters or Sculptors were, by this Means, enabled to write or carve the above-mentioned Characters in these Rocks. In *l'Histoire Genealogique des Tartars*, in the Title of the eighth Chapter, Mention is made of a *Tartarian* Tribe, called *Takrin*, and in my *German Translation*, I have taken Notice, that it is likewise called *Macrytb*; Of this Race there still are some few among the *Kalmucks*.

CHERRIES. *Siberia* produces, in the Desarts near the Rivers *Toboll* and *Issett*, a Sort of wild, braonish, sour Cherries, of which the Trees, as well as the Fruit, are very small. Except these Places, neither this, nor any other Kind of Cherries, are to be met with in any Part of *Siberia*, tho', in the *Southern* Parts of this Country, this Fruit might be cultivated.

CHLYNOW, or CLINOW, the Capital of the Principality of *Wiatka*. From thence large Quantities of Corn, Tallow, Honey, Wax, Butter, &c. are exported for *Archangel*.

CHOROKI, In the *Tartarian* Language called *Kosæbn*, are a Kind of Field-Weasels, of a reddish yellow Colour, and blackish on the Back, about the Size of a Ferret, to be found near the Cities of *Tara* and *Borgamaska*.

CHREBATH, or CHREBIOT. By this Name the *Russians* call a hilly, and, at the same Time, gravelly Part of a Country, by way of Distinction from a small Series or Ridge of Hills, which they call *Greiben* or *Griven*, i. e. a Comb. Hence that hilly Tract of Land, between the Cities of *Gerauna* and *Nerschinskoi*, has obtained the Name of *Gablene Chrebeot* (86), that is, the *Apple Mountain*, of which *Isbrand Ides* also takes notice.

CHRYSTAL. This Sort of Mineral is found in *Siberia*, in very great Perfection, as well as Quantity, of divers Colours, and is preferable to the *Bobemian* and *Bristol* Stones. In the River *Iett*, as also in the River *Tomber*, not far from the City of *Tomsk*, there are found, in great Plenty, hexangular Pieces of *Cbrystal*, about the Thickness of a Man's Finger, of different Lengths, so constantly regular, that not one Piece is to be met with but what is of the Figure of a hexangular Cylinder, and about the Length of the Joint of a Man's Finger.

CORNELIAN STONES. These are found in *Siberia*, very large, and of a high Colour.

COSSAKI, or KOSAKI. All those People who live on the Borders of *Russia* and *Poland*, are called by that Name in those two Countries; They are a Sort of a free People, but will, in Time of War, list themselves, and serve for Pay. They are surnamed according to the Places and Districts they inhabit; viz. 1. *Male Rossiskia*, or the *Cossacks* of *Little Russia*; Among these are, 2. reckon'd the *Saporowian Cossacks*, of which I have already given a particular Description, CHAP. III. §. XI. Their Tongue is a Mixture of *Polish* and *Russian*. The *Cossacks* were formerly govern'd by a *Hetman*, under an *Aristocratical* Form of Government: But Emperour *Peter I.* upon the Demise of *Skuropatsky*,
their

(86) *Gablinski*, in the *Russian*, and *Gabke* in the *Vandalian* Tongues, signify *Apples*, by which I believe were meant the wild *Apricocks* which grow thereabouts.

their last *Hetman*, entirely alter'd the Form of this *Cossackian* Government, in the Year 1722. And, in the Room of it, erected a Military *Russian* College or Magistracy, the President of which is a General, and the Assessors are Colonels of *Russian* Extraction. On the other Hand, the *Cossackian* and *Ukrainian* Colonels, as well as other Officers, who formerly bore a great Sway, are gradually cashiering, and their vacant Places filling up with *Russian* Commanders. Besides, the Revenues which used to belong to the Chiefs of the *Cossacks*, are now withdrawn, and paid into the *Imperial* Treasury. In short, all Things are now managed upon the Footing of the *Russian* Establishment. As to the *Saporozhians*, they were utterly rooted out, and dispersed in the late Wars. The origin of their Name may be seen in the Book, entitled, *Verändertes Rußland*, (Page 34. §. 174.) of the German Edition. This People was indeed formerly under the *Ukrainian Hetmann*, but yet always maintain'd their Right of choosing a Commander, or Under-*Hetmann* of their own, whom they stiled *Koschewoy*; The true Meaning of this Word I know not, but, in the *Tartarian* Tongue, *Kosch* signifies a Camp, or rather the Baggage in a Camp. The third Sort of *Cossacks* are named *Belogorodskaja Czerta*, which have been mentioned above, Chap. III. §. XIV. The fourth Kind are the *Donskian Cossacks*. These last are, indeed, native *Russians*, but then, they are no better than a disorderly Concourse of Soldiers, Peasants, ruin'd Citizens, Servants, &c. Nay, there are found among them, a great Number of baptized *Turks*, *Tartars*, and such like Rabble. They call their Commander *Woysskowi Ataman*, which signifies Captain of War. The next Officer to him is named *Woysskowi Jæssaoul*, Adjutant of War; And he who follows next to him, bears the Title of *Woysskowi Pyssar*: That is, Secretary of War, or, to speak in a higher Stile, Counsellour of War, an Officer of great Esteem among them. There is annually, and, if Occasion requires, even weekly, an Assembly call'd *Krug*, held in their Capital, *Czerkaskoy*, in the Market-Place, and in the open Air, where all Cases are tried, adjusted and determined, by the *Jæssaoul* (87), without any formal Proceeding in

(87) The *Barabintzian*, and other *Pagan Tartars*, also call their Chief, or the Principal Man of a Village, by the Name of *Jæssaoul*.

in Writing; When ever this Martial Court is assembled, the *Pyssar* takes down all Sentences and Orders in Writing, but the *Ataman* puts his Sign Manual to it, if he can write, if not, he only puts his Seal instead of it. Moreover, before this Court breaks up, all Executions, whether Capital or Corporal, are dispatch'd, in the Presence of two *Jassauls*. There are three Sorts of Capital Punishments. The first is, they put a Shirt filled with Sand upon the Delinquent, and so fling him into the Water; The Second, the Condemned Person is ty'd to a Stake, and shot to Death with Arrows. The third Way is, when the Crime is of an extraordinary Nature, that the Criminal is ty'd to the Tail of a Horse, and so dragg'd to Death. Corporal Punishments are the *Podoggi*, and the like; And, in such Cases, according to the Nature of the Crime, the *Jassaul* orders more or less Stripes to be given, and that discretionally, by Word of Mouth, without any written Sentence. In former Times, they chiefly lived by Fishing, and pillaging among the *Turks* and *Tartars*, which they are now debarr'd from; Nor have they any more their former Liberty of chusing and deposing their *Ataman*. They lost that Priviledge by their last Rebellion, in 1706; since which they are subject to the Government of *Woronitz*; And can, upon Occasion, bring Fifty Thousand Men into the Field. When they fight against the *Turks* or *Tartars*, they have no Pay, and must be contented with what Plunder and Prisoners they make. But if they are employed in a War with any other Nation, they have twenty *Rubels* a Year, and what they can make by ravaging and plundering; Besides which, to prevent their cutting their Prisoners to Pieces, they receive five *Rubels* for every Prisoner they take: The fifth Sort of *Cossacks* are the *Jaykian*, near the River *Jayk*. These are much the same with the last-mention'd, have the same Form of Government, and receive the same Pay. They live, when they are not in the War, by Fishing, of which there is no Want among them, and they send yearly vast Quantities of *Caviar* and Sturgeon to *Muscov*, and other Cities, for Sale. The sixth and last Race of *Cossacks*, are the *Grebinskian*, near the City and River *Tareck*, much the same Kind of People as the two last; However, these are look'd upon to be the most Martial of all the *Cossacks*, and it is

reckoned, that they are able to march Twelve Thousand Men into the Field.

COTTON-STUFFS. The *Buchars* and *Kalmucks* trade very considerably in this Commodity to *Siberia*. There are various Sorts of these Goods; 1. *Daba* is a strong Stuff, of a beautiful red Colour, without Gloss; It is but narrow, and not unlike our coarse *Callicoe*. 2. *Faulama* is broader. 3. *Biassi* is white, narrow, and without Gloss. 4. *Tzacitar* is also white and narrow, but Glossy. There are some more ordinary Sorts, as *Kamky*, *Sendyn*, *Kunatsch* and *Wibick*. The *Mahometans* are allow'd to be bury'd in all these Sorts of Stuffs, but not in *Kittkaica*, which is manufactur'd by *Pagans*; whereas the others are all made in *Bucharian* Cities, which are inhabited by People of the *Mahometan* Faith, such as *Turpan*, *Chamill*, *Jerken*, *Kutzai*, *Axu*, *Caschkar*, &c.

CRAWFISH. They are not to be found in any of the Rivers or Brooks of *Siberia*; But there are some in the River *Argun*, in the Province of *Dauria*, in which there is a Silver Mine. In this Province, likewise, grow Hazle-Nuts, which are not met with in any Part of *Siberia*.

CREMMELIN, or CRIMMELIN; the Name of the Czar's Palace, in the City of *Muscow*. This is a *Tartarian* Word, and signifies a *Fortress*; But not a *Flint*, as *Kremm* does in the *Sclavonian* Language. Thus the *Precopensian Tartary* is call'd, by the *Tartars*, *Crimm* or *Cremm*, on Account of a Rampart and a Mote, which was there in ancient Times, and is call'd in the *Sclavonian* Language *Perccop*. As a Proof of this, the *Chinese Wall* may serve for an Example, which by the West *Tartars* and *Usbecks* is also call'd *Zagan Crimm* or *Cremm*, i. e. *The white Fortress or Wall*. The Word *Crimm-Tartars* has no other Meaning in the *Ukranian* Tongue, than such *Tartars* as are quarter'd in Garisons or fortified Places, because the others live in open Fields, and thence receive different Names.

CZIREMISSI, or SCHEREMISSI, are a *Pagan* People, under the Government of *Cajen*. Those who live on the right side of the *Volga* are called *Sanagornya*, and those on the left side of that River, *Lugowija*. These People have no Idols of Wood or Stone; But direct their Prayers towards Heaven in the open Air, and near great Trees, to which they pay Honour, and hold their Assemblies

semblies round about them. The Hides and Bones of such Cattle as they sacrifice, they hang about these their holy Trees, to rot, by Way of Sacrifice, to the Air. They have no Books nor Writings among them, and if they are ask'd the Reason of it, they answer, that they had such Things, in ancient Times; But that the great Cow had devcur'd them all. There is a great Affinity between their Tongue and that of the *Inlandians*; But it is now very much mix'd both with the *Russian* and *Tartarian*. They call themselves, in their own Tongue, *More* or *Maire*. I am of Opinion, that *Johannes Magnus* speaks of these People, when he quotes out of *Jornandes*, that the *Hunns* had their Original from a Sort of *Hobgoblins*, call'd *Maire* or *Mare*.

CZERKASI, or CZERKASSEN. Thus the *Russians* now call all little *Russia* and the *Ukraine*. There is also a City of this Name, which is the Capital of the *Donnian Cossacks*. The Name *Czerkas* signifies in the *Russian* Tongue almost the same as *Cossack*, but with this Difference, that *Cossack* denotes a Horseman, who serves a certain Time, in the Army, for his Pay; But *Czerkas* signifies a voluntary Pillager or Maroder. The Name of *Cossack* is given, in *Russia*, likewise, to all hired Servants, in Town and Country, but not to Slaves.

CZETWERICK, Is a *Russian* Dry Measure, containing 300 *Cubick Werschoki*. It weighs, when fill'd with clean dry Rye, a Pud, or 40 *Russian* Pounds. Eight *Czetwericks* make one *Czetwert*, or two *Ojmyns*.

CZETWERT. This Measure holds 320 *Russian* Pounds, and signifies as much as Quarter; Because formerly they used to measure their Corn in a Tun, called *Okow*, which being too cumbersome, was afterwards divided into four Quarters.

CZUWASCHI. These are *Pagans*, living in *Russia*; The Place of their Abode see CHA.: III. §. XVII. They bury their Dead in Desarts, where they dress the Corpse in fine Cloth, dig a Pit, the Bottom whereof they cover with Boards, on which they spread a Matrafs or Mat, whereon they lay the Corpse, then put Boards on the Sides, and cover it also with Boards; and lastly, fling the Mould over it. In the Month of *October*, they have a great Festival, against which they brew Beer, and drink to the *Czar's* Health, in particular. They offer all their first Fruits to their

God *Thor* ; And bake, besides, a certain Loaf, which they set before him. It is remarkable, that Horses are in such Esteem with them, that they make no other Use even of their Hides, but to hang them up upon Trees. They are not quite so ignorant as the *Czeremissi*, but have some Knowledge of the *Christian* Religion; Nevertheless *Polygamy* is in Use with them. There is but little Difference between the Dress of the Men and Women, except only that the latter have the Edges of their Linnen embroider'd round with all Sorts of Silk. The Houses or Cottages of the *Czurajibi* have their Doors towards the South.

D.

DAMASKED ARMS. These wrought and inlaid Arms are also made in *Russia* ; The Composition is Steel and Iron mix'd together, and the Figures upon them are etched with Vinegar and Copperas.

DAMASK. I have purchas'd the thinner and slighter Sort (called, in *Sweden*, *Muscovite* Damask,) of about 12 or 14 Ells * in a Piece, in Barter, for a *Rubel* and a half, or two *Rubels*, in *Siberia*, near the Cities of *Crasnoyabr* and *Kujnetskoi*, and the double Damask, which hold 16 Ells, for 6 or 8 *Rubels* a Piece. During my Stay there, I spoke with a Merchant, who travell'd and traded by himself with the *Sayantzian* or *Sayottian* *Mungals*, near the River *Kemt/cbyk*, which falls into the River *Jenisei*, near its Head. This Man, for a single Skin of *Russian* Leather purchas'd two *Pottstaff* of *Damask*, of 12 Ells each, which those People call *Peti Lani*, besides six Pieces of *Kitaika* ; For a Pewter Plate six Pieces of *Kitaika* ; For a small Brass Ring set with red or blue Glafs, two or three *Kitaika* ; For a small Pair of Scissars, two *Kitaika* ; For a Pound and a half of Glafs Beads, of different Colours, by the *Russians* called *Bisert*, a whole Cask of *Kitaika* ; For $\frac{1}{2}$ Ells and a half of Red Bays, for a Coat, one Piece of *Damask*, and three Pieces of *Kitaika*.

DATES, As well as other Commodities, are brought, in Abundance, to the City of *Tobolsky*, by the *Bucharian* and *Kalmuckian* Traders.

* (*Our Author, I presume, means German Ells of 22 $\frac{1}{2}$ English Inches.*)

DAURIA, Is a large Province, in *Siberia*, situated towards the Borders of the *East Tartars*. Dr. *Christian de Hennin*, in his Annotations on *Dobbins's Siberia*, makes Mention of the River *Daurien*, to which this Country is said to owe its Name. But as this Province is called so, and there is no River of the like Name, he should have set the Lake of *Baikal* instead of it. For *Dauria*, with the *Eastern Tartars*, has the same Signification, as *Daria* with the *Persians* and *Turks*, and these call the Ocean *Dariai Moebit*. This Country, therefore, being full of Water and Rivers, is called *Dauria* or *Daria*, in Comparison with the *Mungal* and *Kalmuck* Countries, which are very dry and barren. But in the *Kalmuck* Tongue, and that of the *Jakutian Tartars*, a great Lake is called *Baikall*.

DEGOD, Is a Kind of Tar, or greasy Substance, produced from Birch-Trees, which the *Russians* make use of in dressing their Leather, as also to grease the Wheels of their Carriages with.

DEGREE OF LATITUDE. A Degree of fifteen *German*, or sixty *English* Miles, answers to One Hundred and four *Wersts*, and Eighty-four *Sazchen*, or *Russian* Fathoms, which latter the *Russians* measure by, in Surveying of Land, as the *Germans* and *English* do by *Rods*, and the *French* by *Toises*. One *Werst* contains Five Hundred *Sazchen*, and each of these three *Archin*, or *Russian* Yards.

DENGA, Is a Sort of small base Coin in *Russia*, of half a *Copeik* Value. This was formerly a Silver Coin, with the Name of the Prince on the Throne on one Side, and the Arms on the other Side. Those that were coined in the City of *Moscow*, bore the Arms of that City: *Viz.* an Equestrian Figure, with a Cimeter in his Hand, whence these Pieces were distinguished by the Name of *Moskowka*. At present *Denga* is a Copper Coin. The *Russians* call them, in the Plural Number, *Dengi*, which is, in *English*, Money (88); probably because there was no other Coin in *Russia*, Four Hundred Years ago; They, however, always reckon'd by the imaginary Names of *Griffwens* and *Rubels*, as we do by *Pounds*.

DOGS,

⁸⁸ The *Ubeck Tartars* have a Sort of Coin, which they call *Tanga*, (See *L'Histoire Générale des Tartars*, p. 542) a Word not unlike that of *Denga*.

Dogs, Are very scarce in *China*, nor will they thrive there. Wherefore Merchants and Travellers who go from *Russia* thither, commonly carry some with them, which turn to a very good Account, especially if they are broke, and have learned some Tricks. On the other Hand, as I was informed by an *Indian* who had travelled through the Country of the *Tanguts*, there are at *Tibet* and *Tangut* Dogs of a vast Size : This seems to agree with what *Marcus Paulus* relates of the large Dogs in *Tangutia*, as also with that Passage in *Arianus*, and *Quintus Curtius*, where they mention, that King *Porus* made a Present of two of these large Dogs to *Alexander*. On the *East* Side of the Country of *Kamtchatki*, towards the Sea, there lives a People, who keep no other Sorts of Beasts but Dogs, which though they are but of a common Size, are remarkable, in that they have Hair of Six Inches long. As to those Dogs which the *Ostiacks* put to their Sledges, and make Use of them instead of Horses, the Reader will find an Account of them, in *Page* 191, of *Das Veränderte Rußland*, and in other Authors. These put me in Mind of an odd Account, which happened about the Year 1718. A certain *Wairwode* travelling in a Sledge with twelve Dogs, towards the City of *Beresowa*, got himself wrapped up in warm Quilts, and girt fast in the Sledge, in order to secure him from the Severity of the Cold, and to prevent his falling out, in Case the Sledge should over-turn ; the *Ostiack*, who was his Guide, skaited along Side of him, (according to Custom, in Case the Sledge should overturn, to raise it up again) and coming on a large Plain, where the Ground is generally covered Man's Depth with Snow, the Dogs (which the *Ostiacks* also use for Hunting) espying a Fox at a Distance, immediately flew in Pursuit of their Game, and run away with the *Wairwode*, with such Swiftnefs, that it was impossible for the Guide to keep Pace with them, and they soon got out of Sight. The Guide followed the Track, but did not come up to his Passenger 'till the next Morning, when he found him in the Sledge overturned, still well wrapp'd up, and tightly girt into it. By good Luck, a stump of a Tree, which stood out above the Snow, had stopped the Sledge, or else it might probably have cost the *Wairwode* his Life. These Dogs are able to draw great Burthens, for, in

the Year 1718, Governor *Knees Mischeuski* ordered a whole Pipe of Brandy to be brought from the Convent of *Ketskce* to the City of *Borjowa*, which was done by sixteen Dogs. People never travel a Nights, but only a Days with Dogs: In the Morning, before they set out, each Dog has two frozen Fish, which is his Allowance, for the whole Day. At Night, when they come to their Journey's End, these poor Creatures are so weary, that they cannot eat, but presently ly down to Sleep. Whenever any Passenger comes to a Stage, where he is to have fresh Dogs, all the Dogs of that Village set up a most terrible Howling, knowing that they are, some of them, to have the same Fate.

DOLMATSCHOWA, or DOLMAZIOWA, Is a small Town in *Siberia*, in the *Werchoturian* District, 5 *Wersts* distant from *Alapaika*. In this Place there is a Hammer-Mill, to make Iron Plates, for the Salt-Pans, at the Salt-Works of *Solikamski*. In order to keep this Mill-Work going, there are 12 Villages employ'd, called *Satodds*, situated in the *Werchoturian* District; The Peasants of these Villages carry Coals and Oar thither, for which Labour they have an Allowance made them in their Contribution.

Ducks (*Wild*) As there are a great Number of Rivers which run thro' *Siberia*, there is not only an incredible Plenty of *Wild Ducks* in that Country, but the Number of the different Species, as well as the endless Variety of the Colours of their Feathers, are no less surprising. The *Russians* give a different Name to every Sort of them, e. g. Some they call *Cborochall*, some *Swyschi*, some *Babba*, others *Tolstochea*, others *Ostrowest*, &c. Not far from the City of *Tobolsky*, towards the North, near *Damianski* and *Sama-*
wa, they have a pretty Way of catching them with Nets: They cut a Way thro' a Coppice, between two Rivulets, which discharge themselves into the River *Oby*. Now as the Ducks chiefly seek their Food in these small Streams, they are wont, in Spring, to fly from one Rivulet to the other, through this cut Way; And, in *Autumn*, when they have hatched their Young, and they are fledged, they return the same Way; Then the *Russians* set Nets in this Passage, and light a small Fire, and by this Means they catch three or four Hundred Ducks in a Night. This is very diverting to Passengers, it being common for the
Owners

Owners to let out the Sport for two or three Nights successively.

DUNGING OF LAND. The *Siberian* Husbandman-Men know very little of Dunning, because the Land is of itself black and flat in those Places, which are situated near the Rivers *Toboll*, *Issett*, and several others, that may properly be called the Store-houses of *Siberia*, from whence all the Corn and Meal is carried to *Tobolsky*, and other Places. Besides, there is such Plenty of Land, that the Farmer may shift three or four Times. In the Year 1714, I bought a Horse for the Conveniency of carrying Wood, during the Winter, and in Order to have Forrage, I hired Part of a Meadow, about eight *Wersts* from the City, which I was to get mow'd, my self; For this Piece of Ground I gave six *Grosbes*, which is not quite one Shilling *English* Mony. The Hay being made, I had, for my Mony and Labour, five Hay-Stacks, each containing between twenty and five and twenty Waggon-Loads, for two Horses. This Meadow would not have been mowed, had I not hired it; And they are obliged, in the Spring, to set such Meadows on Fire, lest the Land should be exhausted.

E.

EAGLES. There are three Sorts of *Eagles* in *Siberia*; the first and largest Sort, which almost exceeds a Turkey-Cock in Size, the *Tartars* call *Burkut*. They are Coal black, and so is the very Beak of them; The Skin about the Nostrils, and the Legs only are of a Lemon-Colour. These live chiefly on high Mountains, and in thick Woods. The second Sort is called, in the *Tartarian* Tongue, *Kutschugan*, and the third and least Sort *Karakuscb*, in *Latin* *Aquila Mæcia*. The *Tartars* make Use of this Sort of Eagles, as they do of Falcons, for Hawking.

EARTH OIL, *Oleum terræ*, is found in *Siberia*, among the *Urallian* Mountains.

ECLIPSES OF THE SUN. The two great Eclipses of the Sun, in the Years 1712, and 1715, were equally visible in *Siberia* and *Germany*, and some other Parts; On these Occasions it has been observed, that the Longitudinal Difference between the

the Cities of *Hamburg* and *Tobolsky*, is four Hours and ten Minutes.

EEL. There is hardly any Country in the World more plentifully provided with Rivers than *Siberia*, but no Eel is to be found in any of them. This is also affirmed of the River *Danube*, and other Rivers that flow into it.

ELKS-HIDES. There is a Place called *Wilwa*, near the River *Pytschiora*, to which the People of the City of *Tzordin* repair every Year; It is distant from that City, One Hundred and Thirty *Wersts*, and about *Whitsuntide*, the *Wogulitzi*, *Sirani*, *Opiacks*, and other *Pagans*, keep a Fair at *Wilwa*, and from them those Citizens buy *Elks-Hides*. Those *Wogulitzi* who live near the River *Wytzera*, and are about thirty Families in Number, generally kill every Year, in that District, Four Hundred *Elks*. The *Russians* call this Animal *Lojs*, and the *Tartars* *Kuyck*.

EMBASSADOR, In the *Russian* Tongue, is called *Posoll*, and an Envoy *Poslanick*; Instead of which *Hubner*, in his *Curious-Real-Natur-Staats und Zeitungs Lexicon*, (p. 2087,) puts *Goneck*, or *Welikie Goneck*, which only signify a Courier or Messenger.

ERMIN. There is great Difference in the Fur of Male and Female *Ermins*. For these latter are bought, in *Siberia*, at the first Hand, for six or eight *Rubels*, per Hundred, whereas the other, being larger, go at ten or twelve *Rubels*. In Summer they are of a reddish brown Colour.

F.

FALCON. In the Province of *Dauria*, and near the River *Amour*, there are a great many Milkwhite *Falcons*, which are sent, in great Numbers, to *China*. The Antiquity of this Kind of Sport, among the *Tartars*, *Kalmucks*, and other People, inhabiting *Siberia*, appears partly in this, that they were used to have a Representation of this Sport painted or etched on the Urns which they put into their Graves. See Table III. Letter E. which was dug out of a Tomb, not far from the City of *Crasnyabr*; The Description of which the Reader will find under the

the Title *Urn* ; And partly by their Custom of sending a fine *Falcon*, whenever they had a Mind to make an extraordinary Present to some Great Person. See *L'Hist. des Tart. Cap. VIII. p. 205.* Whence *Mezeray's* Opinion, (in his *Hist. Part I. additament. Paris 1685.*) seems not to be ill-grounded, when he supposes, that the ancient *Germans* had learned this Sport of the *Scyths*. How common Hawking is, even to this Day, in *Mingrelia* and *Dagestan*, the above-cited *Author* of the latest Account of *Casan* and *Astracan*, &c. (*p. 178, and 315,*) will satisfy the Reader. The *Tartars*, in *Siberia*, make Use of three Sorts of *Falcons*; The first is called, in their Tongue, *Hkartscbega Abolpbei* or *Tzungar*, which is the best and most beautiful Sort; These *Falcons* are Ash-coloured, and some Speckled-white, and pretty large. The second Sort they call *Ugugincla*. The third *Toracktschin*. Which ever Sort they be, it is necessary to make them, whilst they are young, which is done by these People in Manner following: After a *Falcon* has been well fed, and is fat, they give him the Bigness of a Pepper-corn of a Root, which they call *Ack-cbirgak*, put among some Flesh chopped small; This Root is of an emetick Quality, and has its Effect upon the Birds; in the next Place, they take a piece of Woollen Felt, of the Bigness of a small Nut; This they mince among some Flesh, make a little Ball of it, and make the *Falcon* eat it; This done, they cause him to be carried upon a Man's Hand, from Nine to twelve Days together, to prevent his Sleeping; After which Time, they mix some *Calmus* among his Meat, and by that Time he is used to the Falconer; However, before they venture him at large, they first make him start, and return, within a small Compass. It is to be observed, that the *Tartars* never stroke the *Falcons* over the Head and Back, which they believe makes them shy; The same Method they also take with *Eagles*.

FEATHER GRASS. In the Desert or *Steppe*, near the River *Ischim*, towards the Mount *Itick*, in *Siberia*, grows a Sort of Grass, which exactly resembles White Plumes of Feathers, and may be dried and preserved a great while.

FORTIFICATION, in the *Russian* Tongue, is call'd *Ostrock*; But *Ostrow* signifies an Island. The *Russians* have, towards the Borders of the *Tartars* and *Cossacks*, at proper Distances, Places of Defence, *pallisadoed* in, or built of Wood-Work; And the *Barabintzian Tartars*, between *Tara* and *Tomskoi*, have secured most of their Villages with the like Sort of *pallisado'd* Wooden-Forts, to prevent the too frequent Inroads of the *Cossaki-Orda*.

FOXES, Are called, by the *Russians*, *Lytziza*, by the *Tartars*, *Tilgü*. The best black *Foxes* are caught in the most Northern Parts of *Siberia*, about *Beresow*, *Surgubt*, and *Jenisi*. These bear a very high Price in *Turkey*, *Persia* and *Tartary*, One single large, black Fox-Skin often yields Four Hundred *Rubels*, and above, though it costs, perhaps, at the first Hand, not above eighty, or one hundred. A Lining of black *Fox* is esteemed in *Russia*, beyond the finest *Sable*. Other Sorts, as Blue, Red, Cross and white *Foxes*, are found every where in *Siberia*, except the last, which are only met with about the *Mare Glaciale*; They bark like Dogs, and are, for that Reason, called *Petsci*, Dogs,

FUMITORY, Grows in Abundance, near the City of *Tomskoi*.

G.

GALENOK, Is a Wine-Measure in *Russia*. Eight *Galenoks* make a *Wedro*, *Eimer*, or Half *Awm*.

GANESKA. What is related concerning this, is a Fiction, though indeed the Word signifies, among the *Tartars*, a Pouch for Tinder, Steel, and Matches, And the Inhabitants of some Places of *Finnland* use it also in that Sense. Whatever else is said concerning the *Ganeska*, is what this Nation is unacquainted with.

GARLICK, called by the *Russians* *Tschesnock*. Of this there is a vast Consumption in *Russia*, especially among the Common People, who hardly eat a Meal without it. There are large Towns which trade in nothing else but *Garlick*; viz. *Dmitrow*, *Rybow*, and others, where it is cultivated in large Gardens.

About *Casan*, *Astracan*, and in other warm Provinces, it grows spontaneously and plentifully in the open Fields.

GLYZYRRHIZA, Grows not only about the *Caspian Sea*, and the River *Volga*, but is also found, in great Plenty, in the District of the *Barabintzian Tartars*, between the Cities of *Tara* and *Tomskoi*.

GOSI or **GOST**. This Word signifies a Stranger or Guest, and is given, in *Russia*, to Merchants who trade in a whole-sale Way, to Foreign Parts, as to *Germany*, *Persia*, *Turky*, *China*, &c. But no Person durst assume this Name, without being possessed of peculiar Privileges. They, therefore, take Place of all other Merchants, and are called to Honourable Employments, such as Assessors at the Board of Trade, Burgermasters, and Commissioners of the Customs in great Cities, and the like. When any Thing of Moment, relating to Trade, lies before the Senate, or the Board of Trade, their Advice is always ask'd. They have the same Privileges with the inferiour Nobility, may purchase Estates, and marry into Noble Families. Formerly there were two Classes of Merchants in *Russia*, viz. *Gostinaia Sotnia*, and *Sukonaja Sotnia*, which latter were accounted, in many Things, Superiour to common Merchants; But that Distinction is now dropp'd.

GOSTINOY-DWOR, are a kind of large Squares walled in, within which are built, on every Side, convenient Ware-Houses and Shops, for all Sorts of Commodities; And in the Middle, Room enough is left for Carriages to go in and unload. These Square Places are erected at the Charge of the Government, in all Capital trading Cities, as *Muscow*, *Petersburg*, *Archangel*, *Kiow*, *Novogrod*, &c. The Word signifies a Store-house for Strangers.

GRAVES or **SEPULCHRES**, in *Latin Tumuli Sepulchrales*. The *Russians* call them *Bogri*, as also *Mulignii*, of which vast Numbers are found in *Siberia*, and in the Deserts which border on that Government Southwards. In these Tombs are found all Sorts of Vessels, Urns, Wearing-Apparel, Ornaments, and Trinkets, Cimetars, Daggers, Horse-Trappings, Knives, all Sorts of little Idols, Medals, of Gold and Silver, Chess-Boards and Chess-men of Gold, As also large Golden Plates, on which

which the dead Bodies have been laid, (not unlike the *Bractei aurei* of some others of the Ancients.) Likewise Cloaths folded up, of the same Sort as those the Corps were dressed in. The Graves of the Poorer Sort have likewise such Things in them of Copper, and Brass, Arrows of Copper, and Iron, Stirrups, large and small polished Plates of Metal or Mirrours, with Characters upon them, eathern Urns of different Sizes, some almost two Foot high, others more, some with, and some without Handles. In short, a great many curious Antiquities have been found in these Places, of which I have made some Mention already, under the Title of *Antiquities*. About twenty or thirty Years ago, before the *Czar's* of *Russia* were acquainted with this Matter, the Governours of the Cities of *Tara*, *Tomskoi*, *Crasnoyabr*, *Batsamki*, *Isetskoe*, and others, used to give Leave to the Inhabitants, to go in voluntary *Caravans*, to these Tombs, in Order to ranack them, on Condition that of whatever they should find of Gold, Silver, Copper, Jewels, and other Things of Value, the Governour should have an Allowance, generally the Tenths. These Caravans, whenever they found any Thing of Value, used, for the easier dividing of their Booty, to knock to Pieces these choice Antiquities, and give to each Person his Share, by Weight. A Proof of this their Way of Proceeding is represented *Table V. Letter D.* which had been an Oblong polished Mirrour, made of Bell-metal, of which only this Piece came to my Sight. As to the Graves themselves, they are of different Structures; Some are only raised up of Earth, as high as Houses, and placed so near together, and in such Numbers, on the spacious Plains, that, at a Distance, they appear like a Ridge of Hills. Others are set round with rough-hewn Stones, and some with square Free-Stones, and are either of an oblong, or a triangular Form. In some Places these Tombs are entirely built of Stone. Hence we find in the ancient Maps of *Tartary the Greater*, a Number of Pyramids, with these Words, in Latin; viz. *The Pyramidal Sepulchres of the Tartarian Kings*, by which they must needs mean these Monuments, though they are not so properly Pyramids. Colonel *Kaniser*, who for several Years of his Captivity, had his Abode, in the City of *Jenisei*, told me, that the Ambassadors of the *Cbineje-Tartars*, (of whom

Men-

Mention is made in *Das Veränderte Rußland*, (p. 9.) and whole Expedition to the *Kalmuck Ajucki-Chan*, I shall give an Account of, in its proper Place,) in their Return Home, passing through that City, desired Leave of the then Governour, to visit the Graves of their Ancestors, but it was refused them : Not improbably, because they would have found almost all of them open'd rifled, and demolished. To give the Reader an Idea of a Situation like what I have been discoursing above, I have thought fit to annex to this Work, a Map of that which I met with near the little Town of *Abakan*, on the River *Jenisei*: See *Table II.* where A. represents the small Town and Fortrefs of *Abakan* B. the River *Jenisei*. C. the *Russian* Village *Torguschina*. D. The Tents of the *Arintzian Tartars*. E. The River *Sida* F. The small *Russian* Village called *Bizr*. G. The River *Kockt-zaga*. H. The River *Garba*. I. The River *Ktiescb*, which passes under and through the Hills. K. A large Hill, on the Top of which is placed a Stone, with the Figure of an Old Man cut in it. L. *Sepulchres* round this Hill. M. *Tombs* at the Foot of the several distant Tracks of Hills. N. A *Russian* Village called *Biellyk*. O. The Place where I and my Companions lodged, at the Time we took a Draught of the Stone, and the Situation of the Country. On this Occasion, I call to Mind, what Ancient Authors mention of the War between *Cyrus* and the *Scyths*, which latter always retreated; viz. That *Cyrus* ordered them to be asked, what was the Reason they would not keep their Ground; To which they answered: That there, they lost nothing by giving Way, but if he should come near the *Sepulchres of their Fathers*, he might then chance to see whether they could fight or not. I shall treat more at large of this Matter, under the Title of *Urns* and *Medals*. However, I cannot forbear taking Notice here, (1.) Of what *Arnkjel* relates, (P. II. p. 35.) of his *Funeral Rites of the Cimbrian Pagans*,) viz. That the *Cimbri* had not taken the Custom of burning their Dead from the *Greeks*, but from *Orbinus*; and, (2.) what *Torfeus* writes, (in his *Ser. Dynast. Reg. Dan. cap. VI. p. 130, and 144. in the Octavo Edition.*) That *Odinus* brought the first *Urns* into the Northern Regions, introduced there the Custom of burning the Dead, of putting the most valuable Things of the Deceased, into the

Grave,

Grave, with their Ashes, and to erect Monuments, and lay Stones, over the *Sepulchres* of the most Eminent Persons; He, on this Occasion, quotes *Stephanus*, in these Words, *Primitus unque defunctis iusta solvitur in campo plano, juxta Regiam, aut sancti prædium, circum miræ magnitudinis lapidibus efformabant, oblongum tamen viginti circiter orgyrum longitudine, latitudine trium. In hoc defuncti cremabant cadaver, cineres collectos arvis includebant ac in circi meditullio locatos, grandibus undique stipabant lapidibus, arena glebaque terrestri replebant, ac in formam anteculi desuper collem exstruebant.* In the Place delineated in *Tab. II.* I found every Thing correspond with this Description, both as to the Stones and the Dimensions, only with this Difference, that here at each Corner were Stones higher and broader than the others, and had Characters cut in them. See *Tab. XI.* and *Figure A. B. C. D.* It was easy to take an exact View of the Sand, the burnt Ground, and the Circles, because the *Russians* had already opened the Graves, and discovered the Insides of them. These Graves are so deep in the Ground, that looking down, they appeared to me of as great a Depth, as if I had look'd down from the Top of a high House, to the Bottom of the lowest Cellar. Had it not been Winter, and so excessive cold and full of Snow, at the Time, when I visited this Place, I should have adventured to have been let down into one of these Pits. In the mean Time, as I was walking round the Top of the Earth, which was thrown up about one of these Graves, with the *Swedish* Lad, of whom I have spoke above, the Wind having pretty well cleared the Snow away, he found, on the Ground, a little Piece of Gold, about one fourth of an Ounce in Weight; Which shews, in some Measure, how carelessly those who opened these Graves went to work with their Gold; Which likewise answers what has been said above, concerning the opening of these *Sepulchres*; And to what I there said about the Things which were taken out of them, made of Metal, Copper, Iron, &c. I have here to add, that the Arms, Swords, Arrows, Daggers, and the like, which the *Russians* dug out of these Places, were not forged, but cast, of Copper, especially Swords, which were shaped much like our Bayonets and Hangers. The same is affirmed, of the *Cimbrian* Graves, by the Author of *The Remarks*

marks on the Cimbrian Antiquities, in Holstein, (printed at Hamburg, 1728, Page 154, and 155.) As to the modern way of burning the Bodies of the Dead, among the *Chinese Tartars*, and the Ceremonies that were observed by the Embassy, at the Funeral of one of their Comrades, who died on the Road, near *Samarow*, not far from *Tobolsky*, I shall give an Account thereof, in a proper Place.

GREY FURS. So the Skins of Squirrels, and whatever is made of them, are call'd. The *Siberian* Squirrels, which are dark-gray, are larger, stronger, and have longer Hair, than those of other Provinces, which are of light-gray Colour, and are cheaper. The Skin of this little Animal is divided into four Parts: First, The Back cut into two, of which the lower Part is the best. (2.) The Upper Part of the Back. (3.) The Belly, which is either white, or else chequered, grey and white. (4.) The Head and Ears, which are the worst of all. Those Squirrels which are caught in *Summer* Time, have thin red Hair, and the Skins of them are not durable.

GRIWNA, Is a *Russian* Silver Coin, equal to ten *Kopeiks* and ten *Griwna's* go to a *Rubel*. The Signification of the Word is as much as a Locket for the Neck, because in former Times, the People used to wear Medals, and Portraits, about the Neck, which were called *Griwna*.

GUBA-MANGAZEISKO, or TASOWSKAJA, Is a great Lake, of six Day's Journey in Length, and one and a half in Breadth, into which the River *Oby* discharges itself, and was formerly called, by those who used to travel to *Weigatz, Sinus Dulcis*. It ebbs and flows, and the *Russians* have navigated this Lake, along the *Southern* Coast of it, from the Mouth of the River *Nadim*, to that of the River *Taj*s. From the Mouth of this last River, upwards, there is situated a Town called *Starra Mangazeia*, which 'till lately, was inhabited by *Russians*, who, on Account of the excessive Coldness of the Climate, were obliged to remove thence to New *Mangazeia*, near the River *Jenisei*. The Word *Guba* signifies properly a Sponge. And the *Russians* have given this Lake that Name, because it receives several Rivers, (as all Bays and Gulfs do) like a Sponge that sucks up the Water, it is applied to. The Ice, in this Lake,
never

never breaks, 'till the Middle of *June*, and sometimes later; Which is not only confirmed by the several Accounts of Travellers, but appears plainly by the *Siberian Rivers*, *Tobol*, *Irtisch*, *Oby*, *Jenisei*, and others, which, from the Beginning of *May*, to the End of *June*, swell extremely high, and overflow their Banks, Insomuch that the small Brooks, which run through the lower Part of the City of *Tobolsky*, some Years, rise so high, that they enter into the Houses, and the Inhabitants are obliged to make Use of Boats to go from one House to another. But as soon as the Ice of the Lake, and of the Mouth of the River *Oby* breaks, the Water falls by Degrees, and the Streams grow less; And this may be most accurately observed, near the City of *Tobolsky*, by fixing every Day fresh Marks on the shallow Banks of the River *Irtisch*. What I have said in this Place, may be compared with the *Antient and Modern History of Greenland*, by E. G. *Zorgdrager*, (from Page 164, to 174) where the Author relates, from *Heemskerk*, that no Ice has been seen, in the Month of *March*, in the open Sea, on the North-Side of *Nova Zembla*, when, on the South-Side, near the Coast of *Tartary*, or *Siberia*, the Sea has been all covered with it; Which, according to that Account, is said to be brought thither from the Rivers of *Tartary*, and the Coast of *Siberia*.

GULO, in the *Russian* Tongue, *Rossomack*, Is an Animal, call'd in *England*, by the Name of *Hyena*. They are very common in *Russia*, the Skins which come from *Siberia* are the best. The most beautiful, which are rather the blackish, than the light-brown, may be bought, near the River *Oby*, at the first Hand, for a Rixdollar and a half. There goes a Report of this Animal (which is a very greedy one) that when it has overgorg'd itself, it gets between two Trees, that stand near together, and forces out what it has devour'd.

GUMMANISSUM, or *Scherkest*. These are Names for *Manna*, amongst the *Tartars* and *Bucharians*, who bring it frequently to Market to the City of *Tobolsky*, from the Country of the *Kalmucks* and *Bucharians*. This *Manna* is found upon a certain Grass, and in particular Places of the large Deserts, and must be gather'd before Sun-rising; For if the Sun shines upon it, it melts away. It likewise melts in any one's Mouth, is sweet, and

has a Taste like Sugar and Flour mixt together; Of a grayish, and some of a whitish Colour; It is found in Grains, of an irregular Form, some bigger, some less, about the Size of small Pease. Probably this is the same Sort of *Manna*, which is gather'd from a certain Vegetable in *Perfia* and *Egypt*. This Account of *Manna* is likewise given by *Olearius*, in his Appendix to the Travels of *George Anderson*, (who, with his Companion *Austin*, pursu'd his Way from the *Chinese Tartary*, through the Deserts, into the Territories of the *Usbecks*,) where the Reader will find it; But I do not just remember the Page. *Taverner* takes, likewise, Notice of it, as does *Quintus Curtius*, in his fourth Book (89).

GUN-POWDER. This is deliver'd into the *Czar's* Magazines, at so small a Rate as sixty *Kopeiks*, per *Pud*, or forty Pound Weight, (*Which is not full a Penny a Pound.*)

H.

HALCYON or *Alcion*, the *King's-Fisher*, Is a Bird found in *Siberia*, near the Rivers *Jenisei*, *Oby* and *Tomber*, almost of the Size of a *Wheat-Ear*, and has most beautiful green Feathers.

HARES. In the *Northern* Countries, as *Norway*, *Sweden*, and *Russia*, the *Hares* are gray in the Summer, and in the Winter white as Snow. The best and largest are found about *Tomskoy*, and *Jenisei*, in *Siberia*. The Skins are so cheap, that, at the first Hand, a Hundred of them may be purchased for a *Rubel* and a half, or less. In the Year 1722, I met with a Merchant, in the City of *Jenisei*, who, on Account of Trade, had taken a Journey into *Siberia*, from the *Russian* City of *Wologda*. This Merchant bought Twenty Thousand Hare-Skins to carry to *Archangel*, in Order to be transported to *Holland*, and other Parts. On the *East* Side of the River *Volga*, in the *Kalmuckian* Deserts, towards the *Caspian* Sea, are a Species of *Hares*, call'd flying *Hares*; These have, indeed, Heads and Ears like other *Hares*; But their fore Legs do not exceed half the Length of a Finger,

Finger, whilst their hind Legs are above four Times so long ; Their Tails are like the Tail of a Rat, about twelve Inches long, at the End of which, for about the Length of one's Finger, grows long white Hair, turning backwards, like the Beard of an Arrow, or Fish-hook, and the tip of their Tails are black ; When they run, they raise themselves on their hind Legs, and, with a Spring, jump oftentimes, above ten Yards, and this they continue, with so much Swiftness, that it is impossible for the Eye to distinguish it from flying. The *Kalmucks* hunt and eat them.

HART. There are in *Siberia*, nine Species of the *Hart*-Kind: 1. *Irbisch*, the Great Stag. 2. *Isubriffin*, the Red Deer. 3. *Cosa*, the Roebuck. 4. *Cabarda*, the Musk Deer. 5. *Sfeiga*, the Fallow Deer. 6. *Tackia*, the Shamoy. 7. *Argali*, the Wild Goat. 8. *Lofs* or *Suchata*, the Elk. 9. *Olen*, the Reindeer. These two last are found in the *Northern*, the others in the *Southern* Parts of *Siberia*.

HELIOTROPIMUM, or *Hellebore*, grows in many Places in *Siberia*, especially near the River *Oby*.

HIEROGLYPHICAL FIGURES are a Kind of Emblematical Characters, bearing a secret Meaning ; Such were those used by the *Egyptians*, in which they wrapt up the Mysteries of their Religion ; But as I have already touch'd upon this Matter, under the Titles of *Antiquities* and *Characters*, where I have made Mention of an indelible red Colour, with which the *Icelanders* formerly painted Bones of Animals and Fishes, and of the like found upon Rocks in the Province of *Permia*, and farther up in *Siberia*, near the River *Jenejei*, I shall here treat of a different Kind of Characters, such as are found near the Source of the River *Irbyth*, which discharges itself into the River *Nytza*, as that does into the River *Tura*, between the Cities of *Japantzin* and *Tumen* ; But, before I proceed to give a Description of these Figures, I cannot forbear taking Notice here of a Curious Stone presented to me at *Muscow*, by a worthy Friend. This Stone is a dark-green Marble, or rather a Piece of opaque Jasper, (the like of which is plentifully found in the Province of *Dauria*, about *Argun*) it is finely polish'd, of an Oval Shape, not much bigger than a Crown Piece, and about an Inch thick,

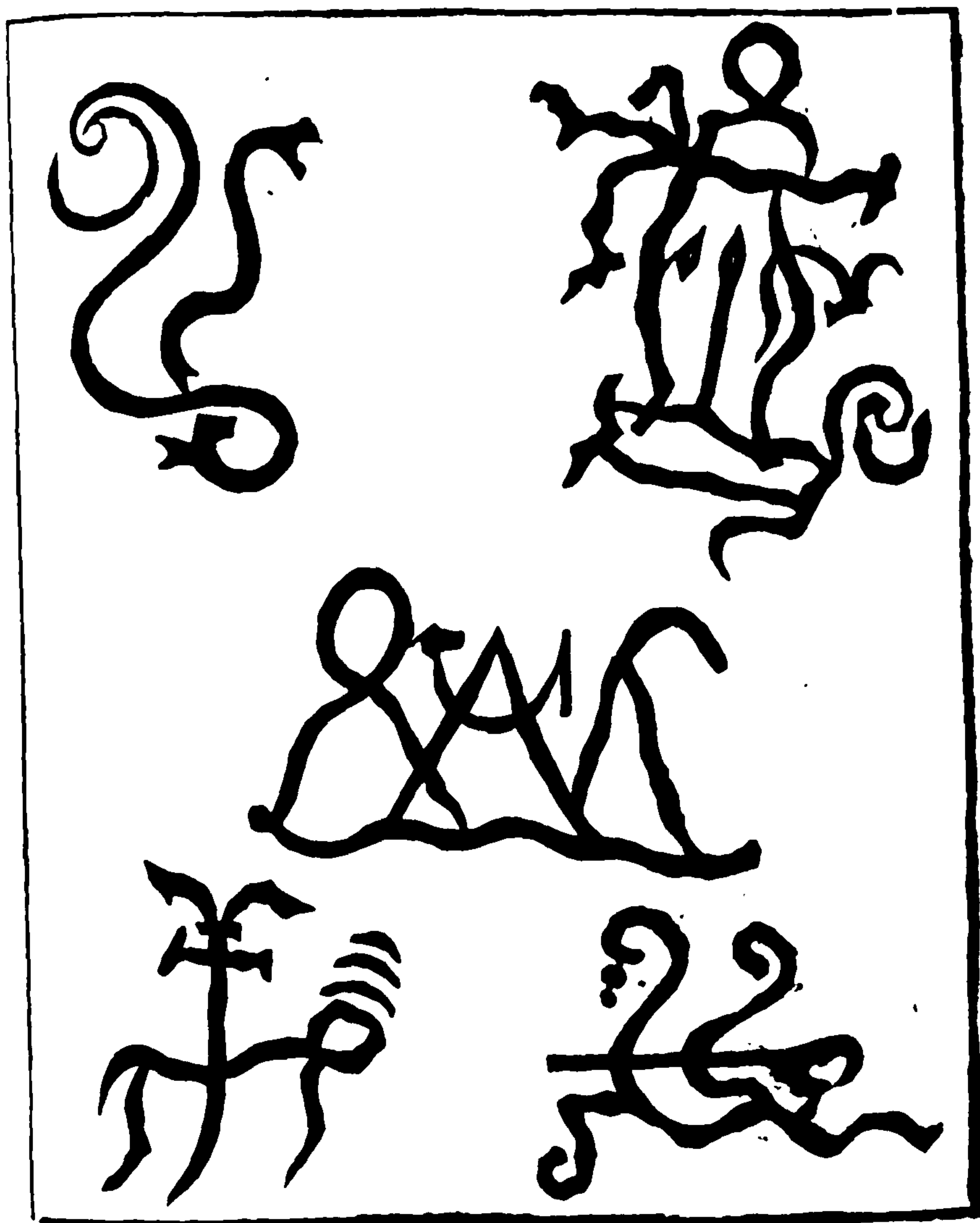
representing a very curious Tortoise, on the Belly of which (being flat) there was an Inscription in *Arabick* Characters; I took this to be an *Arabian* Hieroglyphical Figure: Little thinking, that, at my Return from the *Russian* Captivity, I should commit any Thing, of this Kind, to the Press, I made a Present of this Piece of Curiosity to the Right Reverend, and Most Learned Bishop, and Doctor, *Bentzelius*, who perhaps may, one Time or other, oblige the Publick with an Account of it, in the *Acta Eruditorum*. As to the *Hieroglyphicks*, which the Country near the River *Irbyth* affords, the Reader may see them delineated in *Tab. XIII, XIV, XV, XVI*. Not being Antiquary enough to give the Curious a satisfactory Account concerning these Figures,

T A B. XIII.

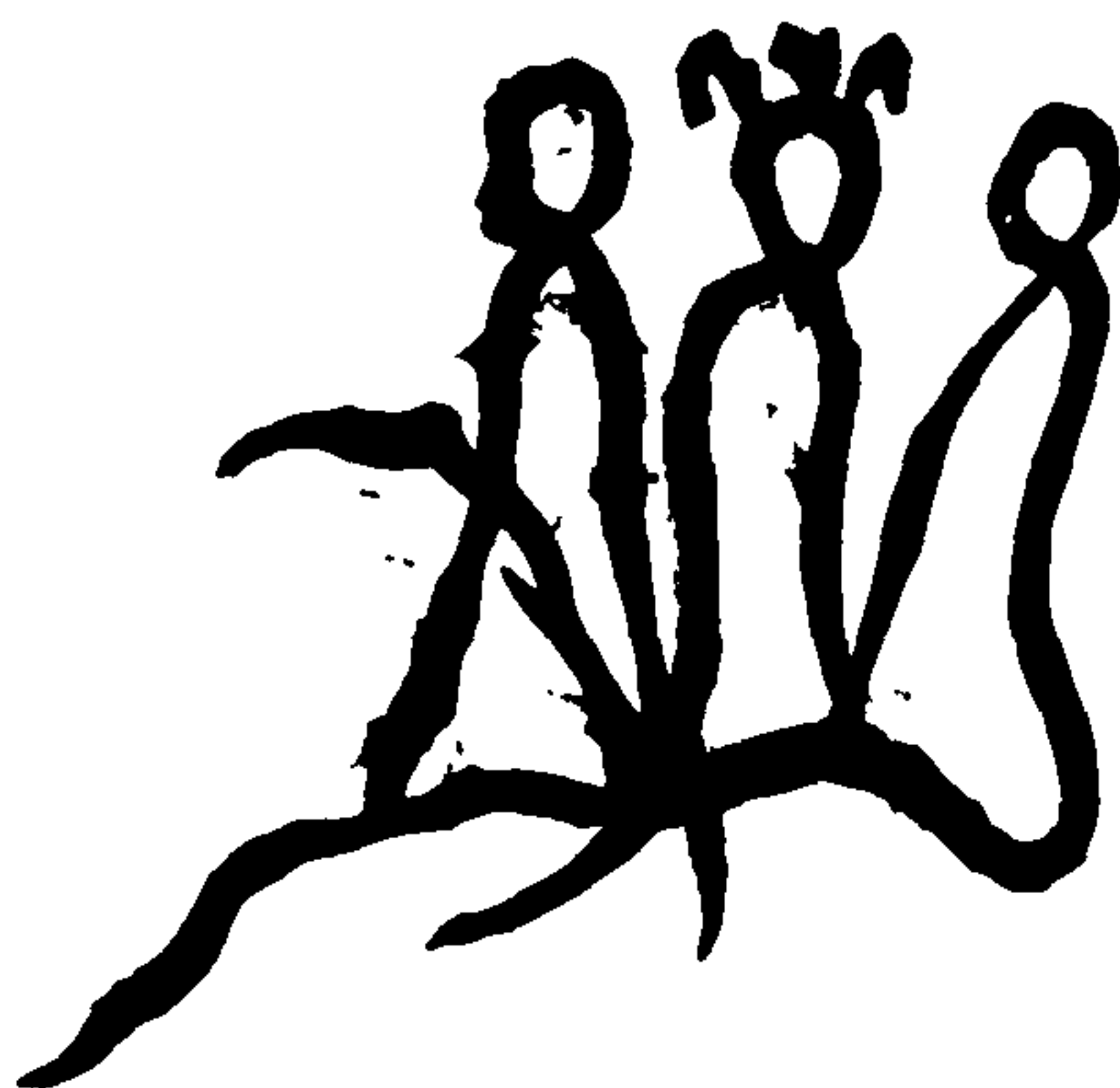
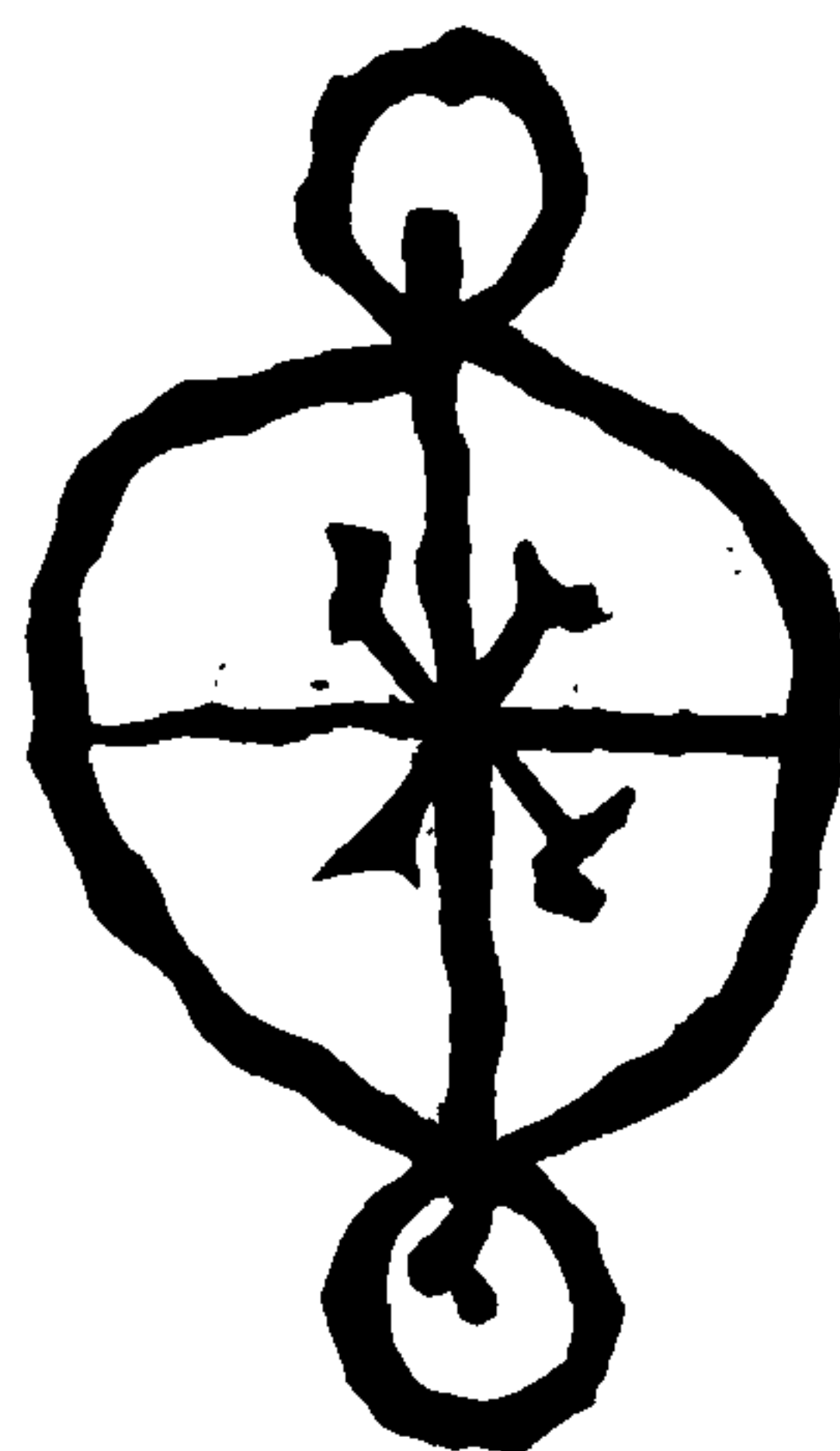


gures, I refer the Reader to *Matth. Bel. de Vet. lit. Hunn. Scyth.*
 p. 15. where the Author has these Words: *Miratus ego saepe fui*
Europæos idiotas, (nempe in Hungaria) istis, quibus aliquid credi-
dere bujuginodi ficto Characterè inter Debitores non adscribere tantum,
sed longioris etiam temporis intervallo post, non secus, quam si alpba-
betbario

T A B. XIV.

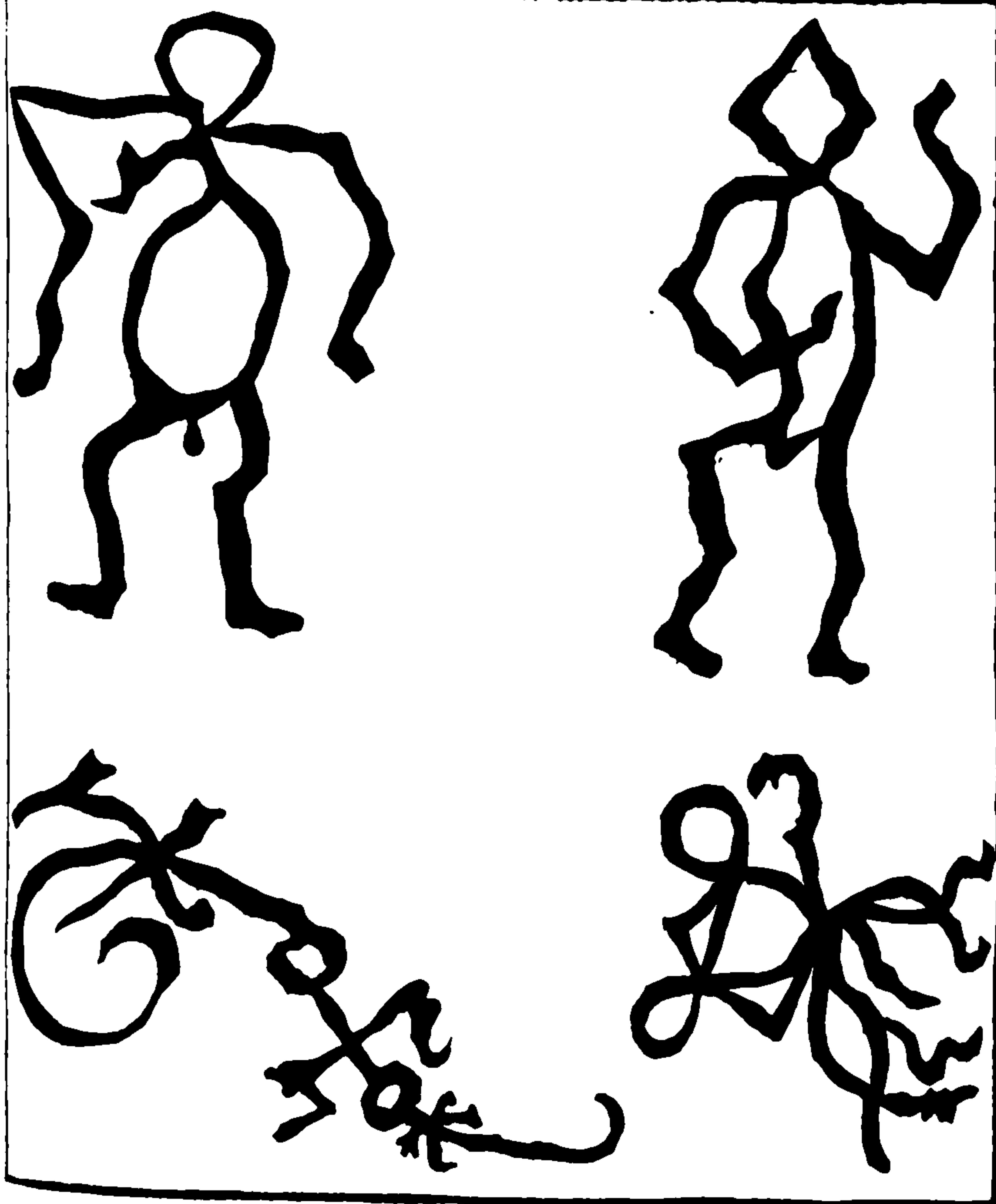


T A B. XV.



betario Scribendi genere adnotati fuissent, promere, debitamque
 immam & rationes indicare potuisse; ita, si debitor miles est, rudi
 quadam linea frameam aut pugionem pingebant, si faber, malleum
 aut securim; Si auriga flagrum, atque sic porro. Kircher's *Cbina*
Illustrata (Part. VI. Cap. II, III, and VI. Page 128, 129, and
 229, 235.) deserves likewise to be consulted upon this Head,
 where the Reader will meet with some Figures, not unlike
 some

T A B. XVI.



some of mine; especially if they compare *Fig. X. Page 129, of Kircher*, with mine in *Table XV. Numb. 17.* And *Fig. F. Page 222, of Kircher*, with my Number 16. in *Table XV.* * *Kircher* says that those are the most ancient *Cbinese* Characters, if so, it very much confirms what *Monfieur Petit de la Croix* tells us (in his *Gengbizcan*, p. 83.) viz. that the *Cbinese*, in ancient Times, sent Colonies into *Tartary* and *Scythia*, which in Process of Time became natural *Scythians*. The Rock from whence these Characters are taken, is about six and thirty Foot high, three Sides of it standing from the River. *Table XIII.* is the *East-Side*, *Table XIV.* and *XV.* the *South-Side*, and *Table XVI.* the *West-Side*. Some of these Figures are about six Inches long, others shorter, of a red Colour, burnt into the Rock, as I have observed under the Title of *Characters*. On one Side of this Rock, are some Tombs, and the Rock thereabouts is so broke, or cut away, or else so fram'd by Nature, that it serves as a Roof to these Sepulchres. In short, I look upon this to be as fine a Piece of Antiquity, as is any where to be met with; Of which, if I had examin'd it more particularly, during my Stay in that Place, the Reader should have had a more accurate Description. But considering what little Hopes I had, at that Time, of ever informing the Curious in *Europe*, with these remarkable Things; and, on the other Hand, the little Time I could spare from my Geographical Labours, I hope I have done enough in giving here the Figures, and mentioning the Places where they are to be found, leaving a more nice Enquiry to others. In comparing the Account of *Kircher*, concerning these *Hieroglyphicks*, with that of *Monfieur La Croix*, I find one Thing dubious, viz. *La Croix*, (in his History of *Timur-Beck*, T. II.) takes Notice that the Great *Tamerlan* pursued his March through *Siberia*, over the River *Irtisch*, as far as the little *Bucharia*, or the Kingdom of *Kaschgar*; On which Occasion he has the following Words, (*Page 69.*) of his History. *Les Emirs* (or the Generals of *Timur-Beck*) *s'arrêterent quelques jours en ce lieu, & ils traverserent la riviere pour graver leurs*

* I HAVE translated this Word for Word, according to the Original; Though I find neither *Numb. 16*, nor *17*, in *Tab. XV.*

leurs armes & leurs chiffres, rougis au feu, (90) sur les pins de ce bois, ce qu'ils ne firent, qu'à fin que l'on vit, dans le temps à venir, des marques de la venue de l'Armée de Timur sur les arbres des forêts de ses Ennemis, & des Assurances de leurs conquêtes au delà du fleuve d'Irtisch. But since there are found red Inscriptions in several other Places in Siberia, e. g. Near the River Pyschma, which likewise falls into the River Tura, between the Cities of Tumen and Toboll; Whence the Russians, when they came into that Country, gave it the Name of Pyschma, which signifies, in the Russian Tongue, Writing, though these red Characters are formed after a different Manner, as the Reader may see in Tab. XVII, and XVIII. yet it may be worthy our Consideration; whether these latter were not, as well as the former, done by some of Tamerlan's Army, and it seems as probable that the Characters of Table VIII. Fig. B. near the River Jenisei, had the same Original. If so, *La Croix*, instead of *Pins de ce Bois*, might have said better; *Rochers de ce fleuve*; And, indeed, in another Place of the same History, he speaks plainer, though in another Manner. (*viz.* Tom. II. Page 81.) *Timur y demeura tout le jour, & il ordonna aux soldats d'y porter des pierres, & en un moment il y fit lever un obélisque de la hauteur d'un minaret, & les Sculpteurs habiles y graverent la date de l'an & du jour que Timur y passoit, à la tête de son Armée, à fin que cette piece servit d'un monument durable à la Posterité.* I was told by the Russians in Siberia, that there was still a Pyramid, with an Inscription upon it, to be seen on Mount Ick, between the Rivers Ischim and Irtisch; But they could give me no Account of the Nature of the Figures. If Time, and the Opportunity of a Convoy, had served, it would have been worth while to have visited that Place; But without that Security, travelling through this Wilderness, where the *Cosaci-Orda* are always in Search of Booty, would have been very dangerous. In short, in these Places, and near the Mouth of the River Tobol, especially, are found many such like Antiquities and Curiosities, which well deserve to be copied.

C c c

T A B.

90, Which agrees with what has been said above, about the Bones in *Ireland*, and the Glass in the Windows of Ancient Churches.

ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय
ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय
ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय

HONY. This is so cheap in *Siberia*, that a *Pude*, or 40 *Russian Pounds* of the best white Hony, can be purchased for 70 or 80 *Kopeiks*, and sometimes for less.

HOPS. There grow wild *Hops* in *Siberia*, in great Plenty near the River *Ischim*, and other Rivers, which the *Russians* use in Brewing.

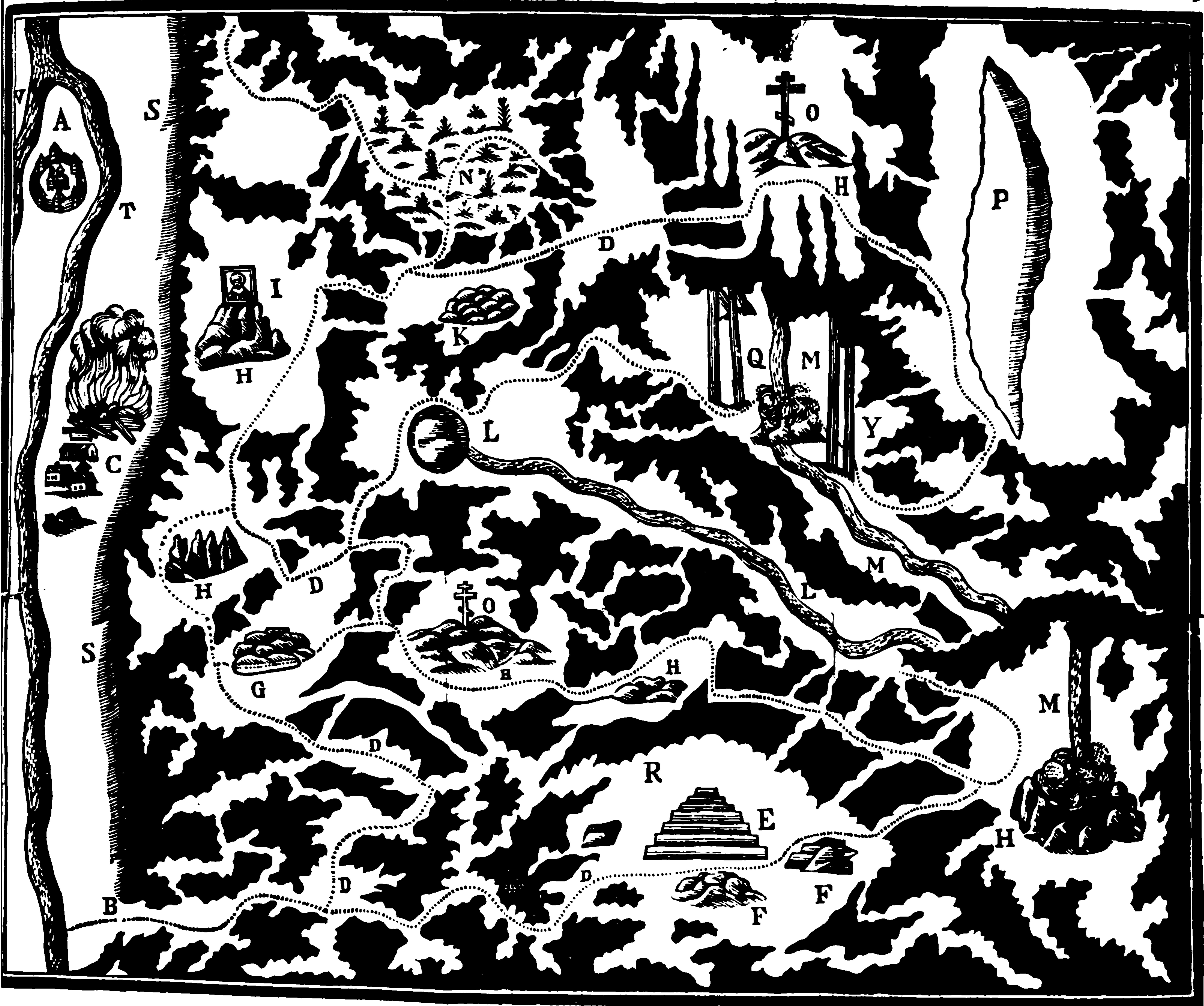
HORNS of Sword-Fishes are sometimes found near the Mouth of the River *Lena*, and at *Kamtshatki*. I have seen at *Tobolsk* one of those twisted Horns, which are often put in the Shop Windows of Druggists, three *Russian Ells* long. Besides these, a great many different Kinds of Horns of Animals are to be had in *Siberia*, of which divers curious Sorts of Workmanship are made. The *Swedish* Prisoners made there a sort of Tobacco-Horns, (or Boxes) as transparent almost as Glass itself.

HUNTING. The Manner of Hunting among the *Tartars* is represented in *Table III. Letter E.* and *Table IV.* where you see the same, on the Surface of an Urn, cut in two, and drawn as a Flat.

I.

JAKUTHI, Are a *Pagan* People, called so by the *Russians*; They are under the *Russian* Government, and live along the River *Lena*, and about the City of *Jakutskoi*; But they call themselves, in their own Tongue, *Zinzacha*, or *Zinzogotock*. This is one of the most numerous *Pagan* Nations in *Siberia*, and consists of the following Tribes. 1. *Boro-Ganiska*. 2. *Baitungski*. 3. *Bady's*. 4. *Jock-Soyon*. 5. *Menga*. 6. *Kangalas*. 7. *Namin*. 8. *Batbruski*. 9. *Lugoi*. 10. *Bohugur*. All which together, make about 30000 Men, who pay Scot and Lot. They call themselves *Zacha* (91), from the Name of one of their ancient Princes. But the Name of that Prince who headed them, at the Time when they separated from the *Bratti*, who live near the *Baikallian Lake*, with whom they were formerly united as one Nation, was *Deptzi Tarchan tegin*. They do not worship *Bell-wans*, or Idols carved in Wood, like the *Ostiaks* and *Tungusi*; But they offer Sacrifices to an invisible God in Heaven; Yet they have

(91) *Procopius, Lib. IV. c. 24. §. 4.* makes Mention of a People call'd *Zachi* or *Zach*.



have a Type or Image of that Deity stuffed out, with a monstrous Head, Eyes of Coral, and the Body like a Bag; This Image they hang upon a Tree, and round it the Furs of Sables and other Animals. Each Tribe has one of these Images. Their Priests, whom they call *Biubn*, make use of Drums, like the *Laplanders*; They worship the INVISIBLE GOD, under three different Denominations, *Artoyon*, *Schugotoygon*, and *Tangara*, which three Names are called by them *Sumans* (i. e. *Sacred*.) What *Isbrand Ides* (in his *Travels*, p. 132.) relates, concerning these People, is all true; Excepting the Custom of burying alive, or killing the oldest Servants, or Favourites of a Prince, at his Funeral, which is abolish'd (92); But they still own, that formerly, before the *Russians* were amongst them, they were used to do so. They have, besides, many superstitious Customs, in common with other Nations, which they celebrate about certain Trees, that they look upon to be sacred: When they meet with a fine Tree, they presently hang all Manner of Nick-Nacks about it, as Iron, Brass, Copper, &c. (93). Their Priests, or *Biubns*, when they perform their superstitious Rites, put on a Garment trim'd with Bits of Iron, Rattles and Bells (94). As soon as the Fields begin to be green, each Generation gathers together, at a Place where there is a fine Tree, and a pleasant Spot of Ground. There they sacrifice Horses and Oxen (as a New Year's Offering, their New Year beginning in April,) the Heads of which they stick up round the Trees, and on the Heads of the former they leave the Skin. They then take a certain Liquor, which they call *Cumijes*, sit down in a Circle, and after having lifted up the Jugg, with both Hands, they drink to one another: Then they dip a Brush in the *Cumijes* and sprinkle some in the Air, and some into the Fire, which they light up; on.

(92) Consult *Marcus Paulus*, with Respect to the Ceremonies observed at the Funerals of the *Tartarian* Kings; Where he says, that every Creature, which met the Corpse by the Way, was obliged to attend the deceased King to his Grave, and accompany him, for his Service and Retinue, into the other World. This the Author of *L'Histoire Generale des Tartars*, (p. 343) in his Notes, absolutely denies, and seems to give good Reasons for his Dissention. The *Tartarian* Author *Abulgasi-Chan* does not pretend to give a circumstantial Description of the Interrment of *Zingis-Chan*, his Design being rather to acquaint the Publick with the Genealogy, than with a large Historical Account of the *Tartars*.

(93) See my Introduction, Sect. V. §. VII.

(94) The *Samojeds* do the same. (Vid. *Veranderetes Russland*, p. 405)

on that Occasion (95). On this Festival, they get wretchedly drunk, and gorge themselves to that degree with Meat, that, it is said, four Persons will commonly devour a whole Horse. Nay, some will strip themselves stark naked, that nothing may confine or hinder them from extending their Paunches; This they continue so long, till some breath their last on the Spot. These People are very nasty; They seldom, or hardly ever, wash themselves; They will eat the Flesh of Oxen, Cows, and Horses, but no Pork, be they never so hungry: But then they never mind whether the Cattle be sick or sound; For they indifferently kill and eat it. If the Meat has had but one boiling up, it is done enough for them; they never skim the Pot, but look upon the Skum to be the fattest and best Part of all, and therefore distribute it about, as a great Dainty. The Vessels in which they stamp their dried Fish, Roots, and Berries, are made of dried Oxen and Cow's Dung. Their Cattle stand in the same Room, or Hut, where they themselves dwell; The Floor of their Huts is terrassed even and smooth. They eat Bread, when they can get it, but it is no usual Part of their Diet, because they neither Plough, Sow, nor Plant. They eat but little Salt, yet sometimes they take Salt in Exchange for other Commodities. They are fond of smoaking *Cbinese Schaar*, or Tobacco, for which they truck with the *Russians*. In *February* and *March* is their Harvest, when the Sap rises in the Trees; For then they go into the Woods, cut down young Pine-Trees, take off the inner Bark, or Bast, which they carry home and dry for their Winter's Provision. They then beat it to a fine Powder, boil it in Milk, and eat it together with dried Fish, also beat to Powder. They shift their Habitations, in the same Manner, as the *Tobolskian Tartars* do. Their Winter-Houses or Huts, are square, made of thin Planks and Beams; The Roof is covered with Earth, and a Hole is left, in the Middle, for the Smoak to go out. Their Summer-Dwellings are round, and in the Shape of a Sugar-Loaf; The Out-side Shell of these Hutts is made of the Bark of Birch-Trees, curiously joined together, and embroider'd with

(95) The ancient *Cimbri* were wont, when they sacrific'd to their Deities, and worshipp'd them, to keep a perpetual Fire. (See the *Religion of the Cimbrian Pagans* by Trogus Amiel.

with Horse-Hair died of many Colours. A Hole is also left at the Top, for the Smoak to pass through. They make their Chimnies or Fire-Places, in the Middle of their Huts, where they also fix a Pot-Hook to hang their Pots on, which they make themselves, as they also do their Kettles, which have only an Iron Bottom, the Sides being made of the Bark of Birch, which they have a Way of Joyning to that Iron Bottom so tight and close, that it will not only hold Water, but that the Flame of the Fire cannot burn it. They bury their Dead divers Ways: The most Eminent among them pitch upon a fine Tree (96), and declare that they will be buried there; And when the Corps is buried, they put some of the best Moveables of the deceased, along with him, into his Grave. Some only put the Corps upon a Board, which they fix upon four Posts, in the Wood, cover the dead Body with an Oxes or Horses Hide, and so leave it. Some again put the Body in the Ground. But the greater Part of them, when they dy, are left in their Huts, whence the Relations take the most valuable Things, make the Huts up close, and then leave them (97). Those who dy in the City of *Jakutskoi*, are left lying in the Streets, where they are frequently devoured by Dogs. Each Tribe of these People looks upon some particular Creature as Sacred, e. g. a Swan, Goose, Raven, &c. and such is not eaten by that Tribe, though the others may eat it. As to their Tongue, the Reader may see in my *Polyglott Table*, what Affinity there is between this and the Dialect of the *Crimm-Tartars*: He will also observe there some Conformity with the Tongues of the *Bratti*, the *Kirgasi*, and the *Sajantzian Tartars*; Though the last talk pretty commonly the *Mungalian* and *Kalmuckian* Tongues, to which Countries they are near Neighbours. The *Jakubti*, like other *Pagans*, allow of *Polygamy*. They buy and sell their Wives, as it is customary among the *Tartars* and *Ostiacks*, and all their Neighbours: Where the Bridegroom is obliged to purchase his Bride of her Parents. Thus I have given a short Description of this Nation, which I could have spun out to as great a Length, as the Author of *Das Veränderte Russland* has done his Account of the *Ostiacks*,
(Page

(96) See *Histoire Genealog. des Tartars*, p. 343.

(97) *Schæfferus*, in his *Laponia* affirms the same of the *Laplanders*.

(Page 173.) But my Design being rather to furnish the Reader with a Multiplicity of Matter, than a Profuseness of Words, I chuse to proceed to the City of,

JAKUTSKOI. This is the Capital of the Province of the same Name, near the River *Lena*, distant above a Hundred German Miles from the *Mare Glaciale*. There resides a Governour-General, who commands also all the Country, called *Kamtshatki*. The Soil about this City, notwithstanding it lies pretty far *North*, and towards the *Mare Glaciale*, produces Corn, whereas other Places, which ly *Westward* from this, yield none. However, the Inhabitants, who are more intent upon Hunting Sables, Foxes, and other Animals, for the Sake of their Furs, neglect cultivating what they call *Starri paschni Zalabn*, (*i. e.* the Land which their Forefathers used to plough.) Another Reason why they are remiss in this Point is, their having an Opportunity of being supplied with Corn, by Means of the Rivers *Wittim* and *Kiringa*, the Banks of which produce fine Corn, and which flow into a River, that passes by their City, and discharges itself into the *Sea*. But though very little Corn is sown in this Country, yet that which is, whatever Grain it be of, thrives apace; But the Straw never exceeds six Inches in Height; For as soon as the Corn peeps out of the Ground, it immediately shoots into Ears, and ripens in six Weeks Time. The Reason of this is, because here the Sun is hardly ever below the Horizon in Summer, but affords its cherishing Warmth, both Night and Day, to the Ground: And what is most observable, is, that, during that whole Time, it does not rain; But the Earth, though fat and black, yet never thaws above six or nine Inches deep: Insomuch that the Roots are plentifully supplied with Moisture from below, whilst the constant Heat of the Sun above irradiates what is out of the Ground; And this, I presume, is the Cause of so quick a Harvest; On the other Hand, those Places which are situated more *Westward*, do not enjoy this Advantage: The high Icy Mountains of the Island of *Nova Zembla* lying just opposite to them. Near and about the City of *Jakutski*, there are bred also very good Horses; they are pretty large, are used to be turned out all the Winter long, and will scrape the Snow with their Hoofs aside, to come at the Grass; They

They also eat the Buds of Birch and Aspen, and grow sleek, plump, and fat, and look much better, than they do in Summer, when their Hair grows long. Not far from this City, *Westward*, there runs a River called *Wilgui*, near the Head of which there is a *Vulcano*. The Ashes thrown up by this Mountain are looked upon to be the *Flores Salis Armeniaci*.

JASPER. There is in *Siberia*, in the Province of *Dauria*, near the City of *Argunskoy*, a considerable Mountain, which affords *Jasper*, partly of a deep, and partly of a pale green Colour; so hard, that no Steel Tool will touch it; But it may be ground and polished like a Looking-Glass. *Emperour Peter the First* had once a Design, to have some Columns made of this *Jasper*. Prince *Gagarin*, during the Stay of the *Swedish Captives* in *Tobolsky*, caused a good many round Stones to be ground of this *Jasper*, of the Size of Waistcoat-Buttons, which he had set in Gold, and afterwards ornamentally disposed upon the Trappings of a Saddle-Horse, which looked very grand and rich.

JENISEI or JENZA. This is one of the largest Rivers that runs thro' *Tartary* and *Siberia*; It extends itself, from its Source to its Mouth, One Thousand Six Hundred *English Miles* in Length. I could never learn the Signification of the Name of this great River, the Word being neither *Sclavonian* nor *Russian*; Nor do the *Tartars*, who live on the Banks of it, near its Source, give it the Name of *Jenisei*, but call it *Kemm*. However, the Word *Jenisei* signifying, in the *Tartarian* and *Turkish* Tongues, *to swell*, or *to over-flow*, and this River overflowing the Land, every Spring, towards its Mouth, on both Sides, for several Miles, it is not unlikely that it had the Name *Jenisei* from thence (98): For *Sai* or *Sei* signifies a *Rocky River*, where there are Water-falls, and having a rapid Current; And *Jenie*, denotes spreading, swelling; e.g. The Rivers *Jaxartes* and *Cheseldaria*, are also called, near their Sources, *Dsai* or *Djeihun*: Now the River *Jenisei*, near its Springs, between the Town of *Abakan* and the River *Kemtschyk*, is not only stony and rocky, but has above ten *Potroggs*, or *Cataracts*; As it has,

D d d

like-

(98) See my Introduction, Sect. III. §. XXIX. where Mention is made of the Word *Jenisei*.

likewise, between the Cities of *Crasnoyabr* and *Jenisei*, not far from *Kemskoi Ostrock*. Whence it comes, that this River, from the Town of *Abakan*, towards its Source, into *Mungalia*, is not Navigable, which otherwise would much shorten and facilitate the Way, through *Mungalia* into *China*, and render that Trade much more easy, as well as profitable. This River, on Account of its stony Bottom, yields no Fish, 'till below the City of *Jenisei*, and after it has received the Rivers *Angara* and *Tungus*, which causes annually a great Number of Vessels from this City, and others, to go down so far as *Nova Mungaseia*, in Order to catch, and salt Fish. At this City, the River is one *Werst*, or One Thousand Five Hundred Paces over; From which the Reader may judge of its vast Breadth downwards, near the Sea, after it has swallow'd up so many large Rivers. The Mouth of this River, where it falls into the *Mare Glaciale*, especially on the left Side, near the Lake call'd *Guba Mangaseiska*, has not yet been discover'd by the *Russians*, partly on Account of the excessive Cold, partly for Fear of the Savage *Samojeds*, who dwell thereabouts.

JESCHERITS, Is a Kind of Distemper, peculiar to the *Russians*, who live in the utmost Parts of *Siberia*, between *Tomskoi* and *Kusnetsko*; The Tip of their Tongue begins to rot, without any Pain, and this Mortification runs gradually, 'till it gets into the Throat, and (they not knowing of any Remedy to put a stop to this Evil) it kills them in the End.

IRBYTH, Is a small Town in *Siberia*, near the little River *Irbyth*, between *Tobolsky* and *Werkoturja*. In this Place, a very great Fair is kept, yearly, beginning the second of *January*, and continuing 'till the first of *February*; Whither many Hundreds of Merchants, from all Parts of *Russia* resort, as well as *Tartars*, *Bucharians*, and many more Nations.

IRTISH, Is a large River, which has its Rise, in the Country of the *Kalmucks*: It passes through great Part of *Siberia*, and near the City of *Tobolsky* it unites itself with the River *Toboll*; The *East Tartars* and *Mungals* call this River *Uardusch* (99): It is worthy of Consideration, whether this River

be

(99) See *l'Hist. de Timur Beck*, Tom. II. p. 43. & 44.

be not, perhaps, the River *Oecbardus*, of *Ptolemy*, which he calls *Sericae Regionis Fluvium*, and *Marius Niger* names *Tartar*? (See *Dictionary. Car. Stephan. Page 1460.*) And I have already shewn, in several Places, that the People call'd *Seres*, are not to be look'd for among the *Chinese*, but among the *Tartars* and *Scyth*s.

IRON. The *Siberian Iron* is twice as good, as that which is found in *Russia*; Which last, for the most Part, is extracted from a red moory Earth; And though some Iron Ore is found in divers Places in *Russia*, yet is it not to be compar'd to that which *Siberia* affords.

IRON WORKS. There are many *Iron-Fabricks* in *Russia*; For Instance, (1.) Near the City of *Tula*, where annually Twenty Thousand Muskets, and Ten Thousand Pair of Pistols are made; Besides other Iron-work, which is deliver'd from thence to the Admiralty of *Petersburg*, to which it belongs. (2.) There are Iron-works about the City of *Weronitz*. (3.) In *Carelia* are the *Petrowka*, *Ustroka* and *Alexei*, *Sawods* or *Fabricks*, which last is distant from the Sea, about sixty *Wersts*. In the first of these three Works, there is daily one Cannon cast, and annually Twelve Thousand Muskets, and Six Thousand Pair of Pistols finish'd, besides Anchors, and other Iron-works, for the Use of the Navy. (4.) Near the City of *Muscow*, are the Iron-works of *Nariskin* and *Muller*. (5.) Near the City of *Occa* are the Works of *Pawlowki*, belonging to the *Knies Czerkaski*. Here are not only very nice Fire-Arms, but all Manner of other neat and curious Things made of Iron; This City being inhabited chiefly by Smiths, whose Apprentices are sent abroad to retail all Sorts of Iron Wares; Among other Things, they make a Kind of small Locks, very neatly work'd, with Keys to them; Some no bigger than a Pea, others of the Bigness of a Kidney-Bean: These they commonly sell for half a *Rubel* a Dozen. (6.) There are also Iron-works near the City of *Galitsb*, and in other Places. Besides these, there are not a less, but rather a greater Number of Iron-works in *Siberia*, and about the City of *Konguer*; The Names of which, I cannot call to Mind; But above all, that of *Catbarinenburg* is the best contrived, and best managed Fabrick; Of which I have taken Notice above.

IRON MINES. None of the *Siberian Iron Mines* were open'd, before the Beginning of this Century.

ISING-GLASS, or *Carluck*, in the *Russian* Tongue, *Kley-Ribey* is brought from *Russia*, as well as *Hungary*: It is made of the Bladder of the Fish *Beluga*; The best Sort is that which is roll'd up in long Rolls; The other Sort is press'd into Cakes. Some make it also of the Sturgeon or *Seuringa*; But this is not near so good, and may easily be known from the other, that being smooth and white, this, on the contrary, yellowish, and full of Cracks *.

JUCHT, Is a Sort of *Muscovian* Leather, which goes by the Name of *Russia* Leather, having a peculiar Smell. There is of it both red and black. The Signification of the Name is a *Pair*, because there are always two Hides laid together. It is also customary to say a *Jucht* of Corn, (*i. e.* two Measures,) either of one, or two different Grains, as a Measure of Rye, and the other of Oats. The *Russians* call this Leather likewise *Jalouischnaja Koscha*, which signifies an *Oxes Hide*. The *Tartars* call it *Bulgarie*, probably because they may first have had this Sort of Leather from that Country. There is no Country where these *Juchts* are made so well, as in *Russia*, and the best of all are the *Jarislawlian*. It has been attempted, in several Places, to imitate this Leather, and Natives of *Russia* have been employ'd, and furnish'd with all the necessary Materials for this Purpose; But though they have succeeded in all other Respects, yet they never could come up to the Smell, which is only permanent, in the true *Russian Juchts*.

JUKAGIRI, *Jukagri*, or *Jukairi* (of whom *Das Veränderte Rußland* just mentions a few Words, *Page 405*,) is a *Pagan* Nation, near the *Mare Glaciale*, between the Mouth of the River *Lena*, and the Promontory of *Tabin*, otherwise call'd *Swetois Nos*. One of the *Jakubti* told me, that the Speech of these People was exactly like the Gabbling of Geese. *Forbeisseur*, in his Travels, says the same of three Savages, which some *English* Commanders brought away from *Streight Davis*; viz. That they had made such a Gabbling, and utter'd nothing but inar-

* I HAVE seen Isinglass made in *Germany*, particularly on the *Elbe*, of the inward Skin of the only Gut a Sturgeon has, which runs from its *Proboscis*, to its Navel.

inarticulate Sounds, except these two Words, *Oxa indeeba*. The People who inhabited the Island which lies between the River *Lena* and *Szwetoi Nos*, or, as the *Russians* call it, *Nos Tschalatskoi* and *Anadirskoi*, are call'd by the *Jukagiri*, and *Jakutbi*, by the Name of *Eidigani*, which Island I have not pointed out in my Map. These *Jukagiri* hang their Dead on Trees, but the Skeletons, or Bones of their Parents and Relations, they afterwards carry along with them, when they go a Hunting. This agrees with what *Das Veränderte Rußland* (Page 403.) affirms of the *Samojeds*, who never inter the Bones of their Parents.

K.

KAFFTAN, Is a *Tartarian* Word, and signifies, among the *Russians*, a Coat, whether short or long; And *Polukafftanie* signifies a *Waistcoat*.

KALL-ATSCHI, or *Kall-atzi*, Is, in *Russia*, a Kind of *Wheaten Bread*, made of different Sizes. These Loaves are of an Oval Form, and some almost two Foot long. This put me in Mind of a Sort of Pastry, which the People in *Lower Saxony*, and in the Island of *Rugen*, make, at a certain Time of the Year; The Inside of which they fill with several Ingredients, then put it into Boiling Water, and let it boil till it is enough; And this they call *Tall-atzi* or *Tallatschen*, which Name is doubtless a Corruption of *Kall-atzi*. The Reader may remember what has been said in the *Introduction*, (Sect. IV. Par. V.) about the Name and People, call'd *Kallatzes*; viz. that the Word *Atz* signifies, in the *Tartarian* and *Turkish* Tongues, *Hungry*, and *Kall* or *Chall* to remain, or stay behind, where I have cited, from the *Hist. Genealog. des Tartars*, (p. 56.) a Passage to this Purpose: That *Ogus Chan* had order'd a certain Quantity of Provision to be distributed among a certain Number of People, left behind in his March to *India*, who had endured very great Want, and were, on that Account call'd *Kall-atzi* or *Koll-atschi*, that is, the forsaken Hungry, of which Generation, it is said, there are still some in Being in *Chorasan*. Now it is likely, that this Provision was made up into a Sort of Loaves, for the Convenience of giving

giving each Man his Proportion, and thence the *Russians* and *Vandals* may have retain'd the Name *Kall-atzi* or *Kall-atfchi*, which, with them, is in Use to this Day. This Conjecture will appear the more probable, if it be considered, what I have shewn, by many Examples, (*Seet. IV. §. V. of the Introduction*) that in *Germany*, *Sweden*, and other *European* Countries, many ancient *Persian* and *Turkish* Words are used. To confirm this still more, I shall here add the following : *Kapmack*, in *Turkish*, signifies to *Rob*, to *Plunder* ; In *Lower Saxony* they say, he is *Kap*, or *Kabl*, or *Kaput*, (i. e. *he is stript bare*, or *undone*.) *Ga* or *Jabacki*, in *Turkish*, signifies a *Fork*, the *Germans* call it *Gabel*. *Firib*, in *Turkish*, is, in *Latin*, *Fur*, a *Thief*. *Geweze*, signifies, in the *German*, *Gewäsch*, (i. e. *Tittle-Tattle*.) *Ætyk* a *Noble Family* ; In the *Swedish* and *Gotbick*, it is call'd *Æib*. *Desne*, in *German*, *Degen*, a *Sword*. *Feger* signifies *Honour*, *Dignity* ; *Feger*, in *Swedish* and *Gotbick*, denotes *pretty*, *vertuous*, *graceful* ; *Embar*, a *Granary*, the *Russians* use this very Word to denote a *Pantry* ; *Cbalck* is *People*, and seems to have some Affinity with the *German* Word *Volck*, (*Engl. Folk*) *Feda*, a *Vow*, and *Fida*, *devout*, is not very different from the *Latin* *Fides*. *Oelemek*, to *Measure*, hence the *German* Word *Elle*, (*English Ell*,) may take its Origin. *Peik*, a *Servant*, is the same with the *Swedish* *Peuke-Bön*, an *awkward*, *unbandy Creature*, and the *Swedish* Word, *Bonde*, signifies a *Boor*, or *Peasant*. *Cumm*, in *Turkish* and *Tartarian*, signifies a *Plain* or *Sandy Desert*, where no *Grass* grows: For Example, *Ara-Cum*, and *Cara-cum*, whence probably the *Cumans* or *Cubanes*, who formerly lived in large open Fields, received their Names. There seems even some Affinity to be between this Word, and the *Latin* Word, *Campus* ; For if we consult *Beckman*, (*de Origin. Lat. ling. Hannov. 1619, p. 249.*) we find that by the Word *Campus* is understood a *Sandy Place*, where they used to fight, or wrestle. To this very Day, when the *Kalmucks* fight or wrestle half-naked, to divert their *Cban*, they first of all throw two, three, or more Handfuls of Sand into the Air. *Karmack*, signifies in *Turkish*, to dig up, which does not differ very much from *Kazematts*, a Term we use in Fortification. *Ogblan* signifies the same as the *German* Word *Jungling*, i. e. a *Youngster* or *Youth*.

Youth. *Ghawwi, Gbarwi*, in *Latin*, *Vagus, Vagabundus*. *Heden*, is, in the *German Language*, *Gehege, Hagen*, and *Hecke*; (i. e. a *Hedge*.) *Djem* or *Djen*, a *Persian Word*, signifies a *Multitude*, or *Concourse of People*; And in the old *Teutonick*, *Send*, signifies a *Synod*, whence the *Learned Gundling* derives the Compound-Word *Semper-frey*, from the Word *Sendbaar*. *Böluck*, in *Russian*, *Polco*, a *Regiment* or *Troop*; *Rubeck* (in his *Atlantica* T. I. p. 119,) says, That *Burr* signifies, in the *Ancient Gotbick*, *Heaven*, or the *Kingdom of the Gods*, and the *Kalmucks* call *God of Heaven*, *Burr-Chan*. *Plin.* (Lib. VI. cap. 26.) says *Schænos*, is a *Kind of Measure*, of sixty *Stadia*, (confer. etiam *Guil. Burton, Lips. de Orig. Ling. Pers.* p. 31.) Among the *Permecks* and *Laplanders*, *Schæmkas* and *Schænas* is a *Mile*, which they reckon equal to three Times the Distance from the *Eye*, to the *Extremity of the visible Horizon*. See *Schæffer's Lapponia*. The *Persian Word*, *Wadi*, is the letting of *Water* overflow the *Meadows* and *Fields*, (which *Waters* are but *shallow*.) This seems to have some *Affinity* with the *German Word* *Waden*, or *Dutch Waaden*, and the *English* to *Wade*, or *Wade through*. The *Turkish Word*, *Marke*, denotes a *Place where People Assemble*, and more particularly where *Soldiers* are encamp'd, and *Markas* signifies the *Center*; Whence, not improbably, the *German Word* *Marckt*, and the *English*, *Market*. There was formerly an entire *Tribe* among the *Kalmucks* and *Mungals*, call'd *Markæts*, of whom there are still some *Remains*. (See *Hist. Geneal. des Tartars*, p. 30.) *Brutt* is a separate *Nation of Tartars* among the *Usbecks*, and *Sigisbertus* (teste *Mart. Zeil. cap. I. p. 13.*) makes mention of a *People* which were call'd *Brutü*. *Pülüg*, a *Persian Word*, has the same Signification with the *German*, *Pflug*. (in *English*, *Plough*.) The *Turkish Word* *Ssira* is the same with the *Latin* *Series*. In short, it would be no difficult Matter to produce many *Hundreds of Persian and Turkish Words*, which agree very nearly with the *Europæan*, both in *Sound* and *Sense*.

KAMATZINTIAN Tartars. They live near the *Source* of the *River Mana*, which discharges itself into the *River Jenisei*, between the *City of Crasnoyar*, and the *Town of Abakan*. They are not numerous, and, at most, amount to but about

Three

Three or Four Hundred Men. Their Tongue the Reader may see a Specimen of, in my *Tabula Polyglotta*.

KAMENKA, is a Village situated near the River of the same Name, in *Siberia*; Where are two Furnaces to melt Iron-Oar, and two Hammer-Mills. There are also two Hammer-Mills at *New Kamenka*, two *Wersts* higher up this River.

KAMINA MASLA, or *Stone-Butter*. This does not sweat out from the Mountains, as the *Russians* sell it, and the Author of the *Verændertes Rusland* relates, (p. 181.) But is a Kind of *Vitrioly-Water*, which forces its Way through the Mountains of Earth and Clay, as well as those which contain a red Iron-Sand, or Oar. The *Russians* put this watry Earth into Tubs, for about twenty-four Hours, and pour some Water upon it, which they pour off the next Day, into Earthen Pots: These they cover, and luting them well, put them for twenty-four Hours, into an Oven, where this Matter congeals, and grows thick; Then they take it out in Lumps, and when it is grown cold, dry it. If, at any Time, this *Vitrioly-Water* dries up, and ceases to force its Way through any Mountain, where it has been before, the Earth grows black, and often turns to Slate. The *Russians* make Use of this *Kamina Masla*, to dy Leather black, but it will not do for Linnen, being too corrosive.

KAMTSCHATKA, or, as the *Chinese* call it, *Yecco*, and the *Germans* *Jesso* or *Jedso*, is, as *Martinus Martini*, likewise, confirms, (in his *Atlas*, p. 21.) a *Peninsula*, one Part of which joins to the Continent of *Siberia*. It is not above thirty or forty Years, since it was discovered by the *Russians*, on the Side of *Siberia*, and the *Dutch* discover'd it by Sea, in the Year 1643. There are many Reasons to believe that this Country formerly was contiguous to *North-America*; And that, even to this Day, there remains a Kind of Communication, by Means of a Chain of Islands. Of this Opinion, likewise, is *Hadrian Relandus*, in his Dissertation *De Ling. American*. I shall give a more full Account of this Country below.

KANIKLU. It would have been a difficult Matter for me to have gueis'd what *Marcus Paulus* means, when he says, (*Lib. II. cap. 41.*) *In the West Part of the Country of Thibeth, there is a Province call'd Kaniklu*, had not the *Tartars* given me a Key to it.

it. For since *Marcus Paulus* takes Notice, in another Place, that, in this District, there were many *Christians*, and learned Inhabitants; And yet the *Tartars*, who travel that Way, know not of any Province bearing that Name, the Case probably stands thus: The *Tartars* call the Learned *Bucharians*, in the *Persian* Tongue, *Kani-Chælm*, and the Word *lu* or *li* signifies, with the *Tartars*, *People*, (as appears by what *Olearius* says concerning *Ark-lu*, in his Appendix to the *Tartarian Wars*;) It is, therefore, not unlikely, that, in those Days, the Name of *Kaniklu* was given to that Province, on Account of the People, who then inhabited it, as if they had said, *the Country of the Learned*. Many more of the like Passages of *Marcus Paulus* might be clear'd up, if Time and Room would allow of it.

KANKLINES, or the *Tribe of Kanklis*, mentioned in *L' Hist. Geneal. des Tartars*, Page 83. and who are call'd *Plaustrarii* and *Hamaxobii*, by *Andreas Mill. Greiffenb.* (in *Comment. Alpb.* p. 64.) These are the *Nogaian Tartars*, who carry their Houses on Carts, and Waggon, from one Place to another. Their Prince they call to this Day *Chanak*, or *Kaneck mirsa*, from which last Word is derived the Name *Kanklis*. See *L' Hist. Geneal. des Tartars*, p. 41.

KANSKIAN TARTARS, are so call'd, by the *Russians*, from the River *Kann*, which discharges itself into the River *Jenisei*, between the Cities of *Crasnoyabr* and *Jeniseiskoe*. They live along that River, but their Number is small, and does not exceed Four or Five Hundred Men. They call themselves *Kbotowzi*; But are call'd *Asa*, by the *Tungusii*.

KAPP. This is a peculiar Kind of a Woody Excrecence, on Birch Trees, found in *Russia*, near *Wiatka* and *Tomskoi*, which the Country People also call *Rpytzna*. Of this all Manner of Turnery-Ware is made: It is a Sort of speckled Wood, of a fine Grain, and has white Veins. The Vessels made of this Wood are so very thin, that they are transparent, will bend, and are generally covered with a yellowish Vernish. This Wood being very dear, the Turners take great Care not to wast any Part of it; They have a Way of turning one Vessel within another, and the smallest Chips are used for inlay'd Works. It grows sometimes bigger than a Man's Head, in the Shape of a

Bowl, but irregular. I have been told, that this Excrecence is caused by a Worm, which gets between the Body and the Bark of the Birch, and having made a Hole, in the Body of the Tree, the extravasated Sap, produces this Excrecence, in the Inside of which the Worm takes its Habitation.

KARAKITAYCI. They are the same as the *Caulacbiti*, in *Budeus's* Dictionary, and the *Caulacbi*, in ancient Maps, and are those *Cbalcha Mungals*, which live without the Wall. *Karakitayci* is an improper Name given them, signifying as much as the Rustick or poor *Kitayans*, because they were formerly Masters of *Kitay*.

KEMTSCHYK, A River, which falls into the River *Yenisei*, near its Source, where formerly stood an ancient City, the Ruins of which are yet to be seen. I am of Opinion that this must have been the Place which *Marcus Paulus* (*cap. V. p. 4.*) mentions, and corruptly calls *Klemminisum*, whither the *Tartar-Chan, Kublai*, sent some of his People, forty Day's Journey, to meet the *Venetian* Embassadors.

KILANI, Are a People living in the *Eastern Tartary*, about the Mouth of the River *Amour*. They are called, by the *Jakubtian Tartars*, *Kilett*, and, by the *Russians*, *Kilaki*. I am told, that these People (1.) go stark naked; (2.) that they make not only most excellent Arms, particularly damask'd, and other Iron-Work, but the best Bows of any Nation in the *East*. It is to be believed that these are of the Race of the *Avari*, whom, in the thirteenth Century, the *Tartar Mangu-Chan*, then King of *Persia*, took from between the *Caspian* and *Black-Sea*, and sent to *Kitay*, or *China*, to the *Great Chan*, to make Arms and Engines for his Use, at which they were very dextrous. (See *Herbelot's Diction. Orient.*) What confirms me still more, in this Opinion, is, that, as I am credibly informed, even at this Time, the best Arms are made in the *Persian* Province of *Kilan*, on the *Caspian* Sea. I have heard some of the *Tartars* say, that these People have a Method of taming Bears, and using them in the Room of Horses. It is also said that they wear Rings in their Noses, and I have observed the same of many of the Inhabitants of the *Western-Tartary*.

KIMRA, Is a little Town, in the *Kosbinian* District, on the River *Wolga*. It is very pleasantly situated on a high Hill, from whence there is a most beautiful Prospect. This Place belongs to *Basilus Soltikow*, who has built a stately Palace there. It has one large old Church, built of Free-Stone, besides three small Churches. This Town is fam'd for the best and most ingenious Taylors, Shoemakers, and other Handicrafts, in the whole *Empire of Russia*.

KITAICA, Is a Sort of Callico, of diverse Colours, brought from *Cbina*, through *Bucharia*, into *Russia*, in large Quantities, and is used both for Mens and Womens Apparel. The *Chinese Kitaika* is the best, of which there are two Sorts, (1.) *Odintzovaia*, which is, of their Measure, about three quarters and a half broad, and about twenty Ells long; This is the finest of the two, and each Piece is roll'd up by itself. (2.) *Tiumovaia*, which is somewhat coarser, but more durable, three fourths broad, and only ten Yards long; Of this ten Pieces are roll'd up together, which they call *Tium*. There are also Cotton Stuffs, or Callicoes, brought from *Bucharia* and *Mungalia*, call'd *Selimskaia*. These are the coarsest Sort, and the Pieces are both shorter and narrower. Of these they, likewise, ty up ten Pieces into a *Tium*, or Bundle; But they fold each Piece first singly. They are most of gay Colours, as Red, Green, Yellow, &c. The Name of *Selimskaia* is taken from the City of *Selim*, otherwise called *Siningfu* or *Dobbasclin*, where these Stuffs are mostly worn.

KONSEOSERTSKIE WODY. This Name is given, by the *Russians*, to certain *Chalybeate* Waters or Springs, which are about 165 Wersts from *Olonetz*, and about fifty from the *Petrowian Sawods*, or Iron-works. *Emperour Peter* the First used, every Year, to visit these Wells. The Waters are very salubrious, and not only beneficial to *Hypocondriacal* Persons, but efficacious in several other Diseases; For which Reason they are much frequented, both in Winter and Summer. There is a very large House, the Hall of which is sixty-six *Russian* Ells long, and eighteen Broad, round which there are thirty Rooms, all built, and kept in Repair, at the Charge of the *Emperour*; And those who come to drink the Waters, pay nothing for their

Lodgings. One Thing is very observable in these Waters; (*viz.*) That they have no Virtue at all in Spring and Autumn, but are of equal Efficacy in Summer and Winter. Of these Wells, the Reader will find a more particular Account in the *Verändertes Rußland*, Page 239.

KOPEIKA. A RUSSIAN Coin, which formerly were of fine Silver, and as big again as they are at present, forty-eight *Kopeiks*, being equal to fifty *Stivers*, *Dutch* Mony. But at present they are less in Size, and not so fine. There are also *Kopeiks* of Copper, which are large, and of equal Value with the Silver ones. Fifty *Dutch Stivers* are equal to ninety-six modern *Kopeiks*. The Name *Kopeika* is derived from the Word *Kope*, which signifies a Pike, such as the *Chevalier*, in the *Russian* Arms, holds in his Hand. The first of this Mony was coin'd in the fifteenth Century, after the Pike was put into the Arms of *Muscow*, in the Room of the Cimeter. In the Year 1724, *Emperour Peter* the First, order'd that no more Silver *Kopeiks* should be coin'd, because it was discovered, that, to the great Loss of the *Empire*, the Number of good *Kopeiks* decreased annually, and vast Quantities of Counterfeit ones appeared in the Room of them.

KORÆIKI, Are a *Pagan* Nation, living on the *West* and *North-Side* of the Bay of *Kamtshatki* or *Lamai*. They are Beardless, like the *Laplanders*, *Samojeds*, and *Ostiacks*; For, in the first Place, they have naturally very little Hair about the Mouth, and what little they have they pluck out, as do also the *Jakubti*, *Tungusi* and *Kalmucks*. They are naturally a good harmless People, and have no Idols of Stone, Wood, or any other Materials, as the *Ostiacks* have. They use no Manner of Ceremony in their Devotion; But when they go out a Hunting, they pray to the SUPREME BEING to bless them with Success. However, they have their *Schaamans* or Magicians, and are a very filthy People. They do not build their Huts on the Ground, but upon four Posts, like some *Armenians* (100); And get up, by Means of a Ladder to the Top, where they enter through a Hole. For their necessary Occasions, they make Use
of

(100) Compare with this what has been said of the *Jrakiri*, and of *Kamtshatka*.

of a Tub, which they have with them in the Hut, and, when full, they carry it out, and make Use of the same Tub to bring in Water, for other Occasions: A whole Family will ly all naked together under one large Coverlet. The *Russians* who trade with them, carry thither a Kind of Mushrooms, called, in the *Russian* Tongue, *Mucbumor*, which they exchange for Squirils, Fox, Hermin, Sable, and other Furs: Those who are rich among them, lay up large Provisions of these Mushrooms, for the Winter. When they make a Feast, they pour Water upon some of these Mushrooms, and boil them. They then drink the Liquor, which intoxicates them; The poorer Sort, who cannot afford to lay in a Store of these Mushrooms, post themselves, on these Occasions, round the Huts of the Rich, and watch the Opportunity of the Guests coming down to make Water; And then hold a Wooden Bowl to receive the Urin, which they drink off greedily, as having still some Virtue of the Mushroom in it, and by this Way they also get Drunk. In Spring and Summer they catch a large Quantity of Fish, and digging Holes in the Ground, which they line with the Bark of Birch, they fill them with it, and cover the Holes over with Earth. As soon as they think the Fish is rotten and tender, they take out some of it, pour Water upon it, and boil it with red-hot Pebbles (as the *Finnlandians* do their Beer) and feed upon it, as the greatest Delicacy in the World. This Mess stinks so abominably, that the *Russians* who deal with them, and who are none of the most squeamish, are themselves not able to endure it. Of this Liquor they likewise drink so immoderately, that they will be quite intoxicated, or drunk with it.

KORSACKI. Are a Kind of little grey *Foxes*, in the *Kalmuckian* Deserts, near the *Caspian-Sea*, which have their Holes in small sandy Hills; Some call them Stone-Foxes.

KOTLINO OSTROW. The *Russians* call the Island of *Retusarius* by this Name, which signifies as much as *Kettle-Island*, it representing that Shape. On this Island is built the great Fortrefs, call'd *Cronstad*; There is a lesser Fort placed before the Entrance into the Harbour, call'd *Cron-Schlot*.

KOTON or CHOTON. The *Eastern Tartars* give this Name to all the Trades-Men, Citizens and *Bucharrians*, who dwell in their Towns: Whence the several Names of Towns, in *East Tartary*, as *Kara-Koton* (*i. e.* Black) *Koto-Koton* (Green,) *Naun-Koton*; *i. e.* that *Koton* which is situated near the River *Naun*. As these People deal very considerably in Cotton-Stuffs (or *Callicoes*) it is not altogether improbable, but the Name *Catun*, which the *Germans* give to this Kind of Commodity, may proceed from thence: Though I do not pretend to insist upon it, it being only my Conjecture.

KRUSCHKA, Is a Measure, with which the *Russians* measure Liquids; eight of them are equal to one *Wedro*.

KUBA or KUBATZIN, Is the Name of a People not far from *Derbent*, who live in the Mountains, and are taken to be *Jews*; They are said to observe the *Mosaick* Law, but they cannot give any Account how, or when, they came to inhabit those Regions. A Specimen of their Tongue, the Reader may see in my *Tab. Polyglotta*, Column VI. They also speak *Hebrew*; But whether these People gave themselves the Name they bear, or whether they received it from others, I am not inform'd. All I can say is: That a certain *Jew*, in *Poland*, related to me the following singular Story, which others in *Poland*, have confirmed, though with some Reluctancy; *viz.* They hold, that there falls, once every Year, at a certain Time, one single Drop of Blood, in the whole World, which generally falls in the House of a *Jew*. They, therefore, cover all their Eatables, particularly Butter, very carefully about that Time; For they have the very Day, Hour and Minute mark'd in their Almanacks. They believe, that if a *Jew* should eat any Thing upon which this Drop of Blood had fallen, he would burst; But that it would not be so fatal to a *Christian*. The Fall of this Drop of Blood is call'd by them, *Kuva* or *Kuwa*: It may, therefore, be a Question, whether the Name of these People have not their Name from thence. As to a Notion current among some, that the *Jews* annually make Use of the Blood of *Christians* in their Ceremonies, it is a meer Fable, and a false Imputation.

KURMATSCH, Is a Name the *Tartars* give to peel'd Barley, after it has been roasted in an Iron Pan; Which they eat dry as it is, without Beating or Boiling it. They often regale Travelers and Strangers with some of it.

L.

LAISCHEU or LAISCHEWO, Is a small Town in the Government of *Casan*, situated on the River *Kama*, about thirty *Wersts* distant from the Conjunction of this River, with the *Volga*. This Place is remarkable in that, the Salt-Ladies, or Barges, which come from *Permia*, touch here every Year, in Order to hire Men to carry them up the *Volga*, to *Nischney Novogrod*, and for that Purpose, there repair annually thither, above Twenty Thousand Peasants.

LAPAIKA or ALAPAIKA, Is a small Village belonging to the Mine-Adventurers in the Government of *Siberia*, situated on a little Brook of that Name, which runs into the River *Nytza*, and this into the River *Tura*. Here is an Iron-Fabrick, a melting Furnace, and two Hammer-Mills.

LAPIS-LAZULI. At *Kongur*, they find a Sort of ordinary *Lapis-Lazuli*; But in the Province of *Dauria*, near *Argun*, I am told, there is some that is fine, though I have not seen it.

LARIX or LARCH TREE. This the *Russians* call *Lestwinitza*, which seems to have some Affinity with the Word *Leetschinen*, a Name the People who live in the Vallies of *Piemont* give this Tree: But the *Tartars* call it *Tbybt*. It grows in great Plenty, in *Siberia*, especially near the City of *Tomskoi*, and farther upwards. This Tree, which, in other Parts, is an Evergreen, casts its Leaves and Prickles, in Winter, in *Siberia*; But then it buds again sooner than any other Trees. The *Agaricus*, which is a *Fungus*, or Spungy Excrecence, growing on the Body of this Tree, is not black, but white, and is carried in large Quantities from thence to *Russia*. The Wood is reddish, and very hard; It gives a very great Heat when it is burnt, for which Reason it is much used, in *Tomskoi*, by the Brewers, and the Potters, to heat their Kilns; And whilst it

is burning, it bounces every now and then, as if Pistols were fir'd off. This Wood may easily be petrify'd by Art, the Manner of which is to lay it, about half a Year, in a moist Dung-hill, and, if afterwards, it is put in Water, it will become a Stone.

LETTERS. In *Russia*, according to an Ancient Custom, Letters sent to a Person of high Rank, are not closed with Sealing-Wax, but with Bees-Wax; And a certain Governour of the City of *Crasnoyar*, call'd *Tzerepsow*, was fined fifty *Rubles*, for sending a Letter to Governour *Knies Gagarin*, seal'd with Sealing-Wax.

LILIASPHODELUS LUTEUS, or the Yellow Field-Lilly, by the *Tartars* call'd *Ulun*, grows very common near *Tomskoi*, and in the *Barabintzian Tartary*.

LINNEEN. In some Places of *Russia* and *Siberia*, they make a very good and fine Sort of Linnen-Cloth, which, however, is but three Fourths of a *Russian* Ell Wide. *Emperour Peter* the First issued Orders, in the Year 1718, That all Looms, throughout the whole *Empire*, should be made according to the Models of the *German* Looms: And that as well these, as the Linnen Cloth, should be made broader. They make likewise, in *Russia*, a great deal of a Kind of open Canvas or Cloth Checqued with small square Holes, which is very good to cover Safes, and Pavillions to admit the Air, and keep off Flies, in Summer.

LOCUSTS. What is said concerning these Insects; viz. That, in hot Countries, they are seen in great Shoals, is very true: For when we march'd, after the Battle of *Pultowa*, through the *Bes-Arabian* Deserts, in our Way to *Bender*, we saw, one Morning, before Sun-rising, a very large Bed of *Locusts*, which had settled there the Night before, and lay on the Ground, one over the other, above three Inches thick, they not being able to rise, 'till the Sun had dried their Wings. Our Horses going over them, caused a great quashing Noise, as if they went through a Swampy Place; Above a Quarter of a (*German*) Mile was covered with this Vermin; And though the Grass was pretty rank, yet, where they lay, it was all consumed, and nothing but the bare Ground to be seen.

LODIA, Is a Sort of Boat, in which the *Russians* bring, every Year, the Salt from *Permia* to *Nischney Gorod*; It is a flat Bottom-Vessel, generally about One Hundred and Five *Russian* Ells, in Length, and twenty-eight in Breadth. It draws about three Ells and a half of Water. In one of these Vessels, they bring down between One Hundred and Thirty, and One Hundred and Forty Thousand *Pudes* of Salt, and it requires between Four and Five Hundred Men to work it. As soon as they arrive at *Nischney-Gorod*, the Salt is put into Sacks, and Matts, and thence is carried, in small Vessels, to all the Ports of *Russia*. These *Lodias* are broken up at *Nischney-Gorod*, and the Timber is used, partly for Building, and partly for Firing; For they can neither be carry'd back, against the Stream, nor farther down into the Country, with it.

LYSKOWO, Is a small Town, near the *Volga*, belonging to the Prince of *Melite*, where they make a very good and fine Sort of Linnen-Cloth, which is much in Request for Exportation.

M.

MADDER, in the *German* Tongue called *Grapp*, grows plentifully in *Russia*, and is as good as that, which is cultivated in Gardens in *Germany*: It is used by Dyers, to dy such a Red as is used for Soldiers Cloaths; There grows also in *Siberia*, on the Banks of the Rivers, in several Parts, especially about the City of *Narim*, an Herb or Root called *Maronna-trava*, which likewise gives a red Colour, but will not bear with Allum. Besides this, near the City of *Crasnoyabr*; and in other Places, a Root is found, which gives a reddish Tincture. The *Tartars* call it *Bada Tussu*, and the common People tincture their Tea-water red with it, or use it frequently alone, in the Room of Tea; But it is somewhat astringent. Near the City of *Tobolsky* grows an Herb, which the *Tartars* call *Kna*, with which their Women colour their Nails red; It is believ'd to be the same with the Bastard *Henna*, found in *Persia*.

MAGNET OF LOADSTONE. There are large Mountains of Loadstones in *Siberia*, in the District of *Ugoria*; But as there is a great deal of Iron mixt with it, its Magnetick Virtue is none of the strongest. However good Iron is got out of it.

MAKARIEWSKOI MONASTIR, or Convent, is situated on the *Wolga*, sixty *Wersts* distant from *Nischney-Gorod*. A great Fair is annually kept there, which draws Thousands of Merchants thither from all Parts of *Russia*, *Bucharia*, *Persia* and *Tartary*. The *Kalmucks* come, likewise, to this Fair, and bring great Numbers of Horses with them. It begins the 30th of *June*, and ends the last Day of *July*.

MAMATOWA-KOST; Which the *Germans* call *Mamot's Bones* or *Teeth*, are no where found in greater Plenty, in *Siberia*, than near the Mouths of the Rivers *Oby*, *Jenisei* and *Lena*, but they are also on the Banks of the other Rivers. They do not properly come out of these Rivers; But after they have swoln very high, as they do at certain Times of the Year, and at their Return into their proper Channels, have washed away a good deal of the lower Part of the Clay and sandy Banks, then, and then only, these Bones or Teeth fall down, with the Earth of the hollow Banks. They are of different Sizes, I have seen some above four *Russian* Ells long, and at the thickest Part, nine Inches Diameter. They are like Elephants Teeth, only somewhat more crooked. They serve to make any Thing that can be made of Ivory, as Snuff-Boxes, Combs, and a Thousand other Things; Nor can they be distinguished from Ivory, except by being sometimes a little more yellowish, which only happens when they have lain a pretty while exposed to the Air. Sometimes these Bones are of a brown Colour like Coconut-shells, Sometimes of a blackish Blew, which proceeds from the same Cause. If the latter are sawed into thin Leaves, and polished, one may observe upon them all Sorts of Figures of Landskips, Trees, Men and Beasts, which likewise proceeds from the Decay of these Teeth, caused by the Air; Because it is observed, that the more they are decayed, the greater Variety of Figures is found upon them; And those thin Leaves, which are made of that thin Part that is not quite mouldred away, serve to inlay and cover small Boxes, and little Cabinets with, as is done with Amber. A great many
of

of these Teeth, which are white, are carried for Sale to *Cbina*. Authors are of various Opinions concerning these Bones or Teeth; (See p. 77, and 179, of the *Vcrænderetes Rusland*). I have taken a good deal of Pains, during my Travels, to come at some Certainty, with Respect to this Mineral, if I may call it so: But after all, I have not been able to obtain such an Account, as is capable of obviating all Objections. As to the Name, it doubtless has its Origin from the *Hebrew* and *Arabick*; this Word denoting *Bebemot*, of which *Job* speaks (in the xlth Chapter,) and which the *Arabs* pronounce *Mebemot*: But our Commentators are not agreed, what Kind of Animal is to be understood by *Bebemot*; and *Lutber*, with many others, take the Word only to mean, in general, a monstrous large Beast: And it seems the *Arabians* were not at a greater Certainty. However, this is certain, that they brought this Word into Great *Tartary*; For the *Ostiacks* near the River *Oby*, call the *Mammoth* *Kbosar*, and the *Tartars* call it *Kbir*; And though the *Arabian* Name of an *Elephant* is *Fybl*, yet, if very large, they add the Adjective *Mebemodi* to it; And these *Arabs* coming into *Tartary*, and finding there the Relicks of some monstrous great Beasts, not certain of what Kind they might be, they called these Teeth *Mebemot*, which afterwards became a Proper Name, among the *Tartars*; and, by the *Russians*, is corruptly pronounced *Mammoth*. But suppose the *Arabians* did mean an *Elephant*, by the Word *Mebemot*; The Description which *Job* gives of the Animal, which he calls *Bebemotb*, is widely different from the Nature of that Beast. This has made some think, that *Job* meant the *Hippopotamus*, and others, that he meant the *Whale*. Be this as it will, the *Russian Mammoth*, certainly came from the Word *Bebemot*; In which Opinion I am confirmed by the Testimony of an ancient *Russian* Priest, *Gregory*, by Name, Father-Confessor to Princess *Sophia*, who was many Years an Exile in *Siberia*, from whom I was told, that formerly the Name for these Bones, in *Siberia*, was not *Mammoth*, but *Memotb*, and that the *Russian* Dialect had made that Alteration. The next Question (since there are so many Tokens of prodigious large Animals to be found in *Siberia*) is, of what Kind these Animals must have been? But this is not so readily answered. As to the Opinion,

that they were amphibious Creatures, which is currently believed by the *Siberian* Populace, I have always looked upon it to be a Fable ; Nor have I ever met with two Accounts of that Matter, which were of a Piece. The Author of *Das Veränderte Rußland*, (Page 179,) says ; That these Animals were nine *Russian* Ells long ; But an ancient Painter, one *Remessow*, a Native of *Russia*, who liv'd at *Tobolsky*, inform'd me, in the Presence of Dr. *Messerschmidt*, and many others, that he, and thirty more of his Companions, had seen, between the Cities of *Tara* and *Tomskoi*, near the Lake call'd *Tzana Osere*, an entire Skeleton of one of these Creatures, which was thirty-six *Russian* Ells long, lying on one Side ; And the Distance between the Ribs of one Side, and the other, was so great, that he, standing upright, on the Concavity of one Rib, could not quite reach the inner Surface of the opposite Rib, with a pretty long Battle-Axe, which he had in his Hand. To which may be added, that, not only, almost all over *Siberia*, there are found Jaw-Teeth or Grinders of twenty or twenty-four Pounds Weight each, and Bones of a vast Bigness ; But Dr. *Messerschmidt* himself has seen the Bones of a whole Skeleton, of a monstrous Size, lying in a Heap, in a Ditch between *Tomskoi* and *Kasnetsko*, on the Banks of the River *Tomber*. Besides, every one of the *Swedish* Prisoners must remember, that a Head of one of these Creatures is to be seen in the City of *Tumeen*, two Ells and a half long, which the *Russians* reckon to be one of the smallest Size. Considering what has been said, it is not to be believed that these Bones are Minerals, and a *Lusus naturæ* (101) ; And if we look upon the mighty Size, both of a whole Skeleton, and the Teeth, and at the same Time, take Notice of their Crookedness, it is as impossible that they should be the Remains of Elephants. I have, indeed, formerly thought them to be the Relicks of Elephants ever since the *Flood* (102) ; But there is no Manner of Pro-

(101) What Dr. *Eberhard David Haubers*, in his Additions and Amendments of Maps, p. 112. relates of petrify'd Bones, Jaws, and the *Uni Cornu fossile*, is already known ; But these in *Siberia* are not petrify'd, but found in their natural State ; as were those that have also been found at *Constat*, in the Principality of *Wirtemberg* : Which may furnish farther Matter for Speculation.

(102) One *Oloff Erichson Willman*, who travell'd to *Japan*, in the Year 1648, affirms, in a small Treatise publish'd at *Wysingio*, in *Sweden*, that the Ambassadors of *Siam* presented

Proportion between them and the Skeleton of this huge Animal; I am therefore constrain'd to believe, that these Teeth and Bones are of Sea-Animals, such as the *Danes* formerly us'd to bring from *Greenland*, and *Iceland*, and sell for those of Unicorns. This might be illustrated, by comparing those with these, especially that Horn or Tooth which is to be seen in the *Museum* of the King of *Denmark*: But this I leave to others, who have Time to examine the Accounts of *Northern Voyages*. My Conjectures, in the mean Time, are as follows: (1.) That though Nature often frames Figures, under the Earth, that imitate Animals, yet I cannot be satisfy'd that these *Siberian-Bones* are a meer *Lusus Naturæ*, but rather Relicks of the Flood. *Rubek* (in his *Atlas*, Tom. I. p. 34.) says also something to this Purpose. Another Example to confirm the Probability of this Conjecture, is the whole Hull of a Ship, with the Keel to it, that was found about thirty Years ago, in the *Barabintzian Tartary*, far enough from the Ocean. Besides this, there was found in the Year 1714, upon sinking a Well, on the Top of the Hill, near *Tobolsky*, sixty-four Fathoms deep in the Earth, an Oaken Beam, quite black, not round, but shaped. (2.) It happens every Year that the Sea swells so high on the *East-Side* of *Tartary*, in the Bay of *Lama*, near the Habitations of the *Koræiki* and *Lamuti*, that Whales, and other great Sea-Animals, are carried up into several Rivers, and when the Water falls again, are left on the Shoar. (3.) Nor is it improbable, since the above-mention'd *Guba Taffowskoi* ebbs and flows, that, in the Spring of the Year, when the River *Obi*, *Jenisei*, and others, swell in so extraordinary a Manner, there should such Teeth or Horns, of *Greenland* Sea-Animals be carried up, and thrown on the Banks of those Rivers, an Example of which has already been shewn, in the Horn of a Sword-Fish. (4.) Or it may be conjectured, that the *Mare Glaciale* went farther into the Land before the Flood, and, at the Fall of the Waters, left these Creatures in the Mud behind. For, (5.) It is observable, that these *Mam-*
moth's

sent the *Dutch* Company, in the Year 1649, with 14 Elephants, two of which were as high as little Houses. But this I look upon as an Hyperbolical Expression; Thus it is common to say, I have seen such a Thing a Thousand Times, when it would be difficult to prove a Hundred.

moth's Teeth are mostly found near the *Mare Glaciale*, in Rivers which discharge themselves into the Sea. Should any one else, hereafter, account better for these Appearances, I shall willingly retract my Opinion. For my Part, I cannot help, in the mean Time, thinking, that, before the Flood, Water made up far the greatest Part of the Terrestrial Globe.

MARTAGUM, in the German Tongue call'd *Goldwurtzel*, (or Golden-root.) These grow plentifully about *Casan* and *Astracan*, as well as in *Siberia*. The *Tartars* boil them in Milk or Water, and not only eat them daily in Season, but lay up a Provision of them for the Winter, to which End they first boil them, and then press them into Cakes, which they dry.

MEAD. A Liquor made of Hony, in *Russia*; It is prepar'd there, with and without boiling. The first Sort is reckon'd a strong exhilarating Liquor, the latter serves chiefly to quench Thirst, and is thought more especially good for the Female-Sex. They give it a Flavour with Coriander, Cloves, and other Aromatics. The Name comes from *Medb*, or *Miödb*, old *Russian* Words, which signify Hony, of which this Liquor is made (103). *Hubner*, in his Dictionary, calls it *Monasterii Quas*, which Word is not current in *Russia*, and *Quas* alone signifies a Liquor brew'd of Rye-Flower and Malt, without Hops, and is drunk in the Room of small Beer.

MEDALS. In a Book publish'd in the German Tongue, entitled, *Das eroeffnete Ritter Platz*, (*im andern Theil des geoeffneten Antiquitäten Zimmers*,) p. 76. I met with a small Medal, said to have been found in *Great Tartary*, on which there were Characters, that was presented to the Publick, as a great Rarity, by Monsieur *Bandelot*, and I have inserted a Draught of it here, *Tab. XXI. Letter A.* in Order to give an Opportunity to the Curious to compare it with some Characters to be found in this Work, *viz. Tab. V. Let. A. Tab. XI. Let. B. Tab. XII. Let. A.* By which it will appear, that there is a great Affinity in the Characters express'd on the Medal, and those in the above-mention'd Tables: Which I hope will justify, that the Characters I have given an Account of are genuine. As to the

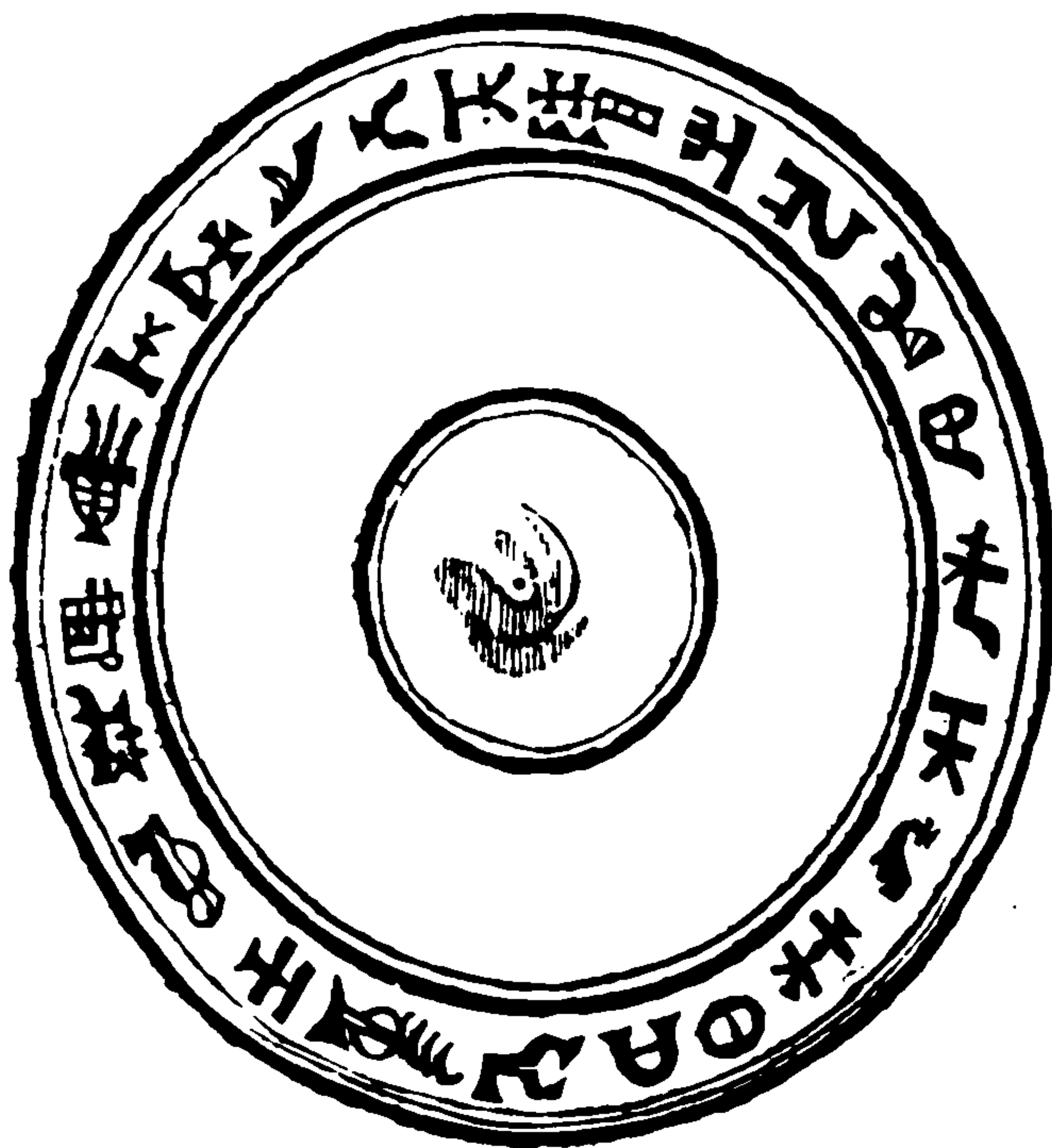
(103) *Hubner's Curieuses Reales, Natur-, Kunst, und Handlungs Lexicon*, p. 1209, and in the second Edition, p. 1081.

the Medals that were found in the *Siberian Tartary*, in the Time of the *Swedish* Captivity, they are the following : (1.) The Reader will see, in *Tab. XX. Letter A.* the exact Size and Shape of a Medal of Gold. This was dug out of a Tomb, not far from the River *Irtisch*, between the Salt Lake *Jamiscbewa*, and the City of *Omm* or *Omm-Ostrock*, and presented to Prince *Gagarin*, Governour of *Siberia*. This Medal was smooth on the Reverse, and had no Characters upon it. I had a Draught of another Medal, of this Kind, but, by some Accident, lost it. However, I communicated the Copy of both to a Friend, who, perhaps, may hereafter oblige the Publick with them. During my *Siberian* Captivity, it was the least of my Thoughts, that I should ever resolve to publish any Thing of this Nature, or else I might have had an Opportunity of collecting ten Times more than I did, barely for my own Curiosity, as these few were ; My sole Design being to frame Maps, and give a Geographical Account of those Countries, which indeed was a Task sufficient to take up almost all my Time. Nor should I have offer'd the few Things, which are here inserted, to the Publick, had any body hitherto taken Notice of them. They may, therefore, serve for a Beginning, to be continu'd and augmented by others. To return to the *Golden Medal* I am speaking of, it is very difficult to judge by the Figure, what was the Design of it. Prince *Gagarin*, as soon as it was brought to him, sent for the most knowing Men among the *Tartars* and *Kalmucks*, but they could give him no Explication of it. It seems to me, to be design'd for the Figure of the Virgin *Mary*, with a little *Jesus*, in her Lap, whose Face and Head is encompass'd with a Glory : I have seen the like, in several *Russian* Churches. The Characters seem to be *Boutunian Scytbian*, of which Manner of Writing, *Thomas Hydius* gives an Account ; (*in quadrupl. ling. dialecto* ;) As does also *David Wilkins* ; (*in Præfat. in Orat. Domin. Joannis Chamberlayn* ;) These Characters were probably caus'd to be impress'd upon this Medal, by the first *Syrian* Priests, which came from *Syria*, into the Country of the *Tangubts*, and the *Lesser India*, and thence into *Tartary*, to preach the Gospel. I cannot help thinking, that the Author of the *Life of Peter the First*,
(printed

A.



B.



(printed at *Leipzig*, in 1725,) has a View to this *Medal*, when he mentions one, *p.* 702, that was found near the *Caspian Sea*, together with some Manuscripts. But I have already hinted above, that this is a Mistake, and he should have said that the latter were brought from the Neighbourhood of the River *Irtisch*: And there is much the same Mistake, concerning the Image which this Author speaks of; For these Drawings have been communicated to several Friends at *Petersburg*, ever since 1719. But of this I shall say more below. 2. *Tab.* XX. *Let.* B. represents a Plate of Bell-Metal, and is of the same Figure and Magnitude with the Original; I had also two of this Sort; But parted with them both to my above-mention'd Friend. This Plate was found, in a Grave, between the Rivers *Irbybt* and *Toboll*, and, like the former, had only Characters on one Side, the other being blank, and finely polish'd; There is, in the Middle of this Plate a Knob with a Hole through it, in the Nature of a Loop, of which something has already been hinted, under the Title of *Characters*, and by *Tab.* IX. *viz.* that the *Tartars* call them *Tzabar-Inæ*. Many Hundreds of these Plates are found up and down in Graves. 3. It may not be improper, under this Title, to take some farther Notice of the Figure represented, *Tab.* V. *Let.* C. and its Reverse C. This is made of a Substance like *Terra Sigillata*, of the Shape and Size as here given, a Piece being broke off on one Side. I find here, on the Reverse C. some Characters, which resemble those upn Monsieur *Boudot's* Medal; And since the Figure in C. somewhat resembles the Idol *Puffa*, which *Kircher* describes, (*P.* II. *Lib.* III. *p.* 141.) and agrees pretty well with the Account which *Andr. Mull-Greifsenb.* gives (in *Hist. Sinens. Abd. Beidar.* *p.* 40.) of the *Xaca* or *Xecmuni* of the *Bramines*, which the *Kalmucks* call *Xaca* or *Xacamuni* (105), and is looked upon in *Tangutia*,

G g g

as

(105) I shall add below, in a proper Place, an Account of the Idolatry of the *Kalmucks*, who, among other Idols, worship, in a particular Manner, one, which they call *Xacamuni*. They say that 4000 Years ago, he was only a Sovereign Prince, in *India*; But on Account of his unparallel'd Sanctity, God had taken him up to Heaven alive; But the Place whither he was translated, none of them pretend to know. This *Xacamuni* left behind him many Sons, all which were look'd upon as Saints, by the *Kalmucks*; These Sons continu'd in a State of Celibacy, whence their *Lamæ* and Priests are forbid to marry. Among these Sons of *Xacamuni*, there was one named *Arensur*, who was the first that brought their Religion from *India*, into *Tangutia*, of whom their High-Priest *Dalai-Lama* receiv'd it.

as a Deify'd Person, whom they adore and worship to this Day; In my Judgment, this little Image, which was here and there painted blue and gilt, came originally from *Tangubtia*, through *India*, to the *Kalmucks* and *Mungals*; Notwithstanding it was found in an old Chappel, among many ancient Manuscripts, near the River *Kemtschyk*, which falls into the River *Jenisei*, near its Head; And the Characters are *Tangubtian*, which the Curious may compare with the Characters inserted in the *Acta Literaria*, by Counsellour *Mencke*; But its having three Heads, may have been borrow'd from the *Ægyptians*, from whom the *Tangubts* probably first had their Religion. Much might be said, on this Head; But I shall leave the farther Enquiry to others. I refer the Reader to what I have said in my Introduction, (*Seet. V. §. XIII.*) concerning an Idol with three Heads, and the God *Trigla* or *Triglass*. Lastly, It will not be amiss to take Notice, under this Title, of the Figure which the Reader will see, *Tab. V. Let. D.* This was only a piece of a Plate, as far as it is shaded, likewise of polish'd Metal, as has been said of *Let. B.* in *Tab. XX.* That which is most remarkable in this Plate is, that it is cast, and with a *Flower de Luce* upon it, which seems to be a *Chinese* Character; And, about the Edges, the smaller and thinner *Scythian* Characters are cut with a Graver. This may perhaps have been a Piece of Plunder, which the Warriour, who possess'd it, had order'd to be put into his Grave. It is Pity, as I have observed above, that the *Russians* broke this Plate to Pieces, when they found it in a Tomb, near the City of *Abakan*.

MERLUSCHKA-OUTSCHINKA, or the *Astracan* Lambskins. Several Authors, thro' Misinformation, take this to be the famous *Boranetz* or *Borametz*, which is said to be a Plant, or Shrub, growing near *Astracan*; This Notion of a vegetable Sheep, (for *Borametz* signifies a Sheep in the *Russian* Tongue,) gave us all the Curiosity, during our Captivity, to enquire strictly after it; But we could get no Account of any such thing. They must, therefore, mean these Skins: There are different Sorts of them brought into *Russia*, as, *Bucharstkie*, *Karaganskie*, and *Kalmacskie*. On the first and best Sort, which comes from *Bucharia*, the Hair or Wool lies flat, and, as it were, in Waves, almost as it grows on some Dog-

Skins; These are the Skins of Slinks, or unborn Lambkins, which are taken out of the Ewe, when she is kill'd, and one of these sells for four to six *Rubels*. The second Sort comes from *Persia*, and the Wool lies in very small Curls upon the Skin, framing as it were so many Pearls; They are likewise Slinks, or else are taken as soon as they come from the Ewe; The younger they are the stronger is the Curl, and the closer it lies to the Skin. Of these, some are white, some gray, and some black, and are sold for about two *Rubels* a-piece, but the white are the cheapest. The third Sort is flamed or waved like the first, but the Wool is a great deal longer, and therefore they are the cheapest; They come from the Country of the *Kalmucks*, and are commonly sold for 30 or 40 *Kopeiks*.

MINES. In the *Russian Empire*, there are, 1. in *Siberia*, in the Province of *Dauria*, near the City of *Argun*, and the River *Serebrinka*, a considerable *Silver-Mine*; With which also a great Quantity of Lead is intermix'd; But it is not look'd upon to be worth smelting, for Want of Hands and Carriages. For the same Reason, a *Copper-Mine*, and an *Iron-Mine*, which have been discovered near the little River of *Aga*, Westward from the *Silver-Mine*, is not yet broke up. There is a complete *Mine-Office* establish'd, near the *Argunian Mine*, the Chief Managers of which are *Greeks*, *Saxons*, *Swedes*, and *Russians* (106). Secondly, *Rus-*

G g g 2 *sia*

(106) Much might be said of this *Silver-Mine*, it having been known in early Times, before ever the *Russians* set Foot there. See the Travels of *Isbrand Ides*, (p. 63.) where he says: About 8 Miles from *Argunskoi*, the Silver Rivulet, or, as it is call'd, in the *Russian Tongue*, *Zerebrenka*, falls into the River *Argun*. This little Brook is call'd, by the *Mungals*, *Mungagol*, because *Munga*, in that Tongue, signifies *Silver*, and *Gol* a Brook. Two Miles upwards, near this River, are the Silver Mines, whence, in former Ages, the *Niuchæans* and *Mungals* fetch'd great Quantities of Silver. This is the same Place mention'd in *L'Histoire Generale des Tartars à Leyde*, 1726. (p. 108, 109.) which once was called *Alackzin*, in the Neighbourhood of which many Silver Mines were to be found. If the Reader consults my Map, he will there find not only a Rivulet call'd *Alackzin*, which runs into the River *Argun*, but near it the Mountains of the same Name. But that large and ancient City, which this *Tartarian* Author calls *Alackzin*, is the now ruin'd City of *Taiminzin*; For *Taiming* signifies the same Thing, in the *Tartarian Tongue*, as *Alack* does in the *Mungalian*, viz. spotted or pied, on Account of the great Number of spotted, mottled, or pied wild Asses and Horses produced in that Place. See the Description which *Isbrand Ides* gives of the ancient City of *Taiminzin*, (p. 75.) formerly the Residence of *Chan Utay*: And I am apt to believe, this is the very Country, of which *Martius Paulus* (*Lib. 1. Cap. 62. and 66.*) gives the following Account. "In this Country" (says he) lives a People, call'd *Argun*, who exceed all others in Cunning, Judgment, and Industry." (On this Head compare also *Isbrand Ides*, who mentions the Ruins of Towns.

sia affords a great deal of Copper; For Instance, on the River *Wiatka*, near a little Town call'd *Malmisch*, as also near *Alaboga*, on the River *Kama*, where there are two Places, at about two or three Miles Distance, where *Copper-Ore* is found, and the smelting Works us'd to be at a Place call'd *Sarasell*. These Mines ly still, unless taken up again since my Departure. *Copper-Ore* is also found on the River *Crussowaja*, and in the Province of *Ugoria*, among the *Urallian* Mountains; Especially near the new City of *Catbarinenburg*, by the River *Ijet*. Besides these, in the Government of *Casan*, and near *Olonex*, between *Ladoga* and *Onega*, *Copper Mines* have also been discover'd. 3. As to *Iron-Mines*, *Russia* abounds in them, of which the best are in *Ugoria*, and in *Siberia*, and of these the best and toughest is that of *Jenisei*, of which many wrought Goods are sent to *Holland* and *England*.

MINE-OFFICE. The *General Mine-Office* of *Siberia* is at *Catbarinenburg*, (of which more below.) It consists of four Chief Officers or Managers, viz. 1. A Surveyor-General of the *Mines*. 2. A Master-General of the *Miners*. 3. A Controller-General of the *Titbings*. And, 4. A Master-General of the *Casting-Houses*. This *General Mine-Office* has under its Jurisdiction all *Siberia*, *Ugoria*, *Permia*, and *Wiatka*; On which are dependant five Inferiour Mine-Offices, viz. the *Ugorian*, *Solikamskian*, *Kungurian*, *Tomskian*, and *Daurian*. All the five Masters are *Germans*, as are several other Officers belonging to the *Mines*.

MOCHSCHIANI, Are a *Pagan* People, living in *Russia*, between the Towns of *Lommow*, *Tanbow*, and *Peasche*. They do not differ in their Manners and Customs from the *Czuwaschy*.

MORDUINI, Are *Pagans*, in *Russia*, who live under the Government of *Nischneygorod*. The ridiculous Dress of their Women

Towns, Fortresses, Mill-stones, and Iron-wheels of Carriages, which he found up and down, near the Road.) *Marcus Paulus* goes on and says, "that here were the Dominions of *Gog* and *Mageg*, whom the Natives call *Lug* and *Mungug*." (To these Monsieur *La Croix*, in his *Gengbizcan*, p. 6. gives this very same Situation, according to the Accounts of the Ancients, and places them North-East of *China*.) He proceeds: "In the Mountains of this Country are large Silver Mines." In short, whatever this Author relates concerning the Wild Beasts, the feather'd Kind, Pheasants, &c. as also of Green *Jasper*, *Lapis Lazuli*, and a certain Stuff made of Camels Hair, is found in this Place. And *Kircher* seems to have an Eye to this Place, Part II. cap. 6. p. 92. in these Words: *Id sane aperte dicit Ortelius, qui regnum Argon in ultimo Septentrionis angulo constitutum; Christianorum dicit à St. Thoma ad fidem Christi conversum: Subintelligo à successoribus suis.* But *Marcus Paulus* writes, that many *Christians* liv'd in this Country.

men has been, without Doubt, describ'd by others. They make the Doors of their Houses (like the *Czuwaschi*) towards the *South*, that they may offer their Prayers to the *Sun*; Their Fire-places, are in the Left-side-Corner towards the *North*, but the Fire-places of the *Czuwaschi* are immediately at the Entrance of their Houses, in the Right-hand Corner, towards the *South*, which is a Mark of Distinction they may be known by; For they live, in several Parts, promiscuously one among the other. They sacrifice an Ox to their God *Jumishipas*, which is the same as *Jumala*, at which Sacrifice, they offer up their Prayers, for all the Necessaries of Life. They do not hang the Hides of Horses on Trees, as the *Scheremissi* do, nor do they eat any Horse-Flesh; But they eat Pork, a Thing wherein they differ from all the other *Pagans*, in the *Russian Empire*. They inter their Dead, and take but one Wife; But if she proves barren, they may part from her and take another.

MOUNTAIN, or MOUNTAINS. There are two *Vulcano's* in *Siberia*; One on the River *Chatarga*, not far from the Icy Sea and the River *Jenisei*; The other in *Kamtshatki*: Besides these, there is a Cavern near the *Baikallian Lake*, from whence there used formerly to proceed Fire and Smoak; Of which *Isbrand Ides* takes also Notice. This Cavern seems to be the same, of which the Fathers Missionaries, *Vincent. Belaucens. (Libr. XXXII. Cap. 24.)* and *Joannis Curpinus* make mention; viz. That, travelling thro' *Tartary*, they came to a Lake full of Islands, which they pass'd by, leaving it on the Left-hand, and near which (according to their Account) a great deal of Smoak and Wind issued from a subterraneous Cavity. And from thence they travell'd into *Mungalia*, to the *Chan* of *Tartary*. Such a Cavern is, likewise, between the Cities of *Tomskoi* and *Kusnetski*, near the *Abinzian Tartars*, which sometimes emits Smoak and Flames, from out of one of the Mountains. The Reader may see, as well in my Map, which I have annex'd to this Work, as in others, what high and mighty Chains of Mountains separate, not only the *Russian Empire* from its Neighbours, but within itself the several Parts of it from each other. Towards the *South* and *Persia* it is border'd by the Mountains of *Caucasus*; And within itself, it is divided by the *Riphaean Mountains*, and by those which, thro' Mistake are call'd
the

the *Imaus*. Mount *Taurus*, so famous in the Writings of Ancient Authors, tho' it does not touch here, separates the *Usbeckian* and *Kalmuckian Tartary* from *India*. On this Occasion, and under the Title of Mountains, I shall take some Notice of the Corruption of the Names of these I have just mention'd; And here I shall leave the Readers to judge, whether I have gone too far, as well in this, as many other Instances, where thro' the Course of this Work, I have endeavour'd to reconcile the Derivations of the Names of some Mountains, Rivers, Nations and Countries, which many Ancient Occidental Authors have given them, with those they at present bear in the *East*. Especially as I have neither done it without a Precedent (107), nor without assigning my Reasons for it. And besides, my View has been to facilitate the Enquiries of Travellers, who with this little Help, will be less puzzled to get Information of Things, when they come to discourse with the Inhabitants. For should any one, who is desirous of being inform'd concerning these Mountains, make Use of such Names as he meets with in Ancient Authors, neither a *Tartar*, *Kalmuck*, *Ostiak*, *Persian*, *Indian*, nor any other modern Inhabitant, would know what he meant. Since, therefore, every one knows that the Names given to those Mountains, by the Ancients, are establish'd as proper Names; I shall first make it appear, that they are no more than common Appellatives, as: A *Mountain*, A *White Mountain*, A *Ridge of Mountains*, &c. And, in the next Place, I shall shew, how they have been corrupted, in the Pronunciation. I have already said something of the *Riphaean Mountains* (*Señ. VI. §. XVI. of the Introduction, in the Note:*) To which I have now farther to add, that I very well know the Name of them is deriv'd from the *Greek*, by other Authors; But it has been a common Thing, with many Authors, to derive Ancient *Oriental* and *Scythian* Denominations from the *Greek*, if they have but found some Similitude of Sound, in this Language (108). Whereas,

if

(107) Compare *Matth. Belii de vet. litter. Hunno Scyth. exercit. Señ. II. §. IV. & Señ. V. §. I.*

(108) It cannot be deny'd, but many Denominations, both *Greek* and *Roman*, have been convey'd to the *Eastern* Countries, particularly the Terms of Arts, Customs, Sciences, Instruments, &c. But I speak here of the first and most simple Ages of the ancient *Scyths*, in which, if we compare them with the present Customs of the Nations in the *North-East*

if we consider the Antiquity of Languages, the *Scythian* Language is as ancient, or more ancient than the *Greek*, as is evident, not only from the Dispute in *Justin* of the *Ægyptians* and *Scyths*, But more so, and worthy our Attention, by what is alledg'd in the first *Volume*, (*Page* 48. *Not.* 6.) of the *Bibliotheca Suecica*. Since, therefore, these, and other the like Names, are only Appellatives, it is no Wonder, if the same Names, or at least of the like Pronunciation, are given to the like Things in other Places; For Example, *Rubeck* (in his *Atlantica*) places likewise *Riphaean* Mountains between *Sweden* and *Norway*; The like Example the Reader has seen in my Introduction, (*Seet.* III. §. XI. in the Note, of the Name *Moeotis*, *Moeotidis*; And, in another Place, I have proved, that *Balticus*, or *Gualtbicus*, is the same with *Gualinski*, a Name which the *Russians* give to the *Caspian Sea*, to distinguish it from other smaller Seas; For, in the *Sclavonian* Language, *Guala* signifies *mighty*, *powerful*, *excellent*, *great* (109); Nay, the Word *Gandui*, a Name given to the *Sinus Botnicus*, (See *Schæffer. Lappon.*) and *Gandewyk*, by which Name some understand the *White Sea*, is all one with *Gandi-misch* or *Gandimies*, a Name which the *Ostiacks*, near the River *Oby*, give to the District which they inhabit; (See *Verändertes Russland*, p. 187. §. 25.) their Tongue not being very different from that of the *Wogulitzi* and *Finnlandians*, as the same Author, (§. 26.) observes, and my *Polyglott Table* shews. As to the

Part of *Asia*, we shall find a very great Similitude, as to the Names of natural Things, the plain and simple Manner of living of both, and their Ways and Customs. Whence doubtless, it is most reasonable to suppose, that those Names and Manners were first transported from the *East* (where primitive Simplicity first had its Reign) to the *West*. And since there are now more manifest and abundant Relicks thereof found in the *North-East* Part of *Asia*, than in *Europe*, because the Inhabitants, on Account of their Remoteness from us, and for many other Reasons, are not so much alter'd as we, in *Europe*, are; We may reasonably conclude, that such Names of natural Things were rather brought by the *Scyths* into the *Northern* Parts of *Europe*, than by the *Greeks*. But then, our Misfortune is, that we cannot form any Idea of Men, in their primitive State of Simplicity, but are ever comparing them with later Times, when Men were grown more knowing, and had made Improvement in Navigation, &c. Whereas were we to be among Men, who live in that original State of Nature, and who are unacquainted with so many modern Inventions (as we must suppose they were, in ancient Times, in the *North* Parts of *Europe*) we should then form a quite different Judgment, in many Things, from what we are apt to do at present.

(109) The *Palus Mæotis* is also call'd, by the *Tartars*, *Baltichimkin*. See *l'Hist. de Timur-Beck* (*Tom.* II. p. 365.) item, *Beckmann* (in *Not. Orb. Terr. &c.*) on the Name *Balticum*.

the *Riphaean* Mountains, I have this farther to take Notice of concerning them, viz. that no *Bear, Wolf, Fox, Hare*, nor any other four-footed Animal is to be found there; Because there grows no Shrubs there that bear Berries, the Food of the smaller Game, which the Beasts of Prey, go in Pursuit of; And this is the Reason, why *Pliny* calls these Mountains: *Montes à rerum natura damnati*. Now as it has been customary with the Ancients, to give only General Names to so many Things; Because in the Beginning, many large Countries were not yet so fill'd with Towns nor People, neither was the Nature and Property of them then known, from which afterwards proper Names were given these Things; It is not at all strange, to think, that such, and the like, ancient General Names have been preserved even in *Europe*. For Instance, what is meant by the *Riesen Gebürge* (or *Giant-Mountains*) but very *High Ones*? (See my Introduction, *Seet. VI. §. XVI.* in the Note;) Or what is meant by the *Alps* but Snowy *Montes Albi*? Such Mountains are called by the *Russians, Bielaji*, or *White Mountains*. It is the same with the Name *Imaus*, which is called by the *Tartars, Imustag*, and also *Imussabr*, for *Mus* or *Maus* signifies with them *Ice*, to which they prefix, in the Pronunciation, the Vowel *I*, but *Tag* denotes *Mountains*; Thus the whole Word signifies *Icy, or Snowy Mountains*, whence the corrupt Word *Imaus* takes its Origin. Thus, likewise, the Denomination of *Caucusus*, call'd by others *Cas, Caph* or *Caco*; *Cubo* and *Cobo* signifies, in the *Persian*, no more than *Mountains* in general; a Manner of speaking also in Use among the *Germans*, who often call a mountainous Tract of Land, barely *the Mountains*, to distinguish it from the flat Land, or Plains, without any other Proper Name. How the Name *Caucusus* is derived from the Word *Cobo*, and how it became afterwards a Proper Name, may be seen in *Hadrian Reland, Dissert. VIII. de Vet. Ling. Pers. p. 155.* But as the *Arabians* call these Mountains, at the same Time *Caph* or *Caco*, it seems as if they either meant only one particular Part of them, or that they design'd it for a Proper Name for the whole, and the Name *Caucusus* is thence deriv'd as a Proper Name. I have, in my Introduction, (*Seet. I. §. XLIII.*) touch'd upon an Historical Passage, which happen'd in these Mountains, of which a farther

Account

Account is to be found in the History of *Gengbizcan*, p. 8. publish'd by Monsieur *Petit de la Croix*. It. in *Hist. Sin Abd. Beid*. p. 71, 72. publish'd by *Adr. Müll. Greiffenbagen*; Which is confirm'd by *Herbelot*, in his *Diët. Orient.* p. 489. and our *Hist. Geneal. des Tartars*, p. 74, 75. with which the Reader may compare the Notes to §. X, and XI. of the Appendix to my Introduction. That Fragment of History informs us, that the Original Founders of a *Tartarian, Mungalian, Scythian* Nation, call'd *Kajan* and *Dokos*, got, by a particular Fate, among the *Cubistanian* and *Caucasian* Mountains, which before were uninhabited, and after their Sojourning there, for about Four Hundred and Fifty Years, being become so very numerous, that they were forced to look out for a larger Tract of Land, they were at a Loss how to find out a Way to pass the Mountains; When a Smith, pointing out to them a Place, which was very rich of Iron-Oar, advised them to make great Fires there, by which Means the Oar melted, and opened them a broad Passage out of these Mountains *; In Commemoration of which famous March, the *Mungals* celebrate an annual Feast and Ceremony, viz. They heat a Piece of Iron red-hot, on which the *Chan* strikes one Blow with a Hammer, and all the Persons of Rank do the same after him. What I have already declar'd, in the afore-mention'd Passages of my Introduction, as my Opinion of the Fable of *Prometheus's* being fastned to Mount *Caucasus*, and his Deliverance from thence by *Vulcan*, as very applicable to this Historical Account, becomes still more probable, if we take Notice, that some Authors call these Mountains *Cauka-gora*, and, at the same Time, affirm, that this Word signifies, in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, an *Iron-Mine*. (See *Anonym. of the*

H h h *Mighty*

* The Author of the *Histoire Genealogique des Tartars, &c.* in the Place above cited, gives the following Account of this miraculous Passage: "The Passage (says he) by which their Ancestors came thither, being, in Course of Time, stopt up and lost, a certain Smith, who imagin'd that he observ'd one Part of the Mountain not to be very thick, and that, at the same Place, it consisted wholly of Iron-Oar, proposed an Experiment of melting that Oar, by Means of certain Bellows made for that Purpose. This Proposal being unanimously approved of, every Man set to Work, to bring Wood and Coals to the Place directed, and having rais'd a Pile at the Foot of the Mountain, consisting alternatively of a Layer of Wood, and a Layer of Coals, they set Fire to it, and applying at once 70 Pair of Leathern Bellows, the Oar began to melt at that Place, and made an Opening sufficient for a loaded Camel to pass, thro' which Passage they got on the other side, of the Mountain, with great Joy.

Mighty and Vast Empire of Muscovy, p. 260. printed in the German Tongue, at Nurenburg, 1687.) And though this Explication is agreeable to the above-mention'd History of the *Mungal Scythian Iron-Mine*; Yet the Thing will appear yet much plainer, if we make an Enquiry into the Original Meaning of the Word *Kauka*, which, in the *Sclavonian*, signifies, *forged*, or a *Forging* (110); And as the Verb, *to forge*, is chiefly applicable to Iron, it may, not without Grounds, be supposed, that the Word *Kauka* has given Birth to the Name, *Caw*, *Capb*, or *Caucasus*; Especially since the History has an evident Conformity with the Similitude, as well as the Explication of the Word. Should, however, any one be of a contrary Opinion, let him bring as many probable and remarkable Circumstances as I have done, and I will, to oblige him, readily drop my Conjecture. Finally, as to the Name *Taurus*, I have already observ'd, in the Introduction, that *Tau* and *Tavi*, in the ancient, and *Tag*, in the modern *Tartarian* Tongue, signifies a *Mountain*, whence proceed the Names *Tavistaner*, *Tagistaner*, i. e. *Mountain-Tartars*; So likewise, in the ancient *Scythian* Tongue, *Taunasis* is a *King* or *Prince* of a *Mountainous Country*. To this *Tau* or *Tavi*, Writers have added *os* and *us*, as a Termination only, which *Relandus*, when he speaks of Mount *Caucasus*, likewise observes. The *Siberian Tartars* add this Word to the Proper Names of their Mountains; e. g. *Abul-chan-tau*, *Cara-tau*, *Arr-tau*, *Car-tau*, *Arbatafch-tau*, &c. But some *Tartars* pronounce it *Dag*, *Dak*, *Dau* or *Davi*; And here we may observe what *Strabo* says, (*Lib. VII.*) viz. That the *Daci*, in former Times, were also called *Davi*. After what I have said, I leave the Reader to judge, how probable it is, that the afore-mentioned Names had their Origin, in the *North-East Part of Asia*, and were afterwards corrupted by *European Writers*. And since, as I have observed before, many Men of Learning have trod this Path before me, and gone in Search of the Truth of this Matter, I have here only endeavoured to corroborate their Opinions, by my
small

(110) Hence the above-cited *Hist. de Genghizcan*, p. 8. shews the Mistake of some Authors, in affirming the Great *Genghizcan* to have been the Son of a Smith; Because he was only allied to the Generation of these *Mungals*, who by the Art of Forging made their Way out of the Mountains.

small Experience; And therefore hope, that other Learned Gentlemen will not disapprove my Labour. Many Hundred of the like Instances might be brought of the Etymology of Names, in other Things besides Mountains. e.g. The Ancients gave the River *Dniester* the Surname of *Axiaces*; Now, this is again a *Tartarian Scythian* Word; For *Axi* or *Axfui*, signifies *White-Water*; and, of the like Names, we find a great many in *Tartary*, as: *Axiketh*, *Axfui*, *Ackbalick*, *Acktura* and *Ackfin*. (See my Map.) In the Year 1709, observing the white loamy Water of the River *Dniester*, near the Town of *Bender*, it put me then upon Speculation; But I now find Reason to conclude, that as the Modern *Tartars* give to all chalky Rivers the Name of *Axfui* or *Ackfui*, so the Ancients, for the same Cause, gave the above Surname to the River *Dniester*. In this Manner the Nature, and Properties of Things, as well as the Customs and Manners of People have furnished Motives and Occasions for giving different Names to them. Let us consider only this one Thing, for Instance: Since our first Ancestors *, before Cities were built, who lived in Tents and Huts, which they removed from Place to Place, at Pleasure, and led a Sort of a vagrant Life, when any of them found a Spot they lik'd, and fix'd there, whether they were not named from the Circumstance of their Resting, and Taking a fixed Station, the *Fix'd* or the *Settled*. Thus, for Example, in the *Teutonic*, *Statisch*, signifies *fixed, settled*; May not then the *German* Name *Stadt*, (a *City*) be derived from thence. This Conjecture is strengthen'd, as well by the Customs, as the Language of the *Eastern Nations*. Thus, also, the *Western* and *Usbeckian Tartars* call to *stand still*, or to *remain fixed*, in their Tongue, *Cball* or *Kall*, and *Kalla*, with them, signifies a *City*; Among the *Siberian* and more *Northern Tartars*, the Word *Tur* (111) bears the same Signification as *Kall*, and a *City* or *Place of Residence* is, by them, called *Tura* or *Turuja*. Nay, since, in the *Persian* and *Turkish* Tongues, a *City* is called *Wilajett*, which Word the *Eastern Tartars* pronounce *Ulajet*;

H h h 2

Why

* Our Author here probably means the *Teutons*, or first Ancestors of the *Germans*, in the common Acceptation of the Word.

(111) The Word *Turr* is used by the Peasants, in *Lower Saxony*, to this Day, to stop their Horses; tho' some say *Purr*.

Why may not there be an Affinity between this and the *Latin*, *Villa*, the *French Village*, and the *German*, *ein Weiler*, from *Weilen*, *Verweilen*? Since the Names *Kalla*, *Tura*, and *Stadt*, have arisen from one and the same Cause. (See, on this Head, *Rubeck's Atlantica*, Tom. I. p. 26, and 27. *de derivat. Nomin. Propr. & Substant.*) Moreover, as we find that these Nations call a *City* also *Schar* or *Cair*, those Names are taken from *Seber* and *Seberü*, signifying a *Trader* or *Citizen*, and as the *Greeks* seldom pronounce the *b*, having no such Letter in their Alphabet, it is not difficult to conceive, how the Ancients came by the Name *Seres*. Now I am upon this Subject, I could, with Pleasure, proceed farther, and shew, that *Turr*, *Tura*, *Turuja*, are the same with the Name *Troja* or *Turuja*, the first City built by the *Franks*, as *Mezeray* testifies, and *Caspar Abel*, (in his *German and Saxon Antiquities*, p. 501, and 505.) confirms; And that the Name of *Thuringians*, a People noted for being contented to remain in their own Country, without roving, proceeds from the same Source; (See the last Author I quoted, p. 425.) I could, likewise, make it appear, that the Observation which *Loescherus* (in *Lit. Celt.* p. 28.) makes of the Word *Durr* is just, viz. that the Ancient *Britons* and *Gauls* used to denote a *City* by that Name, as, at this Time, the *Turtars* call it *Turr*, and *Tura*; And the *Chaldean* Word *Durr*, which signifies *Habitation* or *Mansion*, does not differ much from it. Not to mention the *Turones* of *Ptolemy*: But when I consider, that many may already think, I dwell too long upon this Matter, I chuse to say no more about it; And shall therefore, only, by Way of Conclusion, take Notice, that if the Reader should find, in Ancient Maps, and Descriptions of Places, the following Names: *Belgian*, *Seyebi*, *Annibi*, *Auxzacü*, *Ottorocorbas* and *Gipbar*; He may assure himself that the last, which signifies in the *Tartarian* Tongue, *Musk*, means nothing but those *Mountains* where the *Musk-Deer* resort; That *Belgian* denotes a *Chain of Mountains*; For so *Bill* or *Bell* signifies in the Tongue of the *Arinzian Tartars*; That *Seyebi* are the *Seyantzian* Mountains, along the River *Jenisei*, where the *Seyani* or *Soyotts* dwell, That *Annibi* are the *Annuian* Mountains, near the River *Abakan*; *Auxzacü*, the Mountains near the Towns of *Axukutschai*; And *Ottorocorbas*,
Moun-

Mountains near the City of *Otbura*. The Promontory *Tamos* signifies the *Back of a Camel*, because *Tame*, with the *Tartars* and *Kalmucks*, is a *Camel*; Mountains of this Figure are named, by the *Russians*, *Werbludſchi Spira*; And ſuch a one there is between *Irkutſki* and the River *Jeniſei*.

MUSCVA-REKA. Upon this River ſeveral Hundreds of Vellels laden with *Perſian* Commodities, are brought from *Caucaſian*, *Aſtracan* and *Siberia*. By the River *Occa*, and from *Niſchnygorod* Corn, Meal and Salt are brought into this River, and carried to the City of *Muſcow*: And this River ſerves for a Conveyance of Wood, for Building and Floats, from all Provinces, but chiefly from *Ruza* and *Moſcbaiſko*.

MUSCOW, The Capital of *Ruſſia*, and Reſidence, (or, as it is call'd, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue *Stollitza*) of the *Czar*, has not been forgotten by any of the Writers, who have given an Account of *Ruſſia*: But this, being a very large Place, and, therefore, demanding a nice Enquiry, in Order to give an accurate Deſcription thereof, it has ſo happen'd, that Authors, who have attempted this Taſk, have either omitted many Particulars, or elſe they have not been exact in their Accounts. The Deſcription *Hubner* (112) gives of this City, ſtands in great Need of being corrected; For he has not divided the ſeveral Parts of this large Place, in a proper Manner, and others, who have follow'd him, have eſpouſed the ſame Error, which would be propagated, *ad infinitum*, ſhould this Miſtake not be rectify'd, for the Benefit of the Publick. In order to this, I ſhall here briefly add ſome Particulars to the Account, the *Verändertes Ruſſland* (p. 132. §. 309.) has already given. This Great City is ſituated almoſt in the Center of the *Ruſſian Empire*, near the River *Muſcua*, in a pleaſant Plain; It contains four Circles, divided from each other by Walls and Ditches. The innermoſt of theſe is called *Cremlo*, or *Cremmelin*, where is the *Czar's* Pallace, ſurrounded with high Walls and Towers, and a very deep Moat, lin'd with Brickwork, which is ſupplied with Water on three Sides, by two different Rivers, *viz.* to the *South*, by the River *Muſcua*; and to the *West* and *North*, by the River *Neglina*. This
Pallace

Pallace is built after the ancient Manner; There are in it One Thousand Six Hundred Eighty Seven Apartments, inclusive of Cellars and Store-Places; Besides six Churches, and a Noble Garden, adorned with Groves of Trees, and fine Fountains, raised on the Top of a high arched Building; This is said to have cost immense Sums, on Account of the many Water-Machines, which force up the Water, from the River *Muscua*, to the Top of a very high Tower, in the Neighbourhood of this Building. The Roof of the Pallace is mostly covered with Iron Plates, and the Churches are covered with Copper-gilt, which has been partly ruin'd by a great Fire; But may be repair'd without a very great Charge. Before the Pallace, stands an ancient and pretty large Cathedral, in which there is a vast Treasure, in Gold, Silver, Jewels, and Costly Vessels. In the Middle of this Church, there hangs a large Silver-Sconce, having forty-eight Branches, and weighing Two Thousand Eight Hundred Pound-Weight. There is also a *New Testament*, richly adorned with Gold and precious Stones. Three Archbishops ly bury'd in this Cathedral, in Coffins of Silver, *viz.* *Peter*, *Philip*, and *Jonas*. Here is also to be seen a Coat, brought from *Persia*, said to be the Garment of CHRIST, which is kept in a Golden Box. The Decorations of the Images and Pictures of Saints, are vastly rich of Gold, Jewels, and other costly Trinkets. Whatever else is remarkable in this Church, as well as that of *St. Michael*, the Reader will find, in *p.* 138, *Seqq.* of *The Verænderdes Rusland*. Here I cannot, however, forbear taking Notice of the large Steeple or Tower caused to be erected close to this Cathedral, by *Czar Boris Gudenow*, which is Two Hundred Sixty-two Foot high, built entirely of Stone. There are in this Tower Eighty-six Bells, of different Sizes: The largest of which, call'd *Zaar* or *Czar*, weighs Thirty-two Thousand Weight; The next to this is called the Festival or Holy-days Bell, and weighs Twenty-two Thousand Weight; The third the *Sunday's* Bell, weighs One Thousand Six Hundred Weight; The fourth the every Day's Bell, One Thousand Two Hundred Weight. The largest of these Bells, which, in the Year 1702, was damaged by Fire, and sunk considerably, was to have been new cast, and Eight Thousand Pounds of Metal to be added to its Weight, for which

Purpose a Master-Founder was sent for from *Danzig* in 1725. But whether that Design is executed or not, I have not since enquired. I must not forget to mention the great Arsenal, which is built according to the Rules of Modern Architecture, and is a very stately Fabrick. The second Circle is called *Kitaigorod*, because here, besides other Commodities, are sold the Merchandizes that come from *China* (113); And this Part is chiefly designed for Trade. The Shops and Booths are not here in a Square or Round Market Place, or here and there interspersed among the Houses, as in *Germany* and other Countries; But each Species of Traders, according to the different Goods they deal in, have their particular Place or Street allotted them: The principal Streets of Shopkeepers are the following: (1.) *Owoschnoi*, Grocers Shops. (2.) *Surosnoi*, (i. e. raw, unbleached,) and here are sold all Sorts of woven Silk, and Cotton Piece-Goods. (3.) *Sukonoi*, Cloth Shops, here are sold Woollen Cloths and Mohair-Stuffs, Chaloons, and Camlets, &c. (4.) *Serebrenoi*, Plate Shops, Here they sell Gold, Silver, Jewels, &c. and in this Street are One Hundred and Eighty of these Shops. (5.) *Cbolstzewoi*, or Linnen Shops. (6.) *Kolokotnoi*, Bell-Metal Shops, where all Kind of wrought and unwrought Metal, as Copper, Brass, Bell-Metal, Tin, &c. is sold. (7.) *Szelesnoi*, Ironmonger-Shops. (8.) *Szedelnoi*, where are sold all Sorts of Harnasses, Bridles, Saddles and Horse-Furniture, as also Carriages. (9.) *Schaposchnoi*, Hats and Caps. (10.) *Saposchnoi*, Boots, Shoes and Slippers. (11.) *Wetoschnoi*, all Sorts of new and old Cloths, and Fur-Linings, for Winter wearing. (12.) *Krujewnoi*; Where Gold and Silver Wire-drawers Ware, as also Gold and Silver open and close Lace, Buttons, &c. are sold. (13.) *Sawiaschnoi*, where the like Goods made of Silk are to be had. (14.) *Krascheninoi*, Shops which

(113) *Andr. Müll. Greiffenb.* (in his *Hebd. observat.* p. 59.) is of opinion, that this Circle has the Name from its Situation, it being the Middlemost; Because *Kitai*, in the *Russian*, signifies the same as *Medium*, in *Latin*. He supports this Opinion by taking the Word *Kitai* to be only a Translation of the *Chinese* Name *Chung*, which they give to their Country, signifying *the Empire in the Middle of the World*, which they suppose their Empire to be; But since, as I have said above, the *Chinese* and *Kitaian* Commodities are unloaded, and sold, in this Part of the City of *Moscow*, and the *Russians* themselves say, it had its Name from thence, I cannot think his Conjecture to be just; Especially because this Middle Part is also called, by the *Russians*, *Czelaigorod*.

which sell *Colour'd Linnen*. (15.) *Schpasnoi*, *Sword-Cutlers*. (16.) *Samapatnoi*, where all Manner of *Fire-Arms* are sold. (17.) *Noschnoi*, *Cutlery-Ware*. (18.) *Schorniaschnoi*, all Sorts of *Fur-Garments* and *Caps*. (19.) *Panskoi*, or *Polish*, where are to be had divers *Forreign Goods*, as *Linnen*, *Silk Stockings*, *Gloves*, *Ribbons*, &c. (20.) *Armenski*, *Armenian Commodities*. (21.) *Mylnoi*, *Soap* and *Asbes*. (22.) *Viniceskoi*, *Glass* and *China Shops*. (23.) *Scheftianoi*, *Tinn-Ware*. (24.) *Sczepnoi*, *Turnery-Ware*. (25.) *Horschetschnoi*, *Potters-Ware*. (26.) *Korobeinoi*, *Joyners*, *Cabinet-Makers*, *Box* and *Trunk-Makers Goods*. (27.) *Ikonoi*, where *Pictures* and *Sculptures* are sold (114). (28.) *Swejschnoi*, *Wax*, *Tallow*, and *Candles*. (29.) *Syromiatnoi*, *Shops* where all Sorts of *White Strops*, *Tbongs*, and other Things of *Leather* are to be had, not colour'd nor waxed. (30.) *Koschenoi*, all Sorts of Goods made of *Sbamoy* and *Wash-Leather*. (31.) *Plotnoi*, *Whips*, *Sticks* and *Canes*. (32.) *Lapatnoi*, a Street where all Sorts of Things made of *Bast* are sold, as *Mats*, *Ropes*, *Shoes*, &c. (33.) *Okonischnoi*, where *Windows*, *Ifinglass*, and *Lantborns* are to be had. (34.) *Sczepetinnoi*, *Founders*. (35.) *Maskatilnoi*, the Street of *Druggists*. (36.) *Zamoschnoi*, the Street of *Lock Smiths*. (37.) *Manatenoi*, the Street where such Goods are sold, as are made in *Convents*. (38.) *Rybnoi*, where *Salt* and *Smoak-dry'd Fish* is sold. (39.) *Kalatschnoi*, *Bakers*. (40.) *Pirosznoi*, *Pastry Cooks* and *Cooks Shops*. (41.) *Cbmelnoi*, a Street where *Malt*, *Hony* and *Hops* are vended. (42.) *Maslenoi*, a Street where all Sorts of *Pressed Oils* are sold. (43.) Where *Garden-Seeds* and *Pickles* are to be had. (44.) *Schelkovoï*, where *raw* and *tbrown Silk* is sold. (45.) *Czulofchnoi*, *Worsted Stockings* and *Glove-Shops*. (46.) *Guof-dowoi*, where nothing but *Nails* and *Wire* are sold. (47.) *Winie pogreba*, a Street where all the *Wine* and *Ice-Vaults* are, and of these there are fifty-two on one Side, and forty-two on the other Side of the Street. Besides all these, there is, in this Division, a very large Ware-House, called, in the *Russian Tongue*, *Gostinoi-Dvor*, or the *House for Strangers*, where *Foreign Commodities* are sold by *Whole-sale*, as has been said above. Another

(114) *Das Veränderte Rußland*, p. 133. makes this Remark, That the Images of the *Gods* and *Saints* are sold, (or, as the *Russians* term it, barter'd for *Mony*,) in a particular District: And no-body dares to haggle in buying such a *Saint* or *God*, but must immediately pay down the *Mony* demanded, or else relinquish the Bargain.

ther Ware-House is called *Mitnoi*, where Oatmeal, Pease, Seeds of Poppy, and Hung Meat is sold. In this Part of the Town, are also three Convents, seventeen Churches, an Academy, a Printing-House, a Library, the Mint, and the Grand Dispensatory, which last is a very magnificent Building, and the Official Furniture is very rich, for the Pots are all of *China*, and the Glasses Chrystal. This Circle is secur'd by a Brick Wall of a considerable Height, fortify'd with several round and square Towers, and is called *Crasna-Stena*. One Side of this Part of *Muscow* joins to the Castle of *Kremle*, (or *Cremmelin*,) another is surrounded by the River *Muscua*, the third by the River *Neglina*, and the fourth is closed by the Wall, which is drawn from the *Neglina*, over a High Mount, and reaches to the *Muscua*. Two Gates are inwards, leading to the Palace, and five Gates outwards, leading into the third Circle. There are no wooden Houses or Buildings in these two innermost Divisions. The third Division, or Circle of this great City is called *Zare* or *Beloi-gorod*, the latter signifying the Town with a white Stone-Wall, because such a one encompasses it. This Wall takes in both the former, is semicircular, and extends to the River *Muscua*; But the *Neglina* runs through the Middle of this Town. This District is inhabited by many Persons of Quality, as *Knieses*, *Bojars*; and some of the Inferior Nobility, besides Merchants, Trade and Handicraftsmen; Especially Bakers and Brewers, which are here in Abundance, also Shops where Corn and Flour are sold, and Publick Houses, called *Kabacks*, where they sell Beer, Mead and Brandy. Here also are the Cattle- and the Wood- or House-Market, where Wooden Houses are sold ready-made in Joints, which may be taken to Pieces, and can, without much Trouble, be set together again. In this third Division, are the Czar's Stables, and the Gun- and Bell-Foundaries; Likewise a new Church built by Prince *Menjcbikow*, which, in the Year 1722, was almost destroy'd by Fire. A great many Places in this Circle ly wast, for want of rebuilding those Houses that were consumed by the great Fire, in the Year 1712, The Cause of which Neglect, was the Order of the Czar, that the Houses to be rebuilt should be Stone-Houses; And, at the same Time, the *Bojars*, and other Noble-men, were commanded to build Stone-Houses at *Peterf-*
burg;

burg; the Wall of this Town is not quite so high as the two innermost, but has a great Number of square Towers, and ten Gates leading to *Kitai-gorod* and *Kremle*. The fourth Circle is called *Zemlenoi-gorod*, or the Town surrounded with Ramparts of Earth. This not only encompasses the three before described Circles, but takes in a great Piece of the Rivers *Muscua* and *Jausa*. The Rampart of this outermost Division, which, for the most Part, is fall'n down, is in Extent eighteen *Wersts* and a half; It had formerly, besides two Stone-Gates, thirty-four wooden ones, which are all run to Ruin, but the two Stone-Gates, on the Top of one of which there is an Observatory, and a Mathematical School. There are several large Suburbs, as the *German Slabodda*, and that of the *Strelitzes*, without the Rampart, reaching above two *Wersts* farther; Beyond which there are a great many considerable Convents, whereof eight are walled in, and adorn'd with high Steeples. Seven of these are Friaries, viz. (1.) *Donskoi*. (2.) *Andrejewskoi*. (3.) *Danielowskoi*. (4.) *Simonow* (115). (5.) *Novoi*. (6.) *Andronnikow*. And (7.) *Novinskoi*. The eighth is a Nunnery called *Novo-Devitzei*, the Place of the Confinement of the Princess *Sophia* (116). The *German Slabodda*, or Suburb, is very well described in the above cited Dictionary of *Hubner*. Besides these, there are round about this vast City, within a few *Wersts* Distance, several large Palaces, (the three first of which are situated near the River *Jausa*.) (1.) *Preobrasenskoi*, where *Emperour Peter the First* constantly resided, when he was near *Muscow*, from which, likewise, the first Regiment of Guards had its Name. (2.) *Semanowskoi*, where Prince *Menscbikow*, at first, used to reside; This has given Name to the second Regiment of Guards. (3.) *Pokrowskoi*, exactly opposite to *Semanowskoi*, on the other Side of the River, where the *Czar's* two Sisters, the Princesses *Mary* and *Nathalia* used to reside. (4.) *Ismaelow*, seven *Wersts* from *Kremle*, which was kept in very good Repair during the Time of *Czar Alexei*; Here are fine Gardens, and round this Palace, are above sixty Fish-Ponds; The *Czarina Dowager Paraskovia*, with Her Daughters, made this Her Abode. (5.) *Koloniskoe*, seven *Wersts* from

(115) See *Veranderter Russland*, p. 143.(116) See *Veranderter Russland*, p. 142.

from *Muscow*, near the River *Muscua*, a magnificent Palace, with large Gardens, a Place where *Czar Alexei* used chiefly to reside. This was repair'd, by Order of *Czar Peter*, in the Year 1724. (6.) *Worochievacbowa*, situated on a high Hill, near the River *Muscua*, four *Wersts* from the City, was built by *Czar Theodor*, the last of that Name. Near this Residence are, likewise, exclusive of these *Imperial Palaces*, many other Palaces and Seats of Princes and Noblemen, of which the most Magnificent are those which Prince *Menscikow* built, and that of *Narischkin* and the *Czerkaskian*. In short, it may, with Truth be affirmed, that few Residences of Kings or Princes, in *Europe*, are situated on so fine, pleasant, fruitful, and healthful a Plain as the City of *Muscow*.

N.

NABAT. By this Word are understood in *Russia*, two different Things: (1.) It is the Name of a Bell hanging in one of the highest Steeples, which is rung Morning and Evening, as a Signal for the opening and shutting the Gates, as also to give the Alarm where a Fire breaks out, in any Part of the City. (2.) The great Drum, of two Ells Diameter, is so called in the Army; This has hitherto been used, when the *Czars* went into the Field in Person, and served to give a Signal, for the Army to break up, or encamp. This Drum differs not much from the *Omlambe*, barring the superstitious Notions the *Negritii* had concerning it.

NAPHTHA. In the Province of *Schirvan*, near *Schamakei*, and the Town of *Baku*, in *Persia*, are two Springs of very good *White Naphta*, and many others which yield the black Sort of this *Bitumen*; All the Ground about this Town is full of this Mineral Oil. If you dig but the least Depth into the Earth, and bring any Fire near the Hole, you will see immediately a Flame, which will continue burning 'till it is choaked up again with Earth; For Water will not extinguish it. About *Susa*, in *Persia*, the best Sort of this *Bitumen* is found. Probably, the Name *Naphta* may proceed from the Word *Nephtar* or *Necbphar*, a Name given, by the Companions of *Nchemia*, to the

Place where the Priests had hid the *Holy Fire*, before the *Babylonian* Captivity: For they came from *Persia*. (See *second Maccab. Chap. i. ver. 36.*)

NASAD, Is a Name they give, at *Astracan*, to those large flat-bottom'd Vessels in which they bring Goods to *Nischniegorod*; they carry back in them, by Way of Return, Corn, Brandy, Wood, and other *Russian* Commodities. These Vessels are very strongly built, and carry one Mast and a large Sail; But as they can only go before the Wind, they generally have Three or Four Hundred Men on Board, who, in Case of contrary Wind, are obliged to tow them.

NEMDA, Is a small Brook to the South of the City of *Klinow*, which runs into the *Pischna*, and this into the River *Wiatka*, near a Village call'd *Kukarka*. This little Brook *Nemda* is deem'd *Holy* by the *Wetiaks*, a Sect of *Pagans*, who offer up their Sacrifices, and perform their Superstitious Worship there.

NIRET, Is a small Town, on the River *Kolwa*, in *Great Permia*, noted for an Image of *St. Nicholas*, which, according to the Belief of the *Russians*, works great Miracles; And, on that Account, many Pilgrimages are, every Year, made thither, from *Muscow* and other Places.

NOETEBURG, Called, by the *Finnlandians*, *Peybensari*, goes now by the Name of *Schlüsselburg*.

NORKS, Are a kind of little Animals in *Russia*, which burrough under Ground; They are much of the Colour of an *Otter*, but a great deal less, and about the Size of a *Martin*. One of these Skins is sold, in *Russia*, from twelve to fifteen *Kopeiks*, and a *Zimmer*, which contains sixty or eighty Skins, from ten to twelve *Rubels*. This kind of Furr is very good for Linings, and very much used.

NOVA-USOLIE. A Town in *Permia*, near the River *Kama*, twenty *Wersts* from *Solikamskoi*: It is the Property of Baron *Stroganow*, where he mostly resides; He has caused a very fine House to be built in this Place for himself, and one Church of Bricks, and two of Wood. In this Town are the most famous, and the largest Salt-Works in all *Russia*, consisting of seventy-nine large Pans, whence annually three Millions of *Puds* of Salt are deli-

deliver'd out, the Custom whereof, to the Government, amounts to Three Hundred Thousand Rubels. Not including the Duty of the Saltworks of *Wytzygotskaija*, likewise deliver'd by the said *Stroganow*, and exclusive of all other Salt-Works possess'd by other Proprietors.

NOVOGORODOK SEWERSKOI, Is a well fortify'd Town, near the River *Desna*, in the Principality of *Severia*, or, according to the late Division of the *Empire*, under the Government of *Kiew*.

O.

OBELISK, Is a Kind of Monumental Pillar, of four Sides, the Basis of which is Square, growing smaller from the Bottom upwards, and ending at last in a Point like a Pyramid. The *French* call it also *Aiguille*. The Reader may here see what the Author of the *Hist. Genealog. des Tartars*, published at *Leyden*, 1726, says, p. 143, (117) viz. *Qu'en l'Année 1721, un certain Medecin, envoyé par le feu Empereur de la Russie, pour examiner les diverses Plantes & Racines que la Siberie peut produire, étant arrivé, en compagnie de quelques Officiers, Prisonniers Suedois, du côté de la riviere de Tzulim à l'Ouest de la Ville de Crasnoyabr, il y trouva dressé, au beau milieu de la grande Steppe, qui regne de ce côté, une espee d'Aiguille, taillée d'une Pierre blanche ayant environ seize pieds de Hauteur, &c. and il y avoit une Inscription sur l'un des côtes de la grande Aiguille, que le Tems avoit déjà effacé en plusieurs Endroits, &c.* Of this Monumental Stone, the Reader has the Figure, *Tab. V. Letter A.* and since this Author is not very particular, in his Account concerning it, not having had sufficient Knowledge thereof, I shall here be a little more Circumstantial in my Description of it. After my Arrival, and some Stay, at *Tomskoi*, in Company with *Dr. Messerschmidt*, in the Year 1721, the Doctor, in the Month of July, pursued his Way towards *Kusnetsko*, and went by Water up the River *Tomber*; While I, for some particular Reasons, chose to remain behind, and, besides, had an Inclination to take a Tour towards the Left, in Order to make some Observations. The Doctor being gone beyond

(117) Which, as I have mention'd in my *Preface*, has been translated under my Care, into the German Language, from the *Tartarian Manuscript* of *Abulgasi Bagatur Chan*

yond *Kusnetsko*, almost as high as the Head of the said River (118), he left the Vessel, took Horse, and travell'd, to the Left, 'till he came to the River *Uibeit*, which discharges itself into the River *Abakan*. Here he observed a small *Steppe*, or Desert, called *Suburgan*, between the Mountains, where he saw many Sepulchral Hills, and at about a Day's Journey farther, near a Rivulet, called *Bée*, he met with one of these Hills, on which this *Obelisk* was plac'd, the Draught of which was taken by a *Swedish* Boy whom he had with him. In the Year 1722, the Peace being concluded, I was oblig'd to return home, together with this *Swedish* Boy, and taking my Leave of the said Doctor, he gave me divers Things to deliver, at *Petersburg*, to the Principal Physician of the *Emperour*, and some to Dr. *Blumentrost*, one of the Physicians in ordinary. The little Box, which I deliver'd to the latter, was open'd in my Presence, where, among other Things, there was the Draught of this Stone, of which I have here given a Copy. I cannot give the

ex-

(118) The *Tartars*, not only hereabouts, but farther up into the Country, call the Source or Spring of a River *Basch-Inda*, and the *Russians*, *Werscb* or *Werscb-ina*. Now *Basch* signifying *Head*, by which they understand the *Source*, and *Inda* as much as *End*; It puts me in Mind of the Appellation which *Pliny* gives to the Head of the *Palus Martia*, viz. *Terwir-Inda*, i. e. the *End of the Sea*, or *Maris Finis*. (Vid. *Diſſion. Car. Steph.* p. 1264.) But then *Temir*, or *Temir*, signifying in the *Turkish* and *Tartarian* Languages, *Iron*, and this Word being often used, by them, figuratively, speaking of a Place, to denote its being *strong*, *well fortify'd*, *impregnable*, and of a Person's being *robust* and *powerful*; For Instance, the Pais near *Derbent* is called *Temir-Kapi*, i. e. *Iron Gates*. And between the Lake *Juan*, or *Iwan*, where the *Donn* or *Tanaïs* arises, and the *Palus Martia*, so long ago as the Time of *Herodotus*, a Mote and Rampart was drawn, as he takes Notice, I think in his VI. Book, it may very well be that the ancient *Scythians*, the then Inhabitants of that Neighbourhood, call'd it *Temir-Inda*, that is, *the Place where the Fortification ended*. It is hardly credible, how many ancient Names and Words which are here and there found in ancient Writers, and in the ancient *European* Tongues, are still to be met with in *Siberia* and *Tartary*. And I will presume to say, that if a Person well skill'd in the ancient and modern Tongues, should happen to come into these Countries, and examine the Dialect and Signification of Words, he would clearly see, that the obscure Terms in the several *European* Tongues, are to be met with in some one Tongue or other of these People. For Example, the *Latin* Word *Limosus* is still in Use among the *Ostjacks*, near the River *Oby*; For they call a great Lake and Morass, out of which a River arises, *Limen*: Which Word *Isbrand Ides*, in his Travels, mentions, speaking of a great Lake, when he was on the River *Oby*, near the Town of *Surgut*; And this very Lake I had likewise describ'd to me by the *Ostjacks*, on Account of its great Extent. But *Herodotus* uses this very Word, when he speaks of the Source of the River *Tanaïs*, which proceeds out of a morassy Lake; And who knows, but the River *Sirgis*, mention'd by the same Author, on the same Occasion, may mean the same as the Name of the Town of *Surgut*, near the River *Oby*? the Signification of which I had not at that Time an Opportunity to learn.

exact Height, Breadth and Thickness of this Stone, having lost my Manual, but to the best of my Remembrance, it was about a Foot thick, two Foot broad, and sixteen Foot high; And the Stone was *Grey*. Should I happen to mistake in the Dimensions, it will not be of any great Consequence, since the Figure and Characters are justly and accurately delineated, which latter may serve the Curious to compare with others, for Instance, the *Runian* Characters. This, however, is certain, that they are not all *Runian*, but are intermix'd with a Sort of ancient *Partbian* Letters. Compare, upon this Head, the Account given above, from *l'Histoire de Timur-Beck*, of Monsieur *La Croix*, under the Titles of *Characters*, *Medals*, and *Hieroglyphical Figures*, &c. It is great Pity that Time, Wind, and Weather, had then erased most of these Characters, and that Dr. *Messerschmidt* had not Time and Opportunity enough to make a longer Stay in those Places, where he might have taken Draughts of several Things, worthy of Notice; But the indifferent Preparation and Provision for such an important Tour, and Enquiry, made by the then Physical College, who left this Gentleman almost without Assistants (whereas it would have employ'd ten Persons, to have made proper Observations on all the remarkable Things they met with,) has doubtless been a Hindrance to a nicer Search, not only into these, but many other Things. I have already made some Mention above, of the Figure and Stone in *Tab. XII.* which was found not far from a little Town called *Ostrock-Abakan*, on the River *Jenisei*; This may be compar'd with *Tab. II.* where the whole Situation of the Place is to be seen, and the particular Spot where that Stone is placed. It is a *Russian* Ell broad at the *Basis*, three Quarters a-cross the Shoulders, and two Ells and three Quarters in Height, standing with the Face to the *East*. To me it seems that this Stone was design'd for a *Priapus*; The Back Part of it was, at first, full of Rows of Characters, which are now almost obliterated by Length of Time, and the Inclemencies of Weather; In this very Place were found the Graves indicated by *Letter L.* in *Tab. II.* And the Corner Stones of them, of which the Reader has the Draught in *Tab. XI.* All these Things may properly be compared with what has been said under the Titles of Antiquities, Tombs, Characters, Medals, &c.

OAKS.

OAKS. There grow none in *Siberia*, nor on the *East-side* of the *Wolga*; But on the *West-side*, and in the Kingdom of *Casan*, on the contrary, they are found in great Plenty. This serves, in some measure, to corroborate, what some Natural Philosophers observe, *viz.* That there is a Contrariety in Nature between the Oak and all oily Substances. For in *Siberia*, and on the *East-side* of the River *Wolga*, abundance of Cedars grow; and the Kernels which are very oily, are every where scatter'd about by Beasts and Birds: Whereas, on the *West-side* of this River, and about *Casan*, there is no such Thing. Hence also it seems not improbable, what is said concerning the Walnut-Tree, *viz.* that if it be planted in a Spot where an Oak has stood before, it will wither away.

OBY. The Head of this famous River, in *Siberia* and *Tartary*, is rocky; But from the Mouth of the *Tomber* downwards, its Banks are low, flat, and of a curious white Sand, without hardly a Peble among it. The *Tartars* call this River, from its Conjunction with the River *Irtisch* to the Sea, by the Name of *U-mar*; Which is, perhaps, the same Word, that *Pliny* gives to the *Euphrates*, when it grows broad and large, *viz.* *Omira*. (See *Dict. Car. Steph.* p. 911.) The River *Oby* is also call'd, by some ancient Authors, *Carambycin*, *Caramby*, or *Carambucis*. (See *Plin. Lib. VI. cap. 13. & 17.*) All which are erroneous Pronunciations of the Word *By*. For the Word *Cara* only properly signifies black, but, improperly, raging, cruel, and terrible. Since, therefore, the Sense of the Word *By*, which the *Turks* pronounce *Bay*, is *Prince* or *Lord*, not only the Ancients gave that Name to this River, to distinguish it from other lesser Rivers, in this Country; But its Head, consisting in two principal Springs, the one is still call'd *By*, the other *Chatun*, or *Katun* (i. e. *Prince* and *Princess*.) But its being at this Time call'd *Oby*, proceeds from the *Russians*, who becoming Masters of *Siberia*, chang'd the Name *U-By* into *Oby*. For the *Asiatick* Nations, as I have often said above, generally prefix a Vowel before a proper Name, e. g. The *Ostiaks* call the River *Oby*, *U-mar*; the *Jakubti*, the *Lena* *U-Russ*. The *Vandals* were formerly call'd in *Europe*, *U-Wandaloi*, and the *Venetians*, *U-Veneti*: And just so it is with the Word *U-By*. However, the *Russians* did not alter the Name of this River without some Reason, and merely because there is but a small Difference in the Sounds

Sounds of *U-by* and *Oby*; but because the *By* and *Katun* unite into one Stream, near the Village call'd *By-katun*, and the Word *Ob* signifying, in the *Sclavonian* and *Russian*, *Both*, or a *Conjunction of two*, they have given this River, on that Account, the Name of *Oby*, from the Place of that Conjunction. Those little transparent Pebbles of which the Author of *l'Histoire Geneal. des Tartars* (p. 115.) makes Mention, are only found in this River, from the Mouth of the *Tomber* upwards, as also in the River *Tomber* and *Kemtzyck*, which discharges itself into the River *Czulim*. To give a Complete Description of this River would require many Sheets; But Time will not allow it at present; Tho' it may perhaps be done, at another Opportunity. In the mean Time, the Author of *l'Histoire Geneal. des Tartars*, in his Notes to (p. 114. *seq.*) has, in some measure, perform'd this Task.

OCTUS, or *Uktus*, Is a Village in *Siberia*, where there are Iron Works, at the Source of the River *Ifett*: Here are two Forging-Mills, with four Hammers, eight Hearths, one Pinching-Hammer, as also six Furnaces for smelting Copper. The Ore is brought thither from two Mines, one call'd the *Old Mine*, 20 *Wersts*, and the other the *New Mine*, 40 *Wersts* distant from this Place; But they are neither of them very rich.

ONEGA, Is the Name of a Lake, 180 *Wersts* in Length, and 80 in Breadth.

OSERO, signifies, among the *Russians*, an *Inland Lake*, and sometimes a *Wyck*, which the *Tartars* call *Nurr*, the *Kalmucks*, *Kull*, *Koll*, and also *Goll*; Words often met with in the Maps of *Russia* and *Tartary*.

OSTIAKS, A People call'd by the *Tartars*, *Ysch-steck*, an Account of whom we find at large in the *Verändertes Russland*. I once, by Chance, when I was among them, near the River *Oby*, saw one of their Temples, and the Manner of their Worship, which they then perform'd according to their *Pagan* Rites. This Temple was built of Wood, in an oblong Figure, like a great Barn, cover'd at the Top with the Bark of Birch. At the end of the Wall, supporting the Gable, there was a Kind of Altar somewhat elevated, made of Timber, on which were plac'd two Idols, the Figures of a Man, and a Woman, dress'd in all Sorts of Rags, and round about these were other small Figures, as Deer, Hares,

Renne-Deer, Foxes, &c. all which were roughly carv'd in Wood, and likewise cloath'd with Rags. I could not observe any great Devotion in them, nor any great Reverence paid by them to their Idols; But only this, that they walk'd about, and perpetually made a Noise, with their Mouths, like Mice and Rats. It is said, that formerly they were wont to drown a Virgin, once a Year, in the River *Oby*, as a Sacrifice to the God of that River; As the *Egyptians* used to do to that of the *Nile*. (See *Voyage du Sieur Paul Lucas*, Tom. 1. p. 316.)

OTTERS. In those Parts of *Russia* where they harbour, they are caught chiefly in Winter, with Baits and Snares, with a Hook to them. They couple in *February*, the She goes nine Months, and casts 3 or 4 young ones.

OWLS. There are a Sort of Owls in *Siberia*, not far from *Crasnoyahr*, which are as white as Snow, and as large as Hen-Turkeys; The *Russians* call them *Lün*, and *Ulün*; The *Tartars*, *Ackia* and *Acky*; and the *Kalmucks* name them *Zagan Schub*, and also *Zagan Gorockun*. The latter hold them sacred, and suffer no-body to shoot them. I never ask'd them the Reason of it; But I find, in *Hübner's Political History of Tartary*, in an Extract of the Life and Actions of *Cingis-Chan*, Founder of the Monarchy of the *Mungal* and *Kalmuck Tartars*, the following Account: It happen'd that he, and his small Army, were surpriz'd, and put to Flight, by his Enemies; And seeking to conceal himself in a small Coppice, where he might very easily have been discover'd by the Enemy, an Owl, which is a very shy Bird, settled upon one of the Bushes, which made his Pursuers desist from looking for him there, not thinking any Man could be hid where this Bird would stay: This gave *Cingis-Chan* an Opportunity of making his Escape by the Favour of the Night. And seeing the Preservation of his Life was entirely owing to the Owl, this Bird was, from that Time, look'd upon so sacred, that every one of them wore a Plume of Owl's Feathers on his Head. Now since in these Parts, there are white Owls which are rever'd by the People, that historical Passage seems to carry along with it the Face of Truth. For this is certain, that the *Kalmucks*, when they celebrate any great Festival, always wear colour'd Owl's Feathers in their Caps, and

and the *Wogulitzi* have, among other Idols, a wooden Owl, to which they fasten the Legs of a natural One.

P.

PARTRIDGES Are only met with in the Southern Parts of *Siberia*; viz. about *Crasnoyabr* and *Abakan*, near the River *Jenisei*.

PAWLOWSKI PEREVOZ, Is a small City, forty *Wersts* from *Nischneygorod*, near the River *Oka*, belonging to *Knies Czercaski*. All the Inhabitants of this Place are Lock- and Gun-Smiths, and are noted, all over *Russia*, for their neat Work.

PERESLAW SALESKOI, A City, One Hundred and Twenty *Wersts* distant from the City of *Muscow*, situated near a great Lake, on which *Emperour Peter the First* had, in the Beginning of his Inclination for Shipping, two small Frigats, for his Diversion. They are still kept there, secur'd from the Inclemency of the Weather, for a perpetual Remembrance.

PEREWES, the *Russian* Name of a large Decoy-Net, which they set up in *Autumn*, to catch wild Geese and Ducks; See above, under the Title *Ducks*.

PESETZ or PESZI. The Name of those Foxes, which are found in *Siberia*, along the *Mare Glaciale*, and in the Provinces of *Petziora*, *Berelow*, *Jakubtskoi*, and especially about *Manga-zei*; Of these there are two Sorts; One is quite White, the other of a blackish Brown, and they are near as long, but thicker than the common Foxes; They have shorter Legs, and longer Hair, but very soft and close. The Skin is thin and light, therefore very fit for wearing; And it is almost the warmest of all Furs. The black ones are mostly sent to *Turky*, *Tartary*, *Persia*, and *China*; Because they sell five or six Times as dear as the white, which last are used in *Russia*, to lay upon Beds, or make Coverlets of. In *Germany*, these Skins are called blue Foxes, and white Foxes. *Lapland* produces some of these; But they are neither in such Plenty, nor so good.

PETINA, In the *Russian* Tongue, signifies a fifth Part. This Word is used as a proper Name, in two Cases: (I.) When formerly the Republick, now the Province of *Great Novogrod*, was divided into five Parts, then was each called a *Petina*, e.g. (1.) *Vodskaja Petina*, under which was comprized *Ingria*. (2.) *Oboneskaja Petina*, to which belong'd *Ladoga* and *Olonetz*. (3.) *Bezscbetskaja Petina*, in which is *Bezscbetskoi Werch*. (4.) *Derevskaja Petina*, containing *Welikie-lukie*, as also old and new *Rusa*. (5.) *Scbalonskaja Petina*, in which are situated the Cities of *Porchow* and *Opoka*. (II.) *Petina* is called, in the Provinces of *Pleskow* and *Novogrod*, an extraordinary Revenue, where the Lord or Proprietor, instead of Money, takes the fifth Part of the Produce in Kind; For Instance, a Stranger occupies my Land, he pays me the fifth Part of the Crop after the Seed Grain is deducted; But if he fishes in my Royalty, or holds a Meadow of mine, he is to give me a fifth of what he makes, without deducting the Charges. Some Gentlemen in *Russia* take the fifth of all young Cattle instead of Money. But the Government receives no *Petina*.

PIAZENSA, Is a small Town in *Siberia*, in the *Worcboturian* District, where there is a Steel-Fabrick, and a Forge.

PIRTNA WOLOCK, Is a Place in *Carelia*, Three Hundred *Wersts* North of *Olonetz*, where they smelt, every Year, a vast Quantity of Copper: Not far from hence, at a Place call'd *Powentza*, are two smelting Furnaces, and four Hammer-Mills. Within this District, are also the *Ustroka-Petrowskian*, and *Alexeian* Mines, the last of which is sixty *Wersts* from the Sea.

PLAIN, A *Plain* is called, in the *Russian* Tongue, *Steppe*, and *Pole*; By the *Turks*, *Dschüle*; By the *Tartars*, *Cumm*; By the *Mungals*, *Tala*; And by the *Persians*, *Descht*.

Pox, (*Small*) was formerly unknown to the *Pagan Koræiki*, *Lamuti* and *Kamtscbadali*, about the Bay of *Lama*. But since the *Russians* have got Possession of those Countries, these *Pagans* have received the Infection from them, and great Numbers dy of this Distemper.

POLUSHKA, Is the smallest *Russian* Copper Coin, four being equal to one *Kopeik*; This was formerly a Silver-Coin, bearing on one Side the Name of the *Czar*, and, on the Reverse, a Pidgeon. But they are now coined of Copper only.

PORRUM, or *Leek*. There are both Garden and wild Leeks; The latter is very common, and grow plentifully, in many Parts of *Siberia*; And the *Russians* call it *Scheremscha*. Every Master of a Family, among the *Ostiacks*, near the River *Oby*, fetches, during the Summer Season, every Morning, a good Boats Load of Leeks, which are generally consumed by Night.

POSTILLA, Is a kind of Sweatmeat made, in *Russia*, of divers Sorts of Fruit, as *Apples*, *Pears*, *Strawberries*, *Rasberries*, &c. The other Ingredients are Sugar or Honey, Eggs, and a very little Flour. They make it in Leaves, as thin almost as Paper, and rolling them up, bring them, as they do other Sweatmeats, to Table; some make Use of them for Tarts, &c. They will keep three Years, and longer, and yet remain good.

POWDER. Ammunition-Powder costs the Government of *Russia* but sixty *Kopeiks per Pud*, of forty Pounds.

PROPHETS. The *Mabometans* have, in all, One Hundred Twenty-four Thousand Prophets, Three Hundred and Thirteen of which are called *Mursells*, or the *Principal*; Among these are five, whom they esteem the Chief of all, viz. (1.) *Ishai*, or *Christ*. (2.) *Anu*, or *Enoch*. (3.) *Ibrabim*, or *Abraham*. (4.) *Moise*, or *Moses*; And, (5.) Their *Mabomet*, to whom, however, they give the first Place.

PROTOK. A Word which often occurs in the Maps of *Russia*; It denotes a narrow Passage from one great Stream to another, where two Branches have framed an Island.

PUD. A *Russian* Weight, of forty *Russian*, or about thirty-six *English* Pounds. Ten *Puds* make one *Bercowetz*, which Word *Hübner*, in his Dictionary, spells wrong, with a *P*.

PUMICE STONE. There is a Kind of black *Pumice Stone*, in *Siberia*, between the Cities of *Crasnoyabr* and *Abakan*.

Q.

QUARNI-PATSCH; A Name the *Ostiacks*, who live near the River *Oby*, give to Bear's Gall. If one meets any of them upon this River, and only calls out the Word *Quarni-patsch*, they presently come, with their little Boats, and bring a good Quantity, and at a very cheap Rate; Generally a Gall, well dry'd, may be had for as much *Cbinese Tobacco*, as amounts, in Value, to two *Kopeiks*.

R.

REMES. Is a small Bird to be met with both in *Russia* and *Siberia*; It is somewhat thinner, but has longer Feathers, than a *Canary Bird*. On the Back it is of a light Grey, and on the Belly of a greenish *Yellow*. This Bird builds its Nest by the River-Side, and most commonly on a Twig of Willow, which hangs over the Water. These Nests are very artfully and neatly made, in Shape not unlike the Bag of a Bagpipe, when full blown. It is about six Inches long, and about three Inches in Diameter. It is made of very soft Materials, and if torn, or pick'd asunder, looks like white flock Silk. One would almost imagine, by the Appearance of these Nests, that this Bird gathers the Silky Fur of the Catkins of Willows, in the Spring, for that Purpose. At the narrow End of this Nest, which is open, and looks like the Neck of a Bird-Bottle, the Bird enters, lays its Eggs in the lower Part of the Belly of the Nest, and there hatches its young Ones, being all the while shelter'd from Rain, and the Inclemency of Weather. This Nest never falls off, let the Wind blow ever so hard, but is only rock'd to and fro. The *Russian* Merchants in *Siberia* are very ready to buy these Nests, they being put to several Uses; In the first Place, they make Socks of them, they being soft and warm; In the second Place, they are chopped small, and given to Horses, mix'd among their Provender, as a Remedy for some Disorders attending them. Nay, some pretend to cure several Distempers of the Human Species with

with them ; But whether it answers, in the Effect, I am not acquainted. Some of these, are seen here and there, in *Germany*, in Cabinets of Rarities. *Valentine*, in the second Book of his *Theatre*, takes Notice of this Bird, though not by the Name of *Remes*.

ROADS, or WAYS, by *Land or Water*, from *Russia* to *Siberia*. The most usual Roads from *Muscow* to *Siberia*, the Reader will not only find mark'd in my Map, but has also an Account of them in other Authors, as: *Isbrand Ides*; *Das Veränderte Russland*, (p. 72.) &c. There is another Way by *Casan*, to the City of *Ufa*, and thence through the Country of the *Tartarian Bascbirrs*, into *Siberia*; But this is not always safe, unless a large Company goes together. In the Summer, Goods may be carried, by Water, from *Wologda*, by the City call'd *Ustjuga*, into the River *Witziogda*, and up that River to its Source, from whence flow two Brooks, called *Kæltma*, by the Means of which Vessels, passing by *Solikamskoi*, are carried into the River *Kama*, and thence farther into the River *Tschinsowa*, quite to *Siberia*. I have not met with any Writer, that gives an Account of the Ways, by Water, from *Solikamskoi*, *Northward*, into *Siberia*; For which Reason, I shall here give some Account of them. From *Solikamskoi* you go by Water to the River *Kama*, up this River to the Mouth of the *Kolwa*, up which you proceed, 'till you come to its Conjunction with the River *Witzschira*; You travel up this Two Hundred *English* Miles, then leave it on the left Hand, and go into the River *Wolsian*, and follow that, 'till you arrive near the Mountains, to a small Space of Land, about sixteen *English* Miles in Breadth, called *Kolskoi-Wolock*: This you cross, by Land, 'till you come to the little River *Koll*, where you take Water again, and proceed to the River *Waja*, thence into the *Lofwa*, through this into the River *Taffda*, passing the City of *Pelim*, and so on to *Tobolsky*. But if you have a Mind to deviate, and go more *Northward* into *Siberia*, to *Beresowa*, you must, from the *Waja*, enter the River *Cofwa*, and when you are come to its Source, you will find, between this, and the Source of the River *Ussa*, a Tract of Land, call'd *Schem-Wollock*, about eight *English* Miles broad; Here you pass again by Land, and, then, by Water again, on the River

River *Ussa*, into the Brook *Jeletz*, at the End of which there is another *Wolock*, or Space of Land to get over ; After which, the River *Jabazkia* carries you to *Beresowa*. But to go from *Archangel* to *Solikamskoi*, you go from the River *Dwina*, into the *Wimm* and *Nimm*, then cross a *Wolock*, called *Bukonin*, about seven *Wersts* over, thence on the Rivulet *Malock*, into the *Kolwa*, and so to *Tzordin* and *Solikamskoi*. If, again, you are desirous to travel from *Archangel*, *Eastward*, along the Sea-Side to the Mouth of the River *Pytziora*, you may afterwards go up this River in small Craft, which will bring you into the *Northern* Parts of *Siberia*. For the River *Pytziora* leads into the *Ussa*, near the Head of this there fall two Brooks into it, called *Jeletz* and *Tzernaja*, which latter leads, between the Mountains, into the River *Sobb*, which falls into the great River *Oby*; Whereas the former brings you, as I have said already, to *Beresowa*. It was my first Intention to take Notice, under this Title, of all the principal Roads, and Ways, through and out of *Siberia*, to the bordering Countries. But this requiring a pretty deal of Room, I have chosen to defer it to another Opportunity. Now I am speaking of the Roads and Ways leading into *Siberia*, I cannot, however, forbear mentioning, what an odd Sort of a Guide I met with in *Siberia*, in the Year 1722, when, after the Peace was concluded, I was returning from *Crasnoyabr* to *Tobolsky*. I have already mention'd, in another Place, that my Guide run away. Going along the River *Czutim*, and, in my Way, passing by a small *Russian* Fort, call'd *Utramski-Ostrook*, guarded by *Russian* *Cossacks*, I complain'd of my Mischance, and told them that I was at a Loss how to continue my Journey; I own'd that I had five *Tartars* with me, to row the Float; But doubted whether they might not, perhaps, leave me too, and oblige me to stay by the Way; One of the *Cossacks* answer'd, I had no Occasion to be uneasy, having already five Men with me; They would find Ways and Means to get themselves relieved by others. However, It was his Opinion, that I would do well to send one of these five Men, in a little Boat or Canoe, before, to the next *Jurts* or *Hutts*, where they were to be relieved, with a Piece of Cord, about as thick as ones Finger, on which three Knots must be ty'd, and to bid him acquaint those of the next Stage, that a Gen-

Gentleman was coming, who had an Order for taking fresh Men at every Stage. This I did, and proceeded with my remaining four Men. As soon as we reached the Stage, we saw four Men standing ready on the River Side, I ask'd whether my Cord was deliver'd to them, and gone to the next Place, they answered yes. In short, this Cord carried me safely through to my Journey's End. This brings to my Remembrance, what I have read since, in the *Northern Voyages*, to *Nova Zembla*; And though I cannot be positive as to the Page; Yet, I am sure, the Substance of the Story is to this Effect: A Master of a Vessel anchoring on the Coast of *Boronday*, which is between *Pytziora* and *Nova Zembla*, asked the People of the Country, who are *Samojeds*, about the Situation and Circumstances of the Coast; they told him, that he had yet several dangerous Points to double, before he could reach the Streight of *Weygatz*. But that, if he was desirous of a quick Passage, they could furnish him with a Cord, on which there were ty'd three Knots; That if when he came to the first Point, he untied one, he would have a fair Wind; And if, at the next Point, he untied a second, he would obtain a brisk Gale; But they would not advise him to untie the third, For that would raise a Storm, and might endanger his Ship. The Master purchas'd this Cord of the *Samojeds*, and follow'd their Direction, as to the two first Knots, by which Means he quickly doubled the two Points; But his Curiosity leading him to try the third Knot, it occasion'd so violent a Storm, that had he not been pretty near a Harbour, it would have cost him dear. By this it appears, (though my Knots had no such Property) that the *Tartars* have the Custom of using Cords, with three Knots, as well as the *Samojeds*. I confess, I did not ask the *Cossacks* what was their Reason for sending a knotted Cord, in that Manner, being, at that Time, glad to make Use of any Means, - that would carry me forward.

RUBEL, Is a *Russian* Silver-Coin, about the Size of a Crown-Piece, in Value ten *Griffweens*, or One Hundred *Kopeiks*; Two Rubels are of equal Value with a *Ducat*. They go generally in *Holland* for fifty-five to sixty *Stivers*, according as the Exchange runs. Formerly they had no other Coin in *Russia* but *Denga's* (of the Value of half a *Kopeik*,) and their way of Reckoning

was to have a Tally, and at the Sum of every Hundred *Denga's*, they cut a Notch upon the Tally, which Notch they called *Rubel*: And, therefore, when they afterward coin'd Silver-Coin, of just one Hundred *Kopeiks* in Value, they call'd it a *Rubel*, or Notch.

S.

SABLES. Several Authors have, here and there, given Descriptions of this Species of precious Animals, I shall therefore only add thus much: *Viz.* (1.) That it is the Nature of these Creatures, at a certain Time of the Winter, to sleep for a while; But first they hide themselves so securely, that it is a very hard Matter to find any of them. And if, at any Time, they are discovered, they ly wrapped up, as it were, like a Ball, and you may roll and throw them about, without waking them. (2.) That they live upon Mice, Cedar-Kernels, Red Berries, Fish, &c. (3.) That those Years, when Cedar-Kernels, and Red Berries are most Plenty, these Animals are the most difficult to be found, and their Fur is the worse; Because feeding plentifully, they rest most; On the contrary, if there be a Scarcity of Cedar-Kernels and Berries, they are easier caught; For they then run more about, and Exercise makes the Fur much more beautiful. (4.) That the most beautiful *Sable-Skins* have generally the worst *Tails*, and the worst *Skins*, on the contrary, the finest *Tails*. (5.) That there are *Sables* as white as Snow, but they are met with very rarely. (6.) Upon the Islands, in the *North-Eastern Sea*, beyond *Kamtschatki*, the *Sables* are very indifferent, but then they have *Tails* a Quarter of a *Russian* Ell long, streaked Red and Black. Near *Crasnoyabr*, *Abakan*, *Kusnetsko*, and some other Places, you may buy a Hundred of the best *Sable-Tails* for about six or eight *Rubels*; Whereas they are worth from twenty-five to thirty *Rubels* at *Tobolsky*; and will sell for a Hundred *Rubels* at *Muscov*. The *Skins* bear the same Proportion of Price. A Timber of *Sables* consists of forty *Skins*, or twenty Couples.

SALT. There are four Sorts of *Salt* in *Russia*: (1.) *Rock-Salt*, which is found in a *Salt-Mine* or Hill, called *Iletskaia*, situ-

situated *East* of the Town of *Ufa*, among the *Uralzian* Mountains. Little of this is carried either to *Muscow*, or other Places, it being mostly used by the *Baschkirrian*, *Nagaian*, and *Wolgarian Tartars*. (2.) *Sea-Salt*; This is dried by the Sun, found about the Coast of the *Black Sea*, and is used in the *Ukraine*. On the *White Sea*, this Salt is made by Boiling, and used in the neighbouring Provinces. (3.) *Butzun*, or *Lake-Salt*, is gathered near *Astracan*, and in *Siberia*; This kind of Salt is observed to cover the Surface of some Lakes, in the Summer-time, just as Ice does, in other Places, in Winter; Sometimes one fourth, and even half a *Russian Ell* thick; insomuch that it will bear the Weight of a Man, and they are often obliged to break it with Iron Crows. But as soon as Rainy Weather comes, or Dew falls, it melts away. All the Caviar, as well as all Fish, which is carried farther inward into *Russia*, are cur'd with the *Astracanian Lake-Salt*, and the Remainder serves not only all that Government, but *Casan* also. Indeed some of it, is carried into *Russia*; However, not being very pure, but sandy and gritty, it is not much valued. There are in *Siberia* many of these *Salt-Lakes*, but particularly the great Lake *Jamiscbevo*, near the River *Irtisch*, yields a vast Quantity of exceeding white Salt, sufficient to serve all *Siberia*. (4.) *Spring-Salt* is what is made in several Provinces, viz. in *Permia*, the *Ukraine*, near the City of *Backmuth*. In the Government of *Great Novogrod*, near *Staraja Russa*, near *Galitz*, *Kastroma*, and *Sol-Wyzigodtskaja*. But the *Permian*, of all these, is the best; Which both for its Goodness and Plenty, is most in Use, all over *Russia*. These *Salt-Springs* ly very deep, and the People are obliged to sink a Pit, Two Hundred and Sixty Foot deep, before they come at them, which is not to be done without much Toil, and great Skill, as well as Charges. What is peculiarly remarkable in these *Salt-Springs* is, that they are not only found in marshy and morasty Places, but even in the midst of the River *Kama*, as good and as strong as on dry Land, and the fresh Water is of no Prejudice to them (119).

(119) I have read somewhere in *Tavernier's Voyages*, that the Shoor of the *Indian Ocean*, Eastwards of the *Golpus Persicus*, is very flat, and that the People frequently go, above a Thousand Paces, into the salt Ocean, to fetch fresh Water, which is full as strange.

SALT PETER. Of this there are annually Thirty Thousand *Puds* deliver'd into the *Emperour's* Storehouses, from *Astracan*. Not far from the River *Ijett* in *Siberia*, there is, likewise, a Lake, where, in the Summer, a Third Part of *Salt Peter* is mix'd with the Salt produced around its Shoar. But for Want of Wood, in that Place, it will not answer the Cost, to separate the *Salt Peter* from the Salt, and to boil it.

SAWOLINSKI, Is a small Town, within the Verge of the Mine-Government of *Siberia*. Here is an Iron-Fabrick, with four Hammer-Mills.

SAZCHEN or **SASCHEN,** Is a *Russian* Fathom, containing three *Arscbin*, or forty-eight *Werjchock*.

SCHEREMISSI or **CZEREMISSI.** Something has been said already, under the *Letter C.* concerning this *Pagan* Nation. I shall only add this, as to their Religion: They believe their God, *Jumala*, to be eternal and almighty; For which Reason they will not suffer him to be worshipped under any *Image*, or the Likeness of any Thing. Whenever they offer up their Addresses to him on any Occasions, they sacrifice to him, in the following Manner: They make a Fire, and into it they throw Bread and Meat, pronouncing aloud these Words, *Jumala Sargala, Jumala Sargala*; that is, *Lord have Mercy upon us*. They look upon *Friday* to be somewhat more holy than the rest of the Days, have no Buildings set apart for the Exercise of their Devotion, but perform their Worship under Green Trees.

SCHIPP, Is a Fish caught in the River, *Jayck*, which discharges itself into the *Caspian Sea*. This Fish is much like a *Sturgeon*; But never grows quite to the Size of that Fish, though it is pretty large, and its Snout is somewhat longer, and more pointed. The Body of this Fish is of a yellowish grey, and the Flesh of it is yellow, and very good Eating. This is esteem'd the most delicate Fish in all *Russia*, is caught only in the above-mention'd River, or very rarely about *Astracan*, in the River *Wolga*.

SCURVY. This is a general Distemper, in the *Northern* Provinces of *Russia*, especially in *Siberia*, and towards the *Mare Glaciale*; For a Confirmation of which, read the *Northern*

Voyages, and you will find how severely *Hemskirk's* People were affected with the *Scurvy*, going to *Zembla*. At *Beresow*, not far from the River *Oby*, you will meet with few *Russians*, whose Noses, or some other Members, do not bear the Marks of this raging Distemper. It is reasonable to suppose that the *Scurvy* has been the chief Disease in these Parts, even in ancient Times; Because the Word *Scorb*, which is the *Latin* Word *Scorbutus*, only signifies a Disease in general; Whereas the *Russians* call the *Scurvy*, at this Time, *Tsfinga*.

SEVRJUGA; The Name of a certain Fish in *Russia*, of the Sturgeon Kind, and as large, the Snout of which is about a Foot long; The Flesh of it is white, and the Roe black; But not half so good as that of the Sturgeon.

SHEEP. The Wool of the *Russian* and *Siberian* Sheep is generally very harsh, and therefore mostly used for the Stuff call'd *Wadmar* *. There is a Kind of Wild Sheep in *Siberia*, about *Crasnoyabr*, near the River *Jenisei*, which have very large Horns, they are called *Argali* or *Argara*; of these Mention has been made above. The Figure of one of this Sort of Sheep, cut in Stone, was found lying in the City of *Crasnoyabr*, being an Idol which the neighbouring *Pagans* formerly used to Worship. A Draught of which, see *Tab. XXI. Let. B.*

SHADACKI, Is a small Race of People, living between the *Caspian* and *Black Sea*, who are *Allies* to the *Czerkassians*, and *Comucki*, and whose chief Town is *Utschmu*. They are a vile Race of Men, although some obscure Traces of the *Christian* Religion are found among them. These, as well as their Confederates, will list themselves into the military Service of three Powers, viz. The *Persians*, *Russians* and *Turks*, and they receive a certain annual Stipend of all three.

SLIUDO. So the *Russians* call *Ising-glass*; but the *Tartars* call it *Schischæ*. The best of it is very white, transparent, and in large Leaves. There are some of a *Russian* Ell Square. It is used

* I know no such Word, in the *German* Tongue, as *Wadmar*, nor have been able to find it, in any Dictionary; And am, therefore, at a Loss to guess the Signification of it. The Preposition *zu*, which precedes it, signifies *at*, as well as *for*. It might, therefore, be translated *at Wadmar*, and then that Word would denote the Proper Name of a Place. But as the above Interpretation of it, seems to be the most natural; should I be mistaken, this Note may serve as my Justification.

used for Windows and Lanthorns, and is convenient for lower Rooms; Because no Body can see from without, what is doing within. It is likewise very fit for Ship-Lanthorns, because it does not break by the Firing of Guns, as other Glafs does.

SNAKES, Are deem'd sacred among the *Kalmucks*; They never kill any, but make them so familiar, that they will creep in to Bed to them; nor has it ever been heard, that, among the *Kalmucks*, Men or Beasts have been hurt by them. The Reason why they have such a Value for *Snakes*, is, Because they believe, that the *God of the Water* sometimes takes upon him the Shape of a *Snake*, and comes on the Shoar; And they fear, that if they should hurt or kill any of these Creatures, that Deity would be offended, if not kill'd.

SNETOCK, Is a Kind of Fish caught in the *Belo-Osero*, and near *Pleskow*, in *Russia*. It is flat, small, and not above two Inches and a half long, but very fat and delicious; The Roe is red, and the Flesh white: Those caught near *Pleskow* are the best. They are caught in *Autumn*, with large Nets, and they are dried, both salted and unsalted, in Ovens, made for that Purpose, and carried to all Parts of *Russia*. They eat very well both raw and boil'd.

SOLOTNICK, Is a small *Russian* Weight, of which ninety-six go to a *Russian* Pound. This Weight is again divided into eight Parts, in weighing Gold and Silver.

SQUIRRELS, These Creatures are very common in *Russia*, but more especially in *Siberia*; The finest Sort are reckon'd those in the *Siberian* Provinces of *Jakutskoi* and *Beresowa*; They are of a blackish Grey in Winter, have longer Hair, and are much larger than in any other Province. Next to these are the *Tbeleutian* Squirrels; They have white Bellies, and are chiefly caught near the Head of the River *Oby*, and the City of *Kuznetskoi*: These are also larger than the common Sort, and the Skins are sold on the Spot for four or five *Kopeiks*; Whereas the ordinary Sort goes for one, or one and a half *Kopeik*. About the Rivers *Jenisei* and *Tomber*, are found a Kind of whitish-grey flying *Squirrels*; They are shorter than the common Ones in the Body, have hairy Wings, shaped like the Wings of Bats, by the Help of which they can fly from Tree to Tree, to the

Distance of about Three Hundred Paces. In Summer-Time, the *Squirrels*, in *Siberia*, as well as in other Countries, are reddish, but in Winter grey. I need hardly repeat here, what other Authors have related, of the Contrivance of these little Animals for crossing Rivers; How they get on a flat thin Piece of Wood, and make their Tails serve them for Sails. The *Russians* call these Creatures *Bielki*, and the *Tartars* *Aas*.

STORKS; I cannot say, that I have seen any such *Storks* in *Siberia*, as are met with in other Countries; But I have observed there a Kind of black ones, in great Numbers, with red Legs and Beaks, the Feathers of which gave a Lustre like Peacock's Feathers. These are called, by the *Russians*, *Agyß* and *Cara-Tschilan*; There are, besides, White ones; But they have no black upon their Wings, and are smaller than the *European*. They frequent great Forests, and about the Banks of the River *Oby*; They have yellowish Legs and Beaks, the same as the *Siberian* Swans, which likewise have yellow Beaks.

STRUG, or STRUSE, Is a flat-bottom Vessel used on all the Rivers of *Russia* and *Siberia*; the largest will carry about One Thousand Five Hundred *Puds*.

STURGEON; The *Russian* Sturgeons are some of them seven Foot long: The Flesh is white, intermix'd with yellow Fat. They make of the Sturgeon, *Caviar*, *Carluck*, and *Weriga*, all which, if you except the Flesh of this Fish, fall very short in Goodness of what is prepar'd of the *Beluga*. The Flesh, which the *Russians* take out of the Back of the Sturgeon, salt, and dry in the Sun, they call *Provensnyé Spinki*, and it eats very nice even raw.

SUCHARI, Among the *Russians*, is that Sort of Bread, which they dry, cut into small Cubical Pieces, of the Size of Dice, and eat like Bisket. In the Kingdom of *Sweden*, they make a Sort of thin round Cakes, about half a Quarter of an Ell over, which they also dry: These are made both of Rye and Wheat, and are call'd by the *Swedish* Peasants, *Knæke-Bræd*. For my Part, I never observ'd any such Bread, in any Country I have been in, except in the *Siberian Tartary* and *Sweden*.

SUGAR, In the *South* Part of *Kamtſchatki*, or the Peninsula *Jedſo*, there grows a Plant about a *Ruſſian* Ell high, and of the Thickness of ones Finger, called by the Inhabitants *Ababatka*. Which when cleaned, peel'd and dried in the Sun, grows as white as Snow; This may be pounded ſmall and taſtes like powder'd Sugar.

SVINSKOI MONASTIR. A Monastery in the *Ruſſian* Province of *Briansk*, ſituated near the River *Deſna*. Here is a great Annual Fair, whither a great many *Polish*, *Turkiſh*, *Sileſian* and *Pruſſian* Merchants, and others reſort. It begins the 15th of *Auguſt* N. S. and holds 4 Weeks.

SULPHUR, or *Brimſtone*. In the Kingdom of *Caſan*, there is a Sort of pure ſolid Brimſtone, cut out of the Rocks of *Talk*, or transparent Plaſter; In which it is wrapp'd up; It is as fine and clear as Amber, and ſome Lumps of it are ſo large, that they will weigh upwards of 50 Pounds Weight. This fine *Sulphur* is moſtly put to Phyſical Uſes; But the leſs and more impure Pieces, are melted down, refined, and uſed in the Composition of Gunpowder (120).

SURME, or SURMA, Is a kind of Paint, uſed, by the *Ruſſian* Ladies, to colour their Hair, which is made thus: They take the Kernel of a Walnut or ſmall Nut, ſtick it to a Fork and burn it, holding a Silver or Pewter Plate over it, to receive the Smoak. This they repeat ſo often as is neceſſary, till they have enough of the Black, then they mix it with a little Sugar, and keep it in a Box for Uſe. However it is better without the Sugar.

T.

TABU, Signifies, in the *Mungalian* Tongue, *five*, and *Taby*, *fifty*; Whence (if we conſider that there are a vaſt Number of ſmall Iſlands in the *Mare Glaciale*, near *Swetoi Nos*, or the Point of *Kamtſchatki*,) it is not improbable, that the Promontory of *Tabyn*, in ancient Maps, has taken its Name.

TABUN, Is a *Tartarian* Word, ſignifying a Herd, or Multitude, of Horſes droven together. There come uſually, every Year,

Year, 2 or 3 *Tabuns* from different Places of *Tartary*, and the Country of the *Kalmucks*, to the City of *Muscow*, which are sold in the open Fields, in a very short Time. Sometimes one of these *Tabuns* consists of 30 or 40000 Horses, the Manes of which are cropt, in Order to be known, in Case they should stray, or be stolen. As soon as a Horse is sold, it is mark'd with the *Imperial* Mark on the Thigh.

TAGILL, Is a small Town, situated near a Brook of the same Name, which empties itself into the River *Tura*, in *Siberia*. This Place has two smelting Furnaces, and twelve Hammer-Works.

TEA, Should be call'd, according to the Original, *Czee* or *Czai*; and the Signification of this *Chinese* Word is, *Leaves*. It has different Names, from the different Places where it grows, as also from its Colour. That which is the most common in *Europe*, the *Chinese* call *Czee-tugan* or *Lau-an*; That which is of a greenish blue, *Kok-Czay*. The yellowish *Tea* is called *Czee-muni*, or *Sari-Czay*. The blackish *Czee-bu*; The *Tartars* call it *Bu-Czay*. There are, in *China*, above 15 different Sorts of *Tea*. The best of all are the *Green*, *Tea-boú* and *Muni*, which are of equal Price; The press'd *Tea-boú* is somewhat dearer, because it is mix'd with Things that give it a fine Flavour. There is, besides, another Sort, which is call'd *Stone-Tea*, and by the *Tartars*, *Cairi-Czee*; This consists not in Leaves, but in solid Pieces, like *Terra-Catechu*, dark brown without, and yellowish within, and gives a reddish Tincture; It dissolves in Water, like Sugar, and gives no Sediment; It has a grateful Smell, and is pretty astringent. It is the Opinion of many, that this *Tea* is prepar'd of the Juice of the *Tea-Leaves*.

'TOLOKNO, Is a particuliar Sort of Flour or Meal, which they make, in *Russia*, of Oats; It is a common Food for Soldiers and labouring People, and they eat it only mix'd up, with Water and Salt, to what Consistence they think fit, without boiling. They likewise put it into Broth, and it is very strengthening and filling, as also very good for the Bloody-Flux.

TRIBULUS AQUATICUS, or *Water-Nuts*; This Shrub grows in many Places in *Siberia*; The *Russians* call the Fruit *Aralnick* and *Regulki*, and the *Tartars*, *Artscbingæ*, or *Garaschnick*.

TROITZKOI-MONASTIR. This Convent is look'd upon to be the largest and richest in the whole *Empire of Russia*; There being 20000 Peasants under its Jurisdiction. There were formerly 700 Friars in it; But the Number of them is pretty much lessen'd, since the new Ecclesiastical Regulation, and the Surplus of the Revenues is appropriated for the Maintenance of Schools and the Support of disabled Soldiers. It is distant from *Muscow* sixty *Wersts*, and about 56 from *Pereflow-Saleski*.

TUNGUSI. This is the most numerous and most stragling *Pagan Nation* (with Respect to their Dwellings) that is in *Siberia*, and are suppos'd to amount to 70 or 80000 Men. The Author of *l'Hist. Geneal. des Tartars* (printed at *Leyden*, 1726.) has given a pretty good Account of them, (p. 345. & seq.) These People are, in general, distinguish'd by three Names, viz. *Konni Tungusi*, *Oleni Tungusi*, and *Sabatschi Tungusi*, that is, those who make Use of Horses for Riding and Draught, those who use Renn-Deer for that Purpose, and those who use Dogs. In the same Manner as the *Finnlandians* have been distinguish'd formerly, by some Writers, into *Skrete*, and *Rede*; i. e. into skating *Finnlandians*, and such as used Sledges. The *Russians* in *Siberia* give besides, to the latter Sort of these *Tungusi*, divers other Names; as, *Podkumena*, *Tumaki*, and *Wonki Tungusi*, &c. Because the latter have very disagreeable Smells, occasion'd by the Fish, and other uncommon Things they feed upon; and the former live in and about the Mountains: In other Things they are no Way different from the *Sabatschi Tungusi*. The *Jakubti* call them *Udschiæn*, from the Word *Ud*, signifying a *Dog*: Whence also a Capital River, which discharges itself into the Bay of *Lama*, on Account of these People, who keep Dogs, that have Hair one Fourth of an Ell long, is named *Ud-Reka*, i. e. the *River of Dogs*. Moreover, these *Sabatschi Tungusi* living partly at the Point of the Bay of *Penschin* or *Lama*, and partly near the Rivers *Aldan*, *Tungur* and *Ud*, the *Russians* have given that Point the Name of *Sabatschi Nos*; (See the Voyages of *Isbrand Ides*.) The *Sabatschi Tungusi* are subdivided among themselves, into divers Tribes, viz.

1. *Lamunka*.
2. *Kæltaku*, which is the largest and strongest (121);
3. *La-*

3. *Lakigir*. 4. *Brangatkai*. 5. *Nynengath*. 6. *Bugagi*. 7. *Maimogur*. 8. *Boldati*. 9. *Sologon*. 10. *Mamour*. 11. *Ilagin*. 12. *Kotnacban*; and, 13. *Jukagri*, or *Jukairi*. In my Map, all these are compriz'd under the Name of *Sabatschi Tungusi*; There being too little Room to insert all these particular Names. As to the other two Sorts, viz. The *Konni* and *Oleni Tungusi*, they are sufficiently described in the Travels of *Isbrand Ides*, and in those of *Adam Brandt*, where it is observable, that both these Writers are of Opinion, the *Konni-Tungusi*, as well as the *Targuzini*, came originally from *Dauria*, and that the *Oleni Tungusi*, who live near the River *Angara*, are all one People with the *Konni*, tho' their Tongues are different, and this the Reader will find confirm'd, in my *Polyglot-Table*, where I have inserted some Words, and the Names of the Numbers, with these three chief Divisions of the *Tungusi*; And the Account of the above Authors, with my Table, taken together, will pretty well clear up what I have said concerning this Nation, in my Introduction, *Se&ct. III. §. XXXII. &c.* as also *Se&ct. IV. §. V. viz.* That their Ancestors were those Primitive *Tartars*, who are called in ancient *European* Authors, by the Name of *Abii*. For what *l'Histoire Geneal. des Tartars* mentions (*p. 104.*) that the chief Tribes of the *Tartars* had settled in the Country call'd *Biurnauer*, has an Eye to these very People, and means *Dauria*; Because the *Tartarian* Text is not copied right, there being a D put instead of a B. By which it is plain, that the *Tungusian* Nation is meant in the *Genealogical History*; (See more under the Title *Dauria*.) I have already, in my Introduction, *Se&ct. III. §. XXXII.* taken Notice of the Signification of the Name *Tungusi*, and its Origin; And what confirms it farther to be only an Appellative, (as I have there observ'd,) is, that other Neighbouring Nations do not call them by the same Name. For the *Mansuri*, or *Mantischeu-Chinese Tartars*, name them *Kamno-yabn*; and the *Tungusi* call themselves *Kalljak-Tzin*, that is, Generations who have taken their fix'd Abode in certain Places. *L'Histoire Geneal. des Tartars* says the same of the *Primitive Tartars*, c. IX. *p. 103. viz.* That they had settled in several Places, and there fixed their Habitations; and especially, that the first Party of them took their Abode in the Country called *Biurnauer*

(122), (as has been said above;) And the second Party near the River *Ikar-Mouran* (which is the same as *Jenisei*.) Hence it plainly appears how these People came to lose the Name of *Tartars*, and were called *Su-Mungals*, or *Water-* or *Lake-Mungals*. (Compare my Introduction, *Seet. III. §. XXXII. &c.*)

TURA, or THURA. This Name the *Tartars* formerly gave to the City of *Tobolsky*, and the whole Country, which is properly called *Siberia*; and the same is used among them to this Day. Probably the Inhabitants of these Parts are the *Tburi* of *Pliny*, that were Neighbours to the *Atthacori*, which last are placed by *Geographers* in *Siberia*. (See *Lib. VI. c. 17.*)

U.

UCZUG, or UCZUGI. By this Name are call'd the three great Fisheries, on the River *Volga*, in the Kingdom of *Astracan*. One of these belongs to the *Crown*, the second to the *Patriarch*, the third to the Convent of *Troitzskoi*. At these Fisheries there are a Kind of large Hedges carried out, into the River, on both sides, which facilitate the catching of the *Beluga*; For when this large Fish gets into the narrow Passage, left in the Middle between the Hedges, he is not able, on Account of his great Bulk, to turn back, but is stopt; And there the Fishermen dart him with their Harping-Irons, and so drag him a-shoar. These *Uczugs* are reckon'd to be worth between 4 and 5000 *Rubels* a Year each. And here the most and best *Cavear* is made.

VEDRO, Is a liquid Measure, the same with what the *Germans* call *Eymer*; It contains 136 Cubick *Werschock*, and holds eight *Kruschks*, or *Galenock*; Which make near 20 Gallons *English*.

VERSCHOCK, or Werschock, Is a 16th Part of a *Russian Ell*, or *Arschine*. A Thousand *Verschock* are equal to 1755 *English Inches*.

VERSTA, or Werst, Is a *Russian Measure* of Land, or a Kind of Miles, of 500 *Sasches*, or *Russian Fathoms*; 104 $\frac{1}{2}$ *Wersts* are equal to a Degree of 60 *English Miles*.

(122) I have already observ'd, under the Title of *Daria*, that it is the same with *Dauria*, and that *Nauer* signifies a Country full of Rivers, and such is *Dauria*. In the Room of which, the *Tartarian Text* is *Biar-Nauer*, which must be an Error of the Transcriber; Because, of above a Hundred *Tartars*, which I consulted about this Word, not one knew any Thing of it.

VESICA, Is a kind of sinewy Substance, which contains the Spinal Marrow of the *Beluga*, and *Sturgeon*, which the *Russians* cure after this manner: They cut open the large Gristle of the Back, from Head to Tail, and thence take out the Pith, which is white, resembling a long Worm; and after they have ript open the thick Skin that contains it, they clear out the Marrow, and dry this Skin (which looks much like a long leathern Strop) in the Sun, then roll it up, and afterward sell these Rolls by the Hundred, and by the Thousand. In a dry Place they will keep good 3 or 4 Years. They boil them and eat them with Horse-Raddish, but soak them first a Night in luke-warm Water; they also make Pies of them, which do not eat a-miss.

ULUS, Is a *Kalmuckian* Word, and signifies the same as the *Tartarian* Word *Horda*, or *Orda*; This Word is often met with in the Maps of *Tartary*. I must here take Notice, that the Words *Pustoi* and *Reca*, which are frequent in *Homan's* Map, towards the East-side of the *Caspian-Sea*, are mere Appellatives, the first signifying a Desert Place, the other a River, in the *Russian* Tongue.

URR-URRMAN, or AOURMAN, signifies, with the *Tartars*, a thick black Forest, consisting chiefly of Pine-Trees, which generally grow in a marshy, boggy Soil.

URRMANKAT, Is the Name given by the same People, to such as inhabit those Forests, and have built Cottages or Huts in those Places. The *Russians* call the Pine-Trees *Gelewoi*, and yet a Forest of Pines they name *Czorni-Læfs*, that is, *Black-Forest*. As to the Etymology of the Word *Urr*, or *Urrman*, I find, that *Oerdo* in the *Hungarian* Language, signifies also a *Forrest*. *Rubeck*, in his *Atlantica*, (Tom. III. p. 742.) says, *Or*, *Ur*, and *Urd*, signify; in the *Gotbick*, the same as *locus salubria & rupibus obsita*, in *Latin*; and the *Chinese* and *East-Indians* call one, who lives in a *Forrest* or *Wood*, *Orancha*, and *Urancha*; I cannot think but all these Words, as well as the *German* Word *Aur*, *Ur*, or *Wood*, or *wild Ox*, are derived from the same Original. To this seems also to relate, what *Cæsar* mentions, (Lib. VI. *Belli Gallici*.) viz. That the *Hircinian*, or *Black Forrest*, was anciently call'd by the *Teſſaſagi*, *Orcin* or *Urcin*, which is all one with the *Urrman* of the *Tartars*

Tartars (123). The mountainous and woody Province of *Hyrca-mia*, near the *Caspian Sea*, has likewise its Name from the dark thick Woods (124), which are call'd, in *l'Histoire de Timur-Beck* (Tom. II. p. 216.) by the Name of *Aourman*, or *Urrman*.

W.

WATER, or MUSK RATS. These are call'd, in the *Russian Tongue*, *Vicbocboll*; The Banks of the River *Volga*, near *Casan*, swarm with them, and they are commonly sold there for two *Kopeiks* a-piece, and sometimes, for one. People put them, when dry'd, among their Cloths, as a Preservative against the Moths.

WERSTE, See *Versta*.

WINDOWS, Throughout all *Siberia*, are only made of Ising-glass, call'd, in *Latin*, *Lapis Specularis*, of which there are two Sorts; viz. The White and Brown; And they are both found, in *Russia* and *Siberia*, in great Plenty.

WHIRL-POL, in *Latin*, *Vortex*. There is such a one on the East-Side of the *Caspian Sea*, (See my *Introduction*, Sect. II. §. XI.) I am inform'd, there is the like in the River *Danube*, near the little Town of *Cremis*, that is said to swallow up an incredible Quantity of Water, which rises again not far from *Caniscba* in the *Lower Hungaria*.

WOLVES, Are commonly grey; But, in *Siberia*, they are mostly white, especially about the Belly, and are larger than ordinary; the Fur is very soft and warm. In some Places, coal-black ones are likewise found.

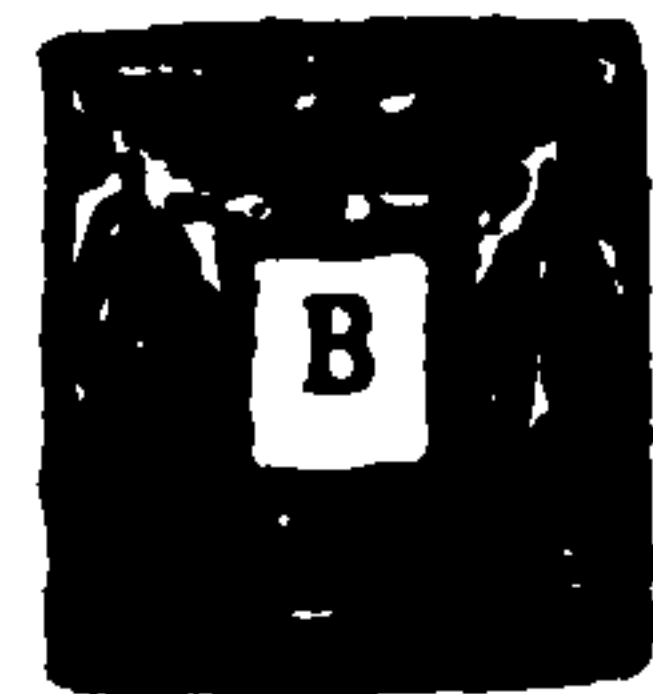
HERE I chuse to conclude my *Historia Miscellanea Russo-Siberica*; In which I have given the Reader a cursory Account of what *Minerals*, *Vegetables* and *Animals* this *Empire* produces, from *West* to *East*; I could have added several Things; But since this Work is already swell'd to a greater Bulk than I first intended, I shall reserve the Rest for the second Part, of which I have made some Mention in the *Preface*, where I shall likewise treat of the Roads, which lead through *Russia*, *Siberia* and *Tartary*, to the Neighbouring Regions.

(123) See *Diß. Car. Steph.* p. 1931.

(124) *Idem*, p. 1082.



A P P E N D I X.



Y Way of *Appendix*, I shall here add a Relation of a Journey by Land, from *Siberia*, to the *Peninsula Jedso*, or the Country of *Kamtshatki*, given in the *Prisase* of *Muscow*, by a *Russian Petidesetnick*, or Commander of fifty *Cossacks*, *Wolodimir Atlassow*, by Name, Son of a *Jakubtian Cossack*, in the Year 1701, after his Return into *Russia*. He said, that having provided, at *Jakutskoi*, Carriages and Horses for himself, and thirteen *Cossacks*, who were with him, he ferried over the River *Lena*, the last Day of *August*, and after three Days Journey, reckon'd at thirty *Wersts* a Day, over Plains and Meadows, he reach'd to the River *Aldan*, which he looked upon to be twice as large as the River *Muscua*. From thence he went eleven Days-Journey on Horseback, over Marshy and Boggy Land, along the right Side of the River *Tokulan*, (which is less than the *Muscua*,) 'till he came to its Source. When he came to this Place, he found, that it had already begun to freeze; He cross'd the River, and one Day's Journey over Mountains brought him to the Head of the River *Jana*, which is broader than the *Muscua*; Two Weeks Journey, along this River, carried him to *Werchofanski Simovia*, where he took fresh Horses, and continued his Way two Days longer, along the River; He then crossed the *Jana*, and went on towards, and along, the River *Dowdock* or *Taschtack*, thence along the River *Gelandina*, which last discharges itself into the *Indigir*, near *Judigirskoi Ostrock*. At this *Ostrock*, *Atlassow* rested for some Days, having been six Weeks upon the Road, from *Jakutskoi*, thither. Here he hired *Renn Deers*, by the Help of which he travell'd downwards, 'till he came to the Place

Place where the River *Ujandin* falls into the *Indigir*, called *Ujandinski Simovia*, which took him up six Days. He proceeded a little Way farther, down the *Indigir*, then turn'd from the River, and pursued his Inland-Road for eight Days, to *Alaseiska Simovia*; From thence he went on, for eight Days more, 'till he came to *Simovia Germongi*, near the River *Kolym*: He travell'd along this River, downwards, for ten Days, at the End of which he came to *Niska Kolimskoi*. This is an *Ostrock*, or Fortrels, situated almost at the Mouth of the River *Kolym*. *Atlassow* continued his Journey, upwards, along the Side of the River *Anaja*, then, leaving that River, he went a good Way, over Mountains, to the River *Jablona*, along the Side of which he pass'd downwards, and gain'd the River *Anadir*, along the Side of which he kept, 'till he reach'd *Anadirskoi-Ostrock*. The whole Passage from the Mouth of the River *Kolym* to this *Ostrock*, took him up four Weeks, which, however, is sometimes done in three. Here *Atlassow*, and his Companions, hir'd Horses and *Renn-Deer* of the *Jasaschni Inasemzi*, or Foreign Tributaries. Before he proceeded any farther in the Relation of his Travels, *Atlassow* took Notice, that there was a double Promontory between the Rivers *Kolym* and *Anadir*, call'd by some *Nos Tschalatskoi* and *Anadirskoi* (125). He affirms it to be impossible to double this Promontory, with any Vessel; (he means *Russian* Vessels;) Because, in the Summer, the *West* Side of this *Cape* is choak'd with large Floats of Ice, and, in the Winter, it is quite frozen up; Whereas on the *East*-Side, or at the *Nos Anadirskoi*, the Sea is quite clear of the Ice. He goes on and relates, that though he did not go to the Extremity of this *Cape*, in Person, yet he had good Information from the *Czucktschi*, a People living about the Mouth of the River *Anadir*, that there was a large Island, opposite to the *Anadirskian* Part of the Promontory, from whence a strange People came in the Winter, over the Ice,

(125) In the Old Maps, this Promontory is called *Talin*; But I know not whence this Name proceeds. I have given the Reader my Conjectures about it above, and it seems that *Nos Tschalatskoi* is meant by that Name: As to the *Nos Anadirskoi*, without Doubt it must be the *Caput Patientiae*, which the *Dutch* place near the Island of *Jedso*. And this is confirm'd by *Atlassow's* Account, who says that there is no Ice there in the Summer. Whence it was easy for the *Dutch* to come at it on the *East* side, but when they endeavour'd to double it, and were balk'd by the Ice, they called it *Caput Patientiae*.

Ice, to these *Czucktschi*, who had a particular Language, and brought them a coarse Sort of *Sables*, and *Sable-Tails*, a Quarter of a *Russian* Ell long, streak'd black and red. *Atlassow*, after this, continued the Relation of his Journey, to *Kamtschatki*. He had now, with him, an additional Number of sixty *Slusbiwi*, or Soldiers, all Volunteers, which he took at the *Ostrock-Anadirskoi*. They lived, on the Road, on *Renn-Deer*, which they got of the Inhabitants, and on Fish, that they caught by the Way, with Nets they carried with them, from *Anadirskoi*. He related, that the River *Kamtschatka* produced a particular Sort of Fish, not unlike *Salmon*, but larger, which are red in the Summer, and call'd, by the Inhabitants, *Awetschina*. Besides this, they caught in those Parts, at least seven other Kinds of Fish, not known in *Russia*, which came out of the Sea, into the Rivers, but seldom return'd back again: For the sudden ebbing of the Water was the Cause of their being left behind: Whence, likewise, it came that, in the Country of *Kamtschatki*, abundance of *Beavers*, *Otters*, *Sables*, and other Animals were found. The Winters in this Country were much the same, with Regard to the Cold, as at *Muscow*, or not quite so cold, nor did there fall so much Snow. He added, that himself and Company were oblig'd to ride, in Summer with wooden Saddles, on the *Renn-Deer*, and in Winter in *Narts*, or Sledges, drawn by the same Animals. With respect to *Jakubtski*, the Days were much longer in Winter, and almost as long again, at *Kamtschatki*, as there; And farther South, in the Country of the *Kurili*, it was much warmer, there being hardly any Snow there in Winter. Here *Atlassow* made the following Observations: (1.) That the Sun made hardly any Shadow at Noon, in Summer, but was almost directly over their Heads. (2.) That, in Winter, the Rivers and marshy Places not freezing up, vast Numbers of all Sorts of Wild-Fowl, as Wild Swans, Geese, Ducks, &c. were seen there, which in Summer, on Account of the excessive Heat, retir'd into more Northern Regions. And because of the frequent Rains and Thunder, *Atlassow*, as well as his Fellow-Travelers, judg'd the Country of the *Kurili* must be situated very far towards the South. He took Notice, that, in the Southern Parts of *Kamtschatki*, as well as the Country of the *Kurili*, there

was a variety of Shrub-Fruits; And, among others, a Sort of green Berries, little less than Hens Eggs, of the Taste and Flavour, and bearing Seeds, like Raspberries; But the Stem on which they grow, was not above one fourth of a *Russian* Ell high. Many other Sorts of Berries, as sweet as *Raisins*, but not so large, were likewise found there. They did not meet with any Tree-Fruit, but found a very singular Plant, of about the Height of a *Russian* Ell, and as thick as a Man's Finger, call'd, by the Inhabitants, *Ababatka*; This they peel'd, spread it broad, and afterwards roll'd it up, and exposed it to the Sun to dry; And when dried, it look'd as white as Sugar, and had exactly the Taste of Sugar beaten to Powder. He said the *Cedars* of that Country were very small, not exceeding, in Height, the larger *Juniper-Shrubs*, but did however, bear Plenty of Kernels. The *Pine*, *Birch*, and *Larch-Trees* were here, of the same Size, as in other Countries, and very common, especially in *Kamtschatki*: But about the Coast of the *Pentschinian* Bay, there only grew *Aspen* and *Birch* Trees. The North Side of this Bay was inhabited by the *Koræiki*, the Males of which People had no Beards, but only a few loose Hairs scatter'd about their Chins, hardly to be seen; In other Respects they were like the *Russians*, of a middling Stature; And their Tongue was different from that of the Natives of *Kamtschatki*. They had no particular religious Ceremonies, except that there were, among them, such *Schamans* as the *Ostiacks* have, and the *Samojedes* call *Kedeschnick*, who beat on Drums, make a hideous Cry, and pretend to foretel Things to come. The Cloths and Boots, which these *Koræiki* wear, were made of the Skins of *Renn-Deer*, and the Soles of the latter, of the Skins of Seals, which they eat, as well as other Fish and Animals which their Country affords. Their Huts were made partly of Reeds, and partly of the Hides of *Renn-Deer*, dress'd for that Purpose. The *Lutorzi*, who live Eastward of the former, and towards the Coasts of the Main-Ocean, were, as to Shape, Customs and Language, the very same with the *Koræiki*, except that they made their Habitations under Ground. But the *Kamtschadali*, who live South of both these, and farther up into the Country, on the Banks of the Rivers, not only differ'd in Language, but were of a smaller Stature, had large
Beards,

Beards, middling Faces, and were much like the *Sirani*, who dwell in *Russia* and *Permia*; Their Cloths were made of *Sable*, *Fox*, and *Renn-Deer-Skins*, with the Fur turn'd outwards, and border'd and trim'd with Slips of *Dog-Skins*. In the Winter, their Dwelling Places were Under-Ground, and, in Summer, their Huts were built of Boards, supported by Pales, three Fathom high, above the Earth, which they cover'd with Branches and Roots, of Pine-trees. They made use of Ladders to get up to them; And of these Huts or *Jurts*, there were Three or Four Hundred built close together. They lived chiefly on Flesh and Fish, which last they eat mostly either raw, or frost-dry'd; In Winter, they dug Holes in the Ground, and fill'd them with raw Fish, covering them with the Bark of Birch, and over that with Earth; Whenever they wanted to eat some of this Food, which was not, 'till it was thoroughly putrify'd, they took a Quantity of it out of the Hole, and putting it into a wooden Trough, with Water in it, flung red hot Pebles into it, continually stirring it about, 'till they made it boil; Which caused such an insufferable Stench, that even a *Russian* could hardly endure it. They made both Earthen and Wooden Vessels for their own Use, had painted and varnish'd Ware brought to them, from the opposite Islands; But they could give no Account, what Government those Islands belong'd to. These *Kamtshadali* seem'd likewise to have no peculiar Form of Religious Worship, but had amongst them a Sort of *Schamans* or Magicians, wearing long Hair, who spent their Days in the largest and thickest Forrests. The *Koræiki*, who were Prisoners with the *Russians*, serv'd as Interpreters, between them and the People of *Kamtshatki*. *Atlas-sow* related farther, that the *Kurili*, who liv'd still more to the South, were more swarthy, and had but little Beard. Their Habit was like that of the *Kamtshadali*, but they were poorer; Their Sables were not so fine, because the Climate was warmer; which Disadvantage, however, was made up, by a vast Plenty of red Foxes, and large black Beavers. Whether the Country beyond the *Kurili* was inhabited, or not, or how far it extended, he declar'd he was ignorant of. He added, that at about a Weeks Journey from the Mouth of the River *Kamtshatki*, upwards, there was a large, high Mountain, somewhat longish,

not unlike a Stack of Corn; And, at some Distance, there was another resembling an Hay-Mow, but very high; Both which emitted Smoak in the Day-Time, and Flames in the Night; And that the People of the Country told him, half Way up the Mountain, there was heard such a hideous Roaring Noise, that no body could bear to hear it long, and that those who had ventur'd to go up higher, never return'd; Nor could they conceive what came of them. Out of this Mountain flow'd a Stream of Water, of a greenish Colour, but so exceeding clear, that a *Kopeik* thrown into it might be seen three Fathoms under Water. These *Kamtshadali* (he continued) had no Magistracy among them, but the Poor were subject to the Rich, and yet the several Generations were at War with each other. They went naked in the Summer. These People were, sometimes, very brave and courageous; But, at other Times, as timorous and faint-hearted; And that they formerly were tributary to no-body. The Men were permitted to marry several Wives, even to 3 or 4. They kept no Cattle, nor other Beast, but Dogs, which commonly were very large, and had Hair one Fourth of a *Russian* Ell long. Their Manner of catching Sables was with wooden Traps, near the Rivers abounding with Fish; and sometimes they shot them off of Trees, with Bows and Arrows. They did, indeed, wage War among themselves; But were vastly afraid of Fire-Arms; Whence they call'd the *Russians*, *Milkimans*, i. e. *Fire-Men*, because of their knowing how to handle those Arms. They had once ventur'd to engage with the *Russians*; But these no sooner fir'd at them, than they turn'd Tail and ran away. He said, the *Kamtshadali* went to War with Snow-skates, which they call *Leshes*, and the *Koræiki* on Narts, or Sledges, one driving the *Renn-Deer*, and the other Shooting. In Summer-Time, they went to Battle on Foot, some cloathed, others naked. They traded with the *Russians* for Knives, and small blue Glass-Beads, &c. in Exchange for which, they gave them Sable-Fox-Beaver-and Otter-Skins. He said farther, that Ice floated, in Winter, in the *Lutrian* Sea, but that it was never quite frozen up. Whether the Frost had any Effect upon the Sea towards *Kamtshatki* he could not tell, at least he had not observ'd any Ice there in Summer. He had sent a *Cossack*, on the River *Kamtshatka*, down as far

far as the Sea, to get Information, whether that Part of the Country had any Inhabitants; Who told him, at his Return, that the Sea-Coast was inhabited by the same Sort of People as the *Kamtſchadali*. He gave an Account of 160 *Oſtrocks*, or Forts, built along the Banks of the River *Yelowka*, down to the Sea. The Huts in these *Oſtrocks* were made of Hides, and that, in one of the main Huts, there was Room for 150 or 200 Men. On the Outside of these great Huts, every Man had a Hut to himself, built upon Pales. That before the Arrival of the *Russians* there had not been so many *Oſtrocks* in that Country, the People, for their better Defense, having augmented the Number since. Their Weapons consisted of Slings, with which they threw large Pebbles out of their *Oſtrocks*; They had, likewise, long pointed Poles, and Clubs; But the *Russian* Way of attacking them was this: They approach'd with wooden Targets, set the *Oſtrocks* on fire, and planting themselves at the Gate, they kill'd one by one as they came out to escape the Fire. They had also some Forts of Earth; but whenever they appear'd on the Ramparts, and the *Russians* fired upon them, they retired, and had not the Courage to appear in Sight again. He related, farther, that, on the other side of *Kamtſchatki*, there was no Ice; But that, between the Rivers of *Penſchin* and *Kygyla* some Ice was, now and then, thrown on the Shoar. He said, that to go on Foot, over the Mountains, from *Kygyla* to the Mouth of the River *Kamtſchatka*, a Person must be a very good Traveller, who could do it in 3 or 4 Days; And to go in a Boat, on the River *Kamtſchatka*, down to the Sea, would take up 4 Days. This Country abounded in Bears and Wolves. Over-against the first River, in the Country of the *Kurili*, there were some Islands visible (126), on which there were Towns fortify'd with Walls, according to the Account of the People of those Parts; But the *Kurili* could not tell what People those Inhabitants were: However, they said, that some of these Islanders came over, and brought them *China*-Ware, striped and colour'd Silks, (*Dap*.) Cotton-Stuffs, (*Kitaika*.) and Garments, (*Ajam*.) of thin Silk, (*Lenza*.) The *Kurili* said, that these People gave them those Vessels and Garments *gratis*; But they

(126) These are the Northern Islands of Japan.

they could not tell the Name of the Vessels, in which these Foreigners cross'd the Water. They farther inform'd *Atlassow*, that upwards, beyond the Beaver-Rivers of the Country of *Kamtshatki*, there arrived, every Year, large Vessels, called *Bussi*, which fetch'd away from those People Blubber of Seals, and Train-Oil; But they could not tell what Commodities these Vessels brought in Lieu of those Things. The Sea yielded large *Whales* (*Kybtu*) and *Seals*, (*Nerpa Kalani*), both which came pretty near the Shoar at High-water; But being left behind, by the Ebb, the *Whales* were kill'd by the Inhabitants; and the *Seals*, or *Kalani*, having but very small Feet, and Abundance of Wood lying along the Shoar, could by no Means get away. *Wolodimir* said, it was not known how far the River *Amour* was distant from thence. He added, that the *Penschini* made Boats of Seal-Skins (ribb'd with Timber) 6 Fathoms in Length, and 3 in Breadth, which they call'd *Baidari*; That they went out to catch Seals in them, and that one would carry 30 or 40 Men; but he did not know how far they could venture into the Sea with them. The *Kamtshadali* had also such Boats, but not so large. He had not observed any such Vessels among the *Kurili*, it being Winter when he was in that Country. It was his Opinion, that the *Kurili*, as well as the Inhabitants of *Kamtshatki*, could gather two Crops in a Year, it not only being a warm Climate, but also a very rich Soil. There was no Cattle in those Parts; nor could he say whether any Silver, Copper, or other Mines, might be there. He related, that a Prisoner, who came over Sea in the *Bussi*, had a peculiar Language; he wore small Whiskers, and had black Hair, and by his Visage did not look unlike a *Greek*. He said farther, that this Stranger wept as soon as he saw an Image among the *Russians*, by which he gave them to understand, that they had the like in his Country. *Wolodimir* had this Man two Years with him, in which Time he had learn'd something of the *Russian* Tongue; And having been two Years, before *Wolodimir's* Arrival, among the *Koræiki*, he spoke at first in that Tongue, by an Interpreter; He said he was an *Indian*, and that in their Country there was a great deal of Gold, and whole Houses of *China*: Their Kings liv'd in Silver and gilt Palaces. *Wolodimir* had, likewise, taken a Piece of Silver-Coin from the *Koræiki*, about one Sixth of an Ounce in Weight,

Weight, which this Stranger affirm'd to be his Country-Coin. He said, that they used no Sables, nor other Furs, for Linings, in *India*; But that their Cloaths were made of all Sorts of Stuffs, quilted with Cotton. *Atlassow* said, that this Stranger travell'd with him, 6 Days Journy, from *Anadirskoi* to *Liski*, where he fell sick, and his Legs swell'd, for which Reason, he was brought back to *Anadirskoi Simovia*. He gave him the Character of a Man of good Sense and Breeding (127). *Atlassow* had also taken with him a Native of *Kamtschatki*, in Order to bring him to *Muscow*, to confirm the Truth of what he had related, but this Man dy'd upon the Road, at *Kaygorod*.

(127) This Man was a Native of *Japan*, who afterwards, in the Time when the *Swedes* were in *Siberia*, was carry'd to *Muscow*; whether he got thither in Safety, I cannot say. However, I saw him at *Tobolsky*, when he pass thro'. He did not speak much of the *Russian* Tongue; Yet when I ask'd him, by an Interpreter, whether, at *Japan*, they call'd the Country of *Kamtschatki*, by the Name of *Jedso*? he answer'd in the Affirmative. I do not in the least doubt, but the *Dutch* would have visited the *Peninsula Jedso*, or *Kamtschatki*, from *Japan*, *Cbina* and *Batavia*, 60 or more Years ago, had they known the Circumstances of that Country. And it is certain, that neither the *Dutch* Ambassadour at *Japan*, *Caron*, nor those Ships which first discover'd the *East* Part of this *Peninsula*, (as we see by the old Maps of *Asia*) were able to give any Account of it; This short Description, however, shows, that it might have been worth while, to have made Voyages thither, to have got acquainted with the Inhabitants, and to have traded with them; Especially since Sables and large Beaver-Skins, which, in *Kamtschatki*, are to be had, in great Plenty, yield 60 Rix-dollars a-piece in *Cbina*; Besides other Advantages, which this Traveller could not discover, in so short a Time. And as to that Plant, which has the Taste of powder'd Sugar, it might be worth trying, whether it would turn to Account. Concerning the *Vulcano* he speaks of, and that the People, who went up a pretty Way, never return'd, it may be remark'd, that it is much of the same Nature with the *Vesuvius* in *Italy*, where *Pliny* lost his Life, in the same Manner. The Cause of this is, that both this and the other *Vulcano*, when they burn in the fiercest Manner, vomit out Brimstone and melted Metal, which like so many Brooks running down, cut deep Holes and Gutters in the Earth, which afterwards are filled up by the Ashes thrown out by the *Vulcano*, and blown into them by the Winds; And on the Surface whereof a Crust of Earth is form'd, grown over with short Grass. Whosoever, therefore, ventures up these *Vulcano's*, without knowing how to discover these Places, sinks into them. Upon this Occasion, I must not omit to confirm what the *Veranderter Russland*, (p. 406.) relates, from the Information of a *Russian* Merchant, *Michael Ostasoff*, concerning a certain People living on the North-East Point of *Kamtschatki*, called by this Author *Soeetse*; But by the *Russians*, *Tjibucktschi*, or *Sebucktschi*, viz. That they rip open their Cheeks, and stick into them the Bones of the Fish called *Narpal*, in Order to preieve the Scars, which they look upon as an Ornament. This very Account I had, also, myself, from a *Russian*, who came from *Kamtschatki*, in 1716, and who added, that they made use of the Teeth of Fish to adorn themselves; Whatever else he says of these People is true, excepting that they only worship the Devil, just as the *Samojeds*, *Laplanders*, *Tungusi*, *Ostiacks*, and others do, with their enchanting Drums.

H A R M O N I A L I

O R,

A SPECIMEN of some of the Numbers, and other Words of the Nations descended from the *Tartar*-and *Hunno-Scyth* the Reader may see how they were formerly united, either among themselves, or with other *Western* Nations.

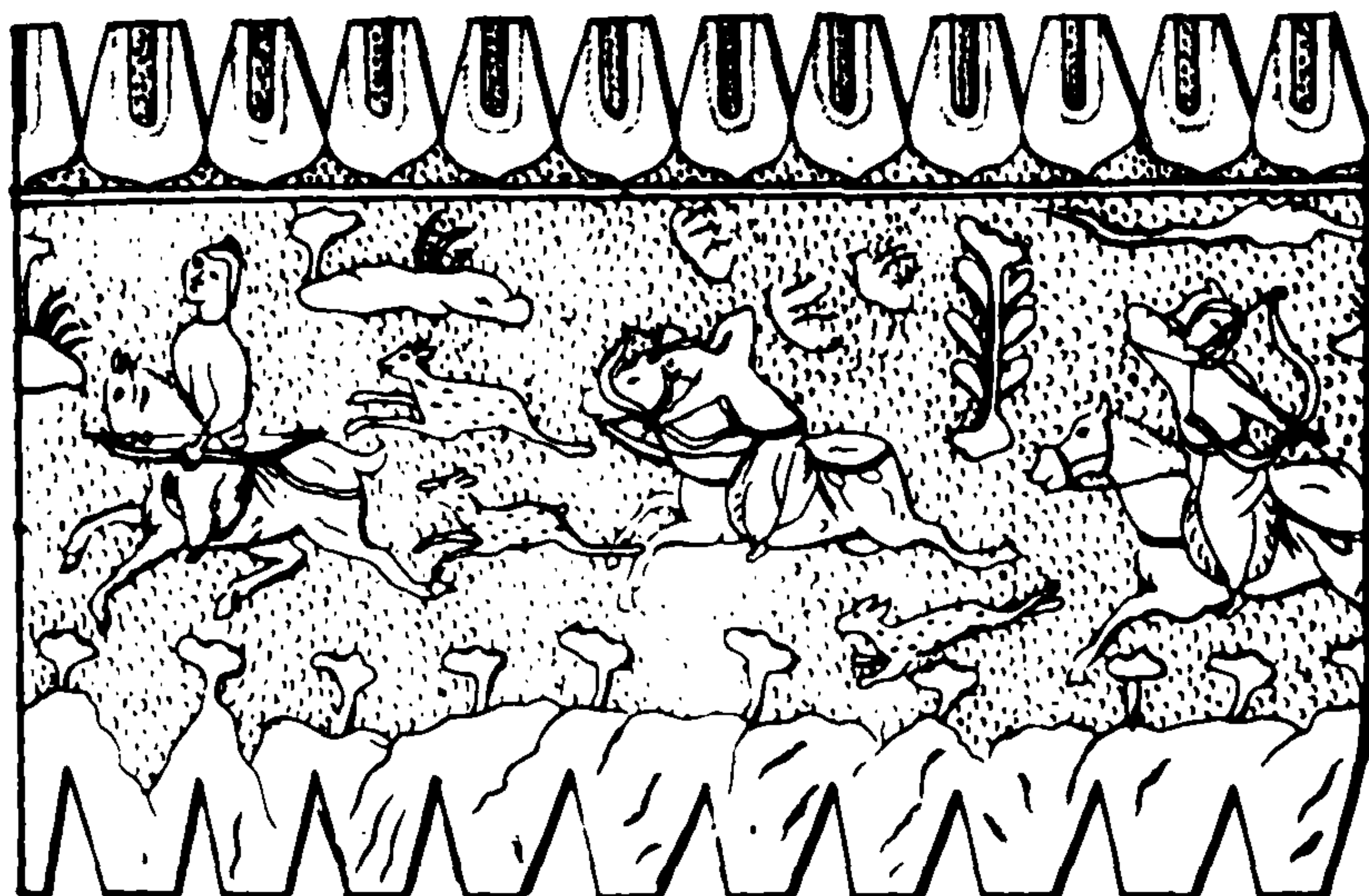
Numbers and Words belonging to the I. CLASS.	These People, taken all together, belong to the <i>Upper Hungarian</i> - and <i>Finnland</i> -Nations, who have all one Dialect; I have therefore given the two first, that the Reader may compare with them, the Six following, which are the Dialects of Nations inhabiting the <i>Russian Empire</i> , partly in <i>Europe</i> , and partly in <i>Asia</i> ; Whose Ancestors were in Ancient Times, the <i>Hunns</i> , or <i>Unns</i> .										Numbers and Words belonging to the II. CLASS.	The <i>Turks</i> , <i>Crow</i> , <i>Usbeck</i> , <i>Bajbekt</i> , <i>Kirgis</i> -and <i>Turkman-Tartars</i> , have almost the same Dialect with these three Nations.			Numbers and Words belonging to the III. CLASS.	These Six Nations, who live some Hundreds of Miles from each other, seem to have one Dialect, and may probably belong to the <i>Samojedian</i> Class. Those who live farther towards the <i>South</i> , own that they came thither from the <i>North</i> ; But had taken other Names.										Numbers and Words belonging to the IV. & V. CLASSES.	These Nations, who live some Hundreds of Miles from each other, seem to have one Dialect, and may probably belong to the <i>Samojedian</i> Class. Those who live farther towards the <i>South</i> , own that they came thither from the <i>North</i> ; But had taken other Names.																																																																																																				
<i>Hungarian</i> Teachers, living in <i>Dacia</i> , between <i>Transylvania</i> and the <i>River Theis</i> .	<i>Finnland</i> , to whom belong the <i>Lovenans</i> in <i>Careland</i> and <i>Lovonia</i> .	<i>Wogronians</i> , who call themselves <i>Manych</i> , and live in the Province of <i>Uperia</i> in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Mordans</i> , who call themselves <i>Mordas</i> , and live in the Government of <i>Nybgow</i> .	<i>Samerians</i> , call themselves <i>Mors</i> , and live in the Government of <i>Cafan</i> .	<i>Fermians</i> , who call themselves <i>Cas</i> or <i>Sadach</i> , and live in <i>Great Permian</i> .	<i>Wenians</i> , who call themselves <i>Ar</i> , and live in the Principality of <i>Wiatka</i> .	<i>Ufians</i> , who call themselves <i>Chos</i> , and live on the <i>River Irtysh</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Siberian</i> - <i>Manchurian</i> Tartars, who live near the Cities of <i>Tobolsk</i> , <i>Tumen</i> and <i>Tara</i> .	<i>Yakuts</i> , who live on the <i>River Lena</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> , not far from the <i>Mare Glaciale</i> , and are <i>Heathens</i> .	<i>Camtschats</i> , who live in the Government of <i>Cafan</i> , and are <i>Heathens</i> .	<i>Samojeds</i> , who live between <i>Archangel</i> and <i>Penzance</i> , and are all <i>Heathens</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live in <i>Siberia</i> , on the <i>River Oby</i> , near the City of <i>Narum</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Camtschka</i> , near the City of <i>Tomsk</i> .	<i>Samojeds</i> - <i>Tungus</i> , who live on the <i>Mare Glaciale</i> , between the <i>Rivers Yenisei</i> and <i>Lena</i> .	<i>Samojeds</i> - <i>Manchurian</i> , who live near the City of <i>Tobolsk</i> , on the <i>River Yenisei</i> , and from thence to the <i>Mare Glaciale</i> .	<i>Kamtschats</i> , who call themselves <i>Kamtschats</i> , and live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who live on the <i>River Kamtschka</i> , in <i>Siberia</i> .	<i>Chukts</i> , who

L I N G U A R U M,

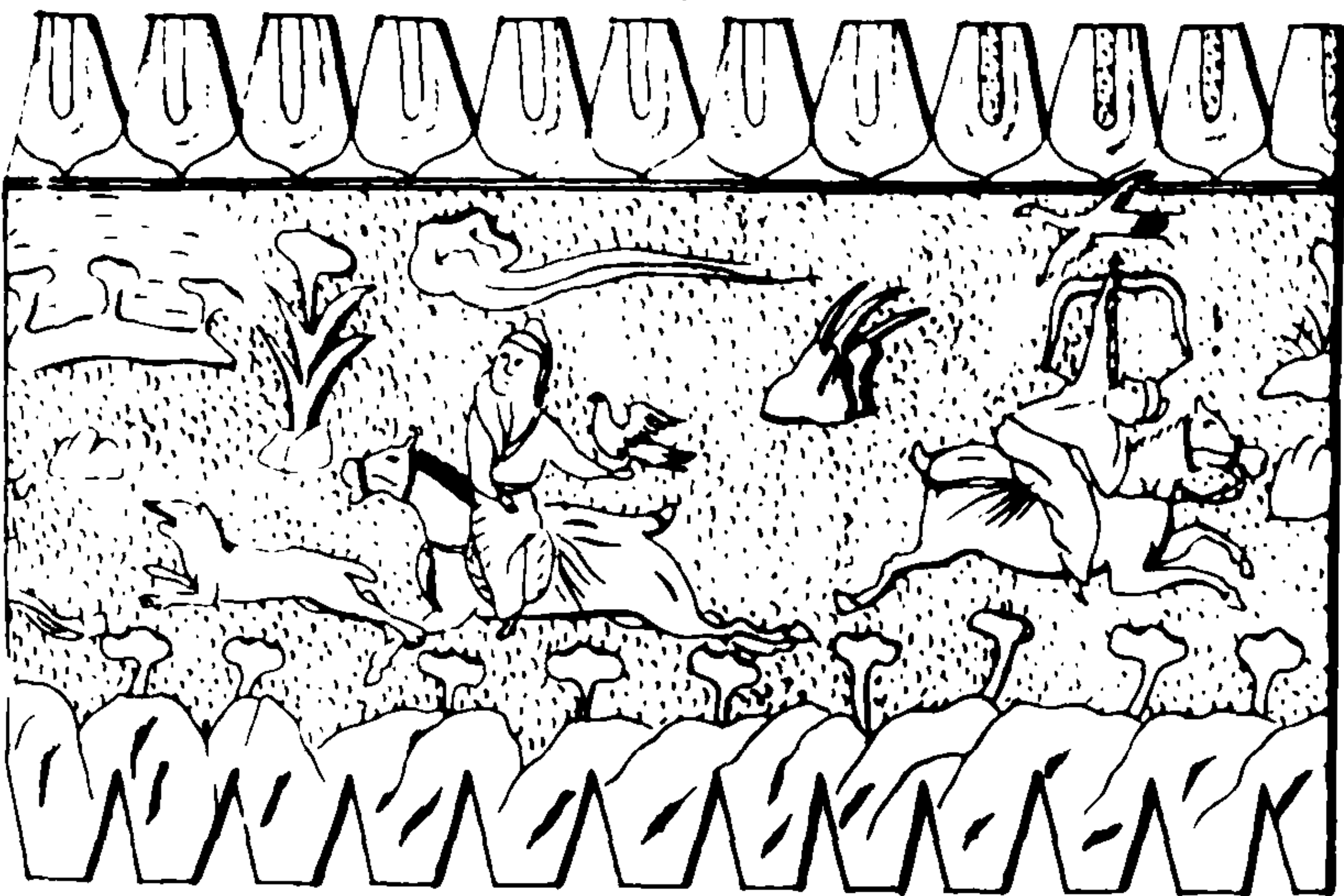
Hunno-Scythians, inhabiting the *North-Eastern Part of Europe and Asia*; from which, among other historical Circumstances, *Western Nations*. Their several Habitations are distinguish'd in the New Map, which accompanies this Work.

Numbers and Words belonging to the IV. & V. CLASSES.	These three Nations are, indeed, not under one Government; But as they are, in Part, to this Day, of one Religion, and were in Part, formerly, Confederates, I have chose to put them together.			These Seven Nations differ indeed very much in their Language; But are all under the Russian Dominion, in the Government of Siberia. The Tungusians, however, tho' they are of three Sorts, have some Affinity, in their Dialect; I have, therefore, put them together; But the other four have very little Similitude in their Language.							Numbers and Words belonging to the VI. CLASS.	These five Nations live between the Black-and-Caspian-Seas, and differ quite in their Language; Tho' they all of them speak, at the same Time, the Crim-Tartarian Language.				
	Kamatchi, who are of the same Religion with the Mongols, and have almost one Dialect.	Manchu, who are formerly Vassals of the Mongols.	Idagadi, who belong to the Dalai-Lama, and have one Religion with the Kalmucks and Mongols.	Kamatchi, who call themselves Kijikim, and live on the River Manai, in Siberia.	Arda, who call themselves Arda, or Kijikim, and live near the City of Crasnoyarsk, on the River Jenisei.	Tungus, who live in Dauria, near the City of Nerchinsk.	Tungus, who live on the River Angara - and Tungus, in Siberia.	Tungus, who live on the River Angara, and Tungus, in Siberia.	Arda, who live on the Gulf of Kamjatski.	Arda, who live on the Gulf of Kamjatski.		Arda, who live on Mount Caucasus.	Arda, who live on Mount Caucasus.	Arda, who live on Mount Caucasus.	Arda, who live on Mount Caucasus.	
One	Neg	Ypa	Dichyk	Chuchuk	Nutla	Anka	Umun	Omokon	Innen	Xineppu	One	Sau	Sodat	Sah	Ci	
Two	Choyot	Linsaga	Ny or Na	Yam	Kine	Caivo	Dzinu	Nadan	Nach	Tzuppu	Two	Gugru	Giwa	Kou	Toku	
Three	Gorda	Singa	Sium	Tonga	Thunga	Jelan	Ilen	Dagalkun	Nioch	Leppu	Three	Hanku	Slambaco	Kejerbach	Soo	
Four	Dorbo	Singa	Deyia	Schaga	Schaga	Tuin	Digin	Ullan	Nyzacha	Xineppu	Four	Onku	Moyack	Amf	Gla	
Five	Taba	Uga	Duga	Hkaga	Chain	Guinea	Tunya	Degen	Mikha	Atsqineppu	Five	Tailoku	Kewa	Yku	Toku	
Six	Serga	Laga	Urch	Hkelofa	Yga	Niumu	Nocun	Gedin	Ianen-Mikha	Arwab	Six	Ankalga	Kakwa	Akhalika	Scho	
Seven	Dolo	Seyga	Dhna	Hkelina	Una	Nadan	Nocun	Dgier	Nioch-Mikha	Tubeta	Seven	Grothku	Arutwa	Kawika	Scho	
Eight	Nama	Baya	Dignat	Chelunga	Kina-Minkhu	Crachun	Gigia	Duar	Chonafchiki	Xineberam	Eight	Urtwa	Merya	Wekika	Scho	
Nine	Gofa	Daga	Diga-Ny	Hwelina	Kuta-Minkhu	Unjun	Ziapkun	Dgier-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Nine	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Ten	Arin	Schy	Diga	Haga	Haga	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Ten	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Eleven	Arben-Neg	Schy-Yga	Diga-Dichyk	Haga-choodkha	Hkog-Kaifa	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Eleven	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Twelve	Arben-Choyot	Schy-Linsaga	Diga-Ny	Haga-lag	Hkog-Kaifa	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Twelve	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Thirteen	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Thirteen	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Fourteen	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Fourteen	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Fifteen	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Fifteen	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Sixteen	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Sixteen	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Seventy	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Seventy	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Eighty	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Eighty	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
Ninety	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Ninety	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
One hundred	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	One hundred	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
One thousand	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	One thousand	Urtwa	Urtwa	Wekika	Scho	
God	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	God	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Heaven	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Heaven	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
King	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	King	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Father	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Father	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Mother	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Mother	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Brother	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Brother	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Sister	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Sister	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Wife	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Wife	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Fire	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Fire	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Water	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Water	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Earth	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Earth	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Mountains	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Mountains	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Sun	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Sun	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Moon	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Moon	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Stars	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Stars	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Day	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Day	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Night	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Night	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Cold	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Cold	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
Warm	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	Warm	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung
East	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung	Crachun	Ziapkun	Ullan-Dar	Minigiki	Vanake	East	Choy	Uf Schy	Nyr-Dichyk	Ya-Tung	Kin-Tung

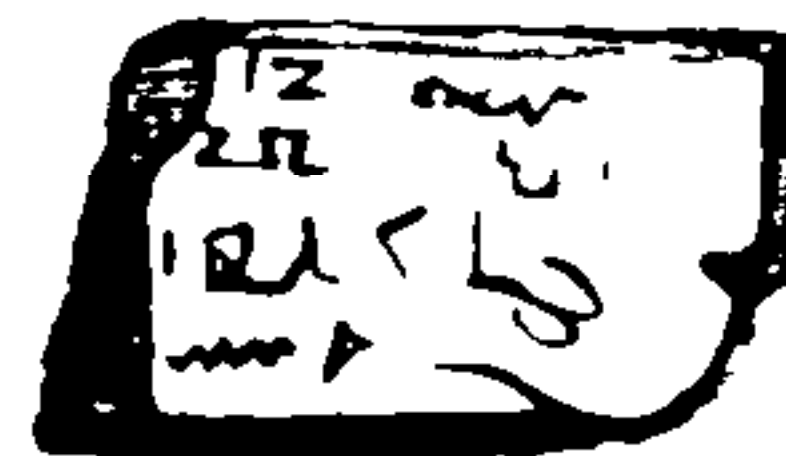
A



B



A



B

